



Cisco Virtualized Infrastructure Manager Installation Guide, 2.4.6

First Published: 2018-10-31

Last Modified: 2019-01-11

Americas Headquarters

Cisco Systems, Inc.
170 West Tasman Drive
San Jose, CA 95134-1706
USA
<http://www.cisco.com>
Tel: 408 526-4000
800 553-NETS (6387)
Fax: 408 527-0883

THE SPECIFICATIONS AND INFORMATION REGARDING THE PRODUCTS IN THIS MANUAL ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE. ALL STATEMENTS, INFORMATION, AND RECOMMENDATIONS IN THIS MANUAL ARE BELIEVED TO BE ACCURATE BUT ARE PRESENTED WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. USERS MUST TAKE FULL RESPONSIBILITY FOR THEIR APPLICATION OF ANY PRODUCTS.

THE SOFTWARE LICENSE AND LIMITED WARRANTY FOR THE ACCOMPANYING PRODUCT ARE SET FORTH IN THE INFORMATION PACKET THAT SHIPPED WITH THE PRODUCT AND ARE INCORPORATED HEREIN BY THIS REFERENCE. IF YOU ARE UNABLE TO LOCATE THE SOFTWARE LICENSE OR LIMITED WARRANTY, CONTACT YOUR CISCO REPRESENTATIVE FOR A COPY.

The Cisco implementation of TCP header compression is an adaptation of a program developed by the University of California, Berkeley (UCB) as part of UCB's public domain version of the UNIX operating system. All rights reserved. Copyright © 1981, Regents of the University of California.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY OTHER WARRANTY HEREIN, ALL DOCUMENT FILES AND SOFTWARE OF THESE SUPPLIERS ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" WITH ALL FAULTS. CISCO AND THE ABOVE-NAMED SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THOSE OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OR ARISING FROM A COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE, OR TRADE PRACTICE.

IN NO EVENT SHALL CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST PROFITS OR LOSS OR DAMAGE TO DATA ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THIS MANUAL, EVEN IF CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

Any Internet Protocol (IP) addresses and phone numbers used in this document are not intended to be actual addresses and phone numbers. Any examples, command display output, network topology diagrams, and other figures included in the document are shown for illustrative purposes only. Any use of actual IP addresses or phone numbers in illustrative content is unintentional and coincidental.

All printed copies and duplicate soft copies of this document are considered uncontrolled. See the current online version for the latest version.

Cisco has more than 200 offices worldwide. Addresses and phone numbers are listed on the Cisco website at www.cisco.com/go/offices.

Cisco and the Cisco logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Cisco and/or its affiliates in the U.S. and other countries. To view a list of Cisco trademarks, go to this URL: www.cisco.com/go/trademarks. Third-party trademarks mentioned are the property of their respective owners. The use of the word partner does not imply a partnership relationship between Cisco and any other company. (1721R)

© 2019 Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.



CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1

Overview to Cisco Network Function Virtualization Infrastructure 1

Cisco Network Function Virtualization Infrastructure Overview 1

Cisco Virtualized Infrastructure Manager Overview 8

Cisco VIM Features 8

Cisco NFVI Networking Overview 15

UCS C-Series Network Topologies 22

Cisco VIM Management Node Networking 30

IPv6 Support on Management Network 33

UCS C-Series and B-Series -Topologies 33

Cisco NFVI High Availability 35

Cisco NFVI Storage Node Overview 37

Overview to Cisco Virtual Topology System 38

Overview to Cisco NFVIMON 40

Overview to CVIMMON 42

Comparative Analysis 43

Metrics Collection 45

Alerting Rules 47

CVIMMON Web User Interface 53

CVIM-TRAP 54

Overview to Cisco VIM Unified Management 55

Overview to NFVBench 57

Overview to ACI Plugin Integration 58

NCS-5500 as a ToR Option 59

Disk Management in VIM 60

OSD Maintenance 60

Power Management of Computes for C-Series 61

Physical Cores and Memory Reserved for Cisco VIM Infrastructure	61
Software Distribution Server (SDS)	62
Cisco VIM VXLAN EVPN Design	63
VPP Port Mirroring Support	66

CHAPTER 2	Overview to Cisco NFVI Installation	69
	Cisco NFVI Installation Overview	69

CHAPTER 3	Preparing for Installation on Servers Without Internet Access	71
	Preparing to Install Cisco NFVI on Management Nodes Without Internet Access	71

CHAPTER 4	Preparing for Cisco NFVI Installation	75
	Installing the Cisco NFVI Hardware	75
	Configuring ToR Switches for C-Series Pods	78
	Configuring ToR Switches for UCS B-Series Pods	82
	Preparing Cisco IMC and Cisco UCS Manager	85
	Installing the Management Node	86
	Installing Software Distribution Server (SDS)	89
	Installing SDS Node	90
	Setting up SDS for Cisco VIM Artifact Distribution	90
	Installing SDS in Connected Mode	91
	Installing SDS in Air-Gapped Mode	92
	Installing Pod from SDS Server	95
	Day 2 Operations on SDS	95
	Setting Up the UCS C-Series Pod	95
	Utility Details	98
	Setting Up the UCS B-Series Pod	100
	Configuring the Out-of-Band Management Switch	102
	Support of 3rd Party Compute (HP DL 360 Gen9)	102

CHAPTER 5	Installing Cisco VTS	103
	Overview to Cisco VTS Installation in Cisco NFVI	103
	Cisco VTS Usernames and Passwords in Cisco NFVI	105
	Modes of TOR Configuration with VTS	106

System Requirements for VTC VM	108
System Requirements for VTSR VM	109
Supported Virtual Machine Managers	109
Supported Platforms	109
Installing Cisco VTS in Cisco NFVI Environment	111
Installing VTC VM - Automatic Configuration Using ISO File	111
Installing VTC VM - Manual Configuration Using Virt-Manager	112
Installing VTC VM - Manual Configuration using VNC	114
Installing the VTSR VMs	115
Creating VTSR VM	115
Bringing up the KVM-based VTSR VM	115
Creating an ISO for IOS VTSR	116
Verifying Cisco VTS Installation in Cisco NFVI	118
Verifying VTSR VM Installation	118
Verifying VTC VM Installation	119
Troubleshooting VTF Registration	119
Configuring Cisco VTS and VTSR After Installation	120
Installing VTS in an HA Configuration	121
Completing VTSR HA Configuration	124
Uninstalling VTC HA	125
Sample Cisco VTS Configurations for Cisco NFVI	125

CHAPTER 6

Installing Cisco VIM	131
Cisco VIM Installation Overview	131
Installing Cisco VIM	132
Cisco VIM Client Details	134
Cisco VIM Configuration Overview	137
Configuring ToR Automatically	137
Setting Up the Cisco VIM Data Configurations	138
Setting Up the ToR Configurations for B-series and C-series	138
Support for Custom Configuration	140
Setting Up Cisco VIM OpenStack Configurations	155
SolidFire Integration with Cisco VIM	164
Cisco VIM Configurations for VPP/VLAN Installation	164

Cisco VIM Configurations for Cisco VTS Installation	164
Enabling ACI in Cisco VIM	166
Setting of Memory Oversubscription Usage	170
Disabling Management Node Accessibility to Cloud API Network	170
Enabling NFVBench on Cisco VIM	171
Enabling NFVIMON on Cisco VIM	173
Enabling CVIMMON on Cisco VIM	175
Enabling or Disabling Autobackup of Management Node	177
Enabling Custom Policy for VNF Manager	178
Forwarding ELK logs to External Syslog Server	178
Support of NFS for ELK Snapshot	178
Support for TTY Logging	179
Configuring Additional VIM Administrators	179
Configuring Support for Read-only OpenStack Role	180
VPP Port Mirroring Support	180
Setting up VXLAN/EVPN in Cisco VIM	183
Updating Cisco NFVI Software	184
Upgrading Cisco NFVI Software	185

CHAPTER 7
Installing Cisco VIM Unified Management 187

Installing Cisco VIM Unified Management with Internet Access	188
Installing Cisco VIM Unified Management with SDS	192
Installing Cisco VIM Unified Management with LDAP	193
Installing Cisco VIM Unified Management Without SMTP	193
Installing Cisco VIM Unified Management without Internet Access	195
Cisco VIM Insight Post Bootstrap Validation Checks	198
VIM UM Admin Login for Standalone Setup	202
VIM UM Pod Admin Login for Standalone Setup	202

CHAPTER 8
Installing Cisco VIM through Cisco VIM Unified Management 203

Unified Management Dashboard	203
Pods	204
Pod Users	205
Revoking User	205

Deleting Users	205
Pod Administrator	206
Adding Pod Admin	206
Revoking Pod Admin	206
Unified Management (UM) Administrator	207
Adding UM Admin	207
Revoking UM Admin	207
Registering New Pod to Insight	208
Configuring OpenStack Installation	209
Post Installation Features for Active Blueprint	299
Monitoring the Pod	299
Cross Launching Horizon	300
NFVI Monitoring	300
Run VMTP	300
Run CloudPulse	301
Run NFV Bench	301
Fixed Rate Test	302
POD Management	302
System Update	303
Reconfiguring CIMC Password through Insight	303
Reconfiguring OpenStack Password	304
Reconfiguring OpenStack Services, TLS certs and ELK configurations	304
Reconfiguring Optional Services	305
Pod User Administration	306
Managing Users	306
Managing Roles	307
Managing Root CA Certificate	307

CHAPTER 9

Verifying the Cisco NFVI Installation	309
Displaying Cisco NFVI Node IP Addresses	309
Verifying Cisco VIM Client CLI Availability	310
Displaying Cisco NFVI Logs	311
Accessing OpenStack API Endpoints	311
Assessing Cisco NFVI Health with CloudPulse	312

Displaying HA Proxy Dashboard and ELK Stack Logs	314
Checking Cisco NFVI Pod and Cloud Infrastructure	314

APPENDIX A

Appendix	319
Cisco VIM Wiring Diagrams	319



CHAPTER 1

Overview to Cisco Network Function Virtualization Infrastructure

This section contains the following topics:

- [Cisco Network Function Virtualization Infrastructure Overview, on page 1](#)
- [Cisco Virtualized Infrastructure Manager Overview, on page 8](#)
- [Cisco NFVI Networking Overview, on page 15](#)
- [UCS C-Series Network Topologies, on page 22](#)
- [Cisco VIM Management Node Networking, on page 30](#)
- [IPv6 Support on Management Network, on page 33](#)
- [UCS C-Series and B-Series -Topologies, on page 33](#)
- [Cisco NFVI High Availability, on page 35](#)
- [Cisco NFVI Storage Node Overview, on page 37](#)
- [Overview to Cisco Virtual Topology System, on page 38](#)
- [Overview to Cisco NFVIMON, on page 40](#)
- [Overview to CVIMMON, on page 42](#)
- [Overview to Cisco VIM Unified Management, on page 55](#)
- [Overview to NFVBench, on page 57](#)
- [Overview to ACI Plugin Integration, on page 58](#)
- [NCS-5500 as a ToR Option, on page 59](#)
- [Disk Management in VIM, on page 60](#)
- [OSD Maintenance, on page 60](#)
- [Power Management of Computes for C-Series, on page 61](#)
- [Physical Cores and Memory Reserved for Cisco VIM Infrastructure, on page 61](#)
- [Software Distribution Server \(SDS\), on page 62](#)
- [Cisco VIM VXLAN EVPN Design, on page 63](#)
- [VPP Port Mirroring Support, on page 66](#)

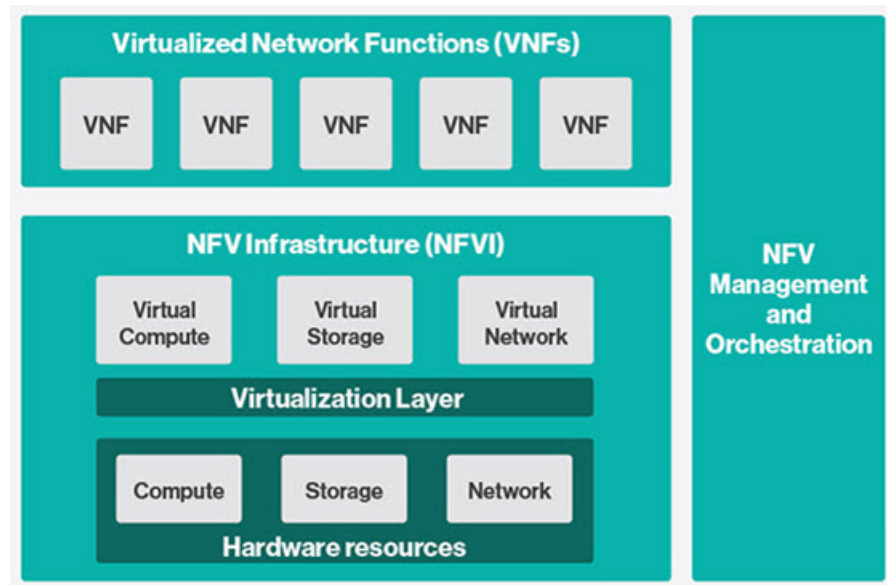
Cisco Network Function Virtualization Infrastructure Overview

Cisco Network Function Virtualization Infrastructure (NFVI) provides the virtual layer and hardware environment in which virtual network functions (VNFs) can operate. VNFs provide well-defined network functions such as routing, intrusion detection, domain name service (DNS), caching, network address translation

(NAT), and other network functions. While these network functions require a tight integration between network software and hardware, the use of VNF enables to decouple the software from the underlying hardware.

The following figure shows the high level architecture of Cisco NFVI.

Figure 1: General NFV Infrastructure



Cisco NFVI includes a virtual infrastructure layer (Cisco VIM) that embeds the Red Hat OpenStack Platform (OSP 10). Cisco VIM includes the Newton release of OpenStack, which is an open source cloud operating system that controls large pools of compute, storage, and networking resources. Cisco VIM manages the OpenStack compute, network, and storage services, and all NFVI management and control functions. Key Cisco NFVI roles include:

- Control (including Networking)
- Compute
- Storage
- Management (including logging, and monitoring)

Hardware that is used to create the Cisco NFVI pods include:

- Cisco UCS® C240 M4—Performs management and storage functions and services. Includes dedicated Ceph (UCS 240-M4) distributed object store and file system. (Only Red Hat Ceph is supported).
- Cisco UCS C220/240 M4—Performs control and compute services.
- HP DL360 Gen9 – It is a third-party compute.
- Cisco UCS 220/240 M5 (SFF) – In a Micropod environment, expandable to maximum of 16 computes.
- Cisco UCS B200 M4 blades – It can be used instead of the UCS C220 for compute and control services. The B200 blades and C240 Ceph server are connected with redundant Cisco Fabric Interconnects managed by UCS Manager.

- Combination of M5 Series servers are supported in M5 based Micropod, and VIC/NIC (pure 40G) based Hyper-Converged and Micropod offering.

The UCS C240 and C220 servers are M4 Small Form Factor (SFF) models where the computes can boot from a pair of HDDs or SSD. Each UCS C240, UCS C220, and UCS B200 have two 10 GE Cisco UCS Virtual Interface Cards. M5 versions of the UCS C240 and UCS C220 are of Small Form Factor (SFF) models where the nodes can boot from a pair of HDDs or SSD based on the BOM type.

The B-Series pod consists of Cisco UCS B200 M4 blades for the Cisco NFVI compute and controller nodes with dedicated Ceph on a UCS C240 M4. The blades and the Ceph server are connected to redundant fabric interconnects (FIs) managed by Cisco UCS Manager. When you install Cisco VIM on a B-Series pod, you can dynamically allocate VLANs on the provider networks for both Virtio and SRIOV using the optional Cisco UCS Manager plugin. The Cisco VIM installer performs bare metal installation and deploys OpenStack services using Docker™ containers to allow for OpenStack services and pod management software updates.

The following table shows the functions, hardware, and services managed by Cisco NFVI nodes.

Table 1: Cisco NFVI Node Functions

Function	Number	Hardware	Services
Management	1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • UCS C240 M4 SFF with 8, 16, or 24 1.2 TB HDDs (24 is recommended) • UCS C240 M5 SFF with 8, 16, or 24 1.2 TB HDDs (24 is recommended) • UCS C220 M5 SFF with 8x1.2 TB HDDs 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cisco VIM Installer • Cobbler server • Docker Registry • ELK server
Control	3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • UCS C220/C240 M4 with two 1.2 TB HDDs, or • UCS B200 with two 1.2 TB HDDs • UCS 220/240 M5 with 2x1.2 TB HDDs, or 2x960G SSDs (in a Micropod environment) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Maria Database/Galera • RabbitMQ • HA Proxy/Keepalive • Identity Service • Image Service • Compute management • Network service • Storage service • Horizon dashboard • Fluentd

Function	Number	Hardware	Services
Compute	2+	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • UCS C220/C240 M4 with two 1.2 TB HDDs, or 2x1.6 TB SSDs • UCS B200 with two 1.2 TB HDDs • UCS 220/240 M5 with 2x1.2 TB HDDs, or 2x960G SSDs (in a micro pod environment) • HP DL360 Gen9 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Virtual Networking Service • Compute service • Fluentd
Storage	3 or more	<p>SSD and HDD drives must be in a 1:4 ratio per storage node minimum.</p> <p>Storage node configuration options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • UCS C240 M4 with two internal SSDs, 1 external SSD, 4 or 5- 1.2 TB HDDs • UCS C240 M4, with 2 internal SSDs, 4 SSDs and 20 1.2 TB HDDs • For UMHC or NGENAHC, UCS C240 M4 with two 1.2TB HDD for OS boot, one/2 SSDs and 5/10 1.2 TB HDDs • SSD-based Ceph: UCS C240 M4 with 2 internal SSDs, minimum of 4 external SSDs, expandable to 24 SSDs 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Storage service
Top of Rack (ToR)	2	<p>Recommended Cisco Nexus 9000 series switch software versions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 7.0(3)I4(6) • 7.0(3)I6(1) <p>Cisco NCS 5500 as ToRs or Cisco Nexus 9000 switches running ACI 3.0 (when ACI is used)</p>	<p>ToR services</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cisco NCS 5500 provides ToR service with VIM running on C-series with Intel NIC and VPP as the mechanism driver for deployment.

**Note**

- Internal SSD is the boot device for the storage node
- You can use any ToR that supports virtual port channel. Cisco recommends you to use Cisco Nexus 9000 SKUs as ToR, which is released as part of Cisco VIM. When Cisco NCS 5500 acts as a ToR, auto-ToR config is mandatory.
- You must use the automated ToR configuration feature for Cisco NCS 5500.

Software applications that manage Cisco NFVI hosts and services include:

- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.4 with OpenStack Platform 10.0—Provides the core operating system with OpenStack capability. RHEL 7.4 and OPS 10.0 are installed on all target Cisco NFVI nodes.
- Cisco Virtual Infrastructure Manager (VIM)—An OpenStack orchestration system that helps to deploy and manage an OpenStack cloud offering from bare metal installation to OpenStack services, taking into account hardware and software redundancy, security and monitoring. Cisco VIM includes the OpenStack Newton release with more features and usability enhancements that are tested for functionality, scale, and performance.
- Cisco Unified Management—Deploys, provisions, and manages Cisco VIM on Cisco UCS servers.
- Cisco UCS Manager—Used to perform certain management functions when UCS B200 blades are installed. Supported UCS Manager firmware versions are 2.2(5a) and above.
- Cisco Integrated Management Controller (IMC)—Cisco IMC 2.0(13i) or later is supported, when installing Cisco VIM 2.4.

For the Cisco IMC 2.0 lineup, the recommended version is as follows:

UCS-M4 servers	Recommended: Cisco IMC 2.0(13n) or later.
----------------	---

For the Cisco IMC 3.x lineup, the recommended version is as follows:

UCS-M4 servers	Cisco IMC versions are 3.0(3a) or later, except for 3.0(4a). Recommended: Cisco IMC 3.0(4d). Expanded support of CIMC 4.0(1a) and CIMC 4.0(1b).
UCS-M5 servers	CIMC 3.1(2b) or later. Recommended to stay with 3.1(2b), 3.1(3d), and 3.1(3g). Note Do not use 3.1(3h).

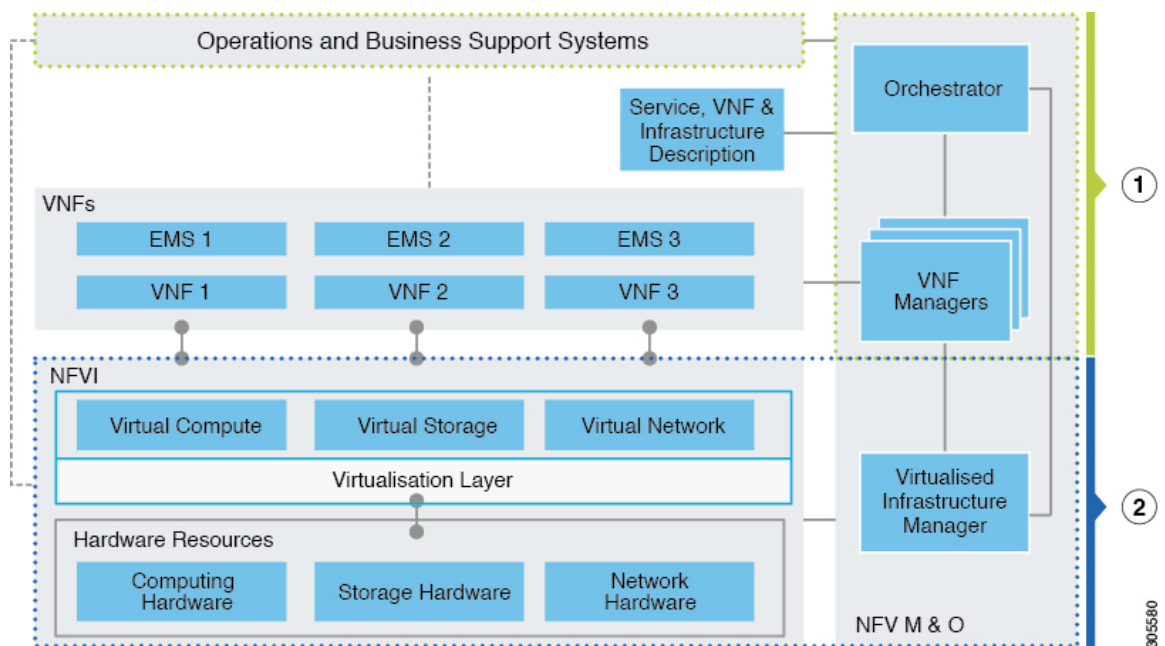
Enables embedded server management for Cisco UCS C-Series Rack Servers. Supports Cisco IMC firmware versions of 2.0(13i) or greater for the fresh install of Cisco VIM. Because of recent security fixes, we recommend you to upgrade Cisco IMC to 2.0(13n) or higher. Before upgrade of pod from Cisco VIM 1.0 to Cisco VIM 2.4.4, we recommend that you manually upgrade to 2.0(13n) or greater. Similarly, Cisco IMC version of 3.0 lineup is supported. For this, you must install Cisco IMC 3.0 (3a) or above.

- Cisco Virtual Topology System (VTS)—It is an open, overlay management and provisioning system for data center networks. VTS automates DC overlay fabric provisioning for physical and virtual workloads. This is an optional service that is available through Cisco VIM.
- Cisco Virtual Topology Forwarder (VTF)—Included with VTS. VTF leverages Vector Packet Processing (VPP) to provide high performance Layer 2 and Layer 3 VXLAN packet forwarding.

Two Cisco VNF orchestration and management applications that are used with Cisco NFVI include:

- Cisco Network Services Orchestrator, enabled by Tail-f—Provides end-to-end orchestration spanning multiple network domains to address NFV management and orchestration (MANO) and software-defined networking (SDN). For information about Cisco NSO, see [Network Services Orchestrator Solutions](#).
- Cisco Elastic Services Controller—Provides a single point of control to manage all aspects of the NFV lifecycle for VNFs. ESC allows you to automatically instantiate, monitor, and elastically scale VNFs end-to-end. For information about Cisco ESC, see the [Cisco Elastic Services Controller Data Sheet](#).

Figure 2: NFVI Architecture With Cisco NFVI, Cisco NSO, and Cisco ESC



At a high level, the NFVI architecture includes a VNF Manager and the NFV Infrastructure.

- | | |
|----------|--|
| 1 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cisco Network Services Orchestrator • Cisco Elastic Services Controller |
|----------|--|

2 Cisco NFVI:

- Cisco VIM +
- Cisco UCS and Cisco Nexus Hardware +
- Logging and Monitoring Software +
- Cisco Virtual Topology Services (optional) +
- Accelerated Switching with VPP (Optional)
- Cisco Unified Management (optional)

For cloud networking, Cisco NFVI supports either Linux bridge over Virtual Extensible LAN (VXLAN) or Open vSwitch over VLAN as the cloud network solution for both UCS B-series and UCS C-Series pods. However, the UCS B-Series pods using the Cisco UCS Manager plugin supports only OVS/VLAN as a tenant network. Both B-Series and C-Series deployments support provider networks over VLAN.

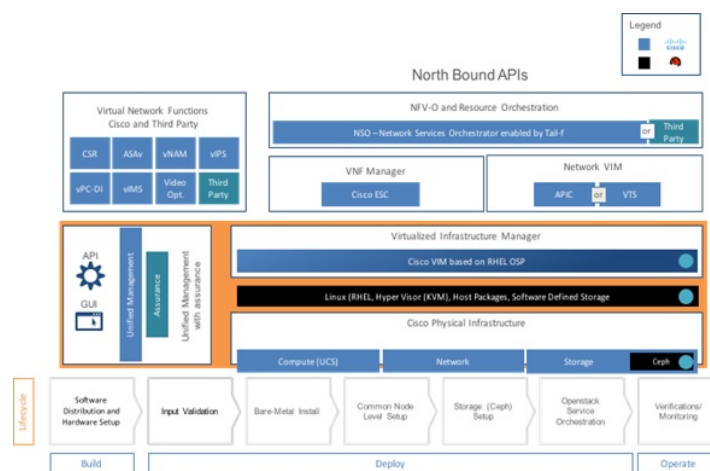
In addition, with a C-series pod, you can choose:

- To run with augmented performance mechanism by replacing OVS/LB with VPP/VLAN or ACI/VLAN (virtual packet processor).
- To have cloud that is integrated with VTC which is an SDN controller option.

The Cisco NFVI uses OpenStack services running inside containers with HAProxy load balancing and providing high availability to API and management network messaging. Transport Layer Security (TLS) protects the API network from external users to the HAProxy. Cisco VIM installation also includes service assurance, OpenStack CloudPulse, built-in control, and data plane validation. Day two pod management allows you to add and remove both compute and Ceph nodes, and replace the controller nodes. The Cisco VIM installation embeds all necessary RHEL licenses as long as you use the Cisco VIM BOM and the corresponding release artifacts.

The following illustration shows a detailed view of the Cisco NFVI architecture and the Cisco NFVI installation flow.

Figure 3: Detailed Cisco NFVI Architecture View

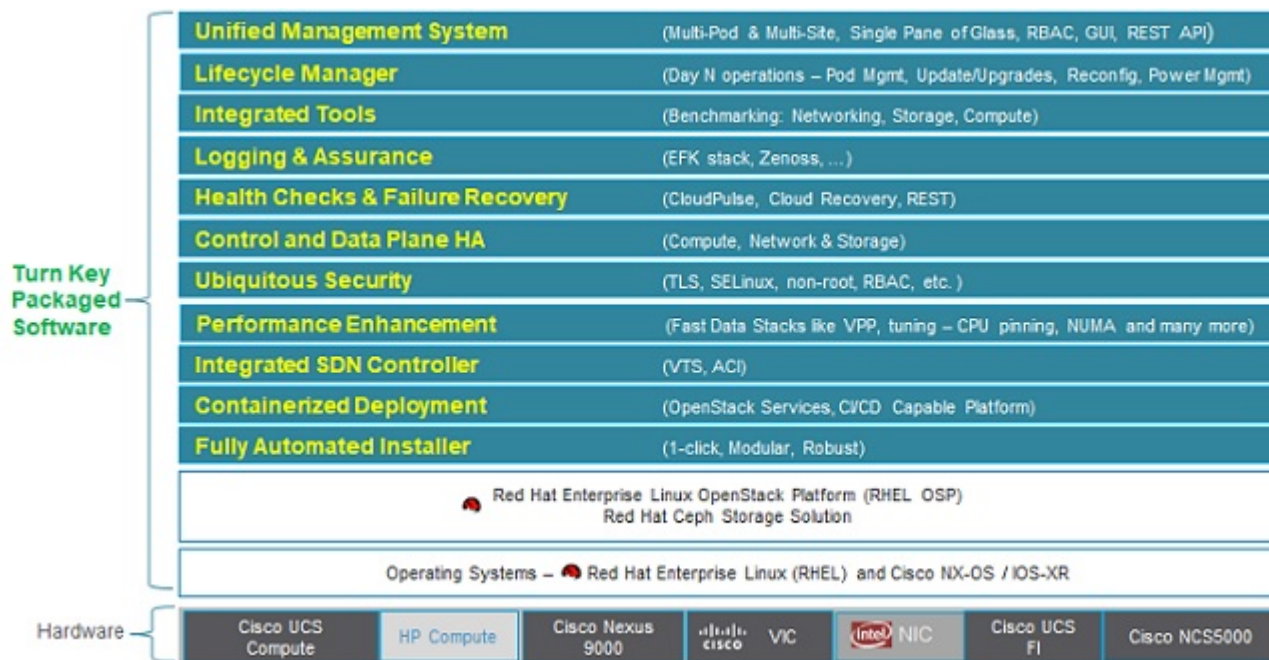


Cisco Virtualized Infrastructure Manager Overview

Cisco Virtualized Infrastructure Manager (VIM) is a fully automated cloud lifecycle management system. Cisco VIM helps to bring up a fully functional cloud in hours, with integrated end-to-end control and data plane verification in place. Cisco VIM offers fully automated day 1 to day n cloud lifecycle management. These include capabilities such as pod scaling (expansion), software update, upgrade, or reconfigure parameters, consolidated logging with rotation and export, software update and upgrade. These have been implemented in line with the operational and security best practices of service providers and enterprises.

The following figure provides the high-level overview of all day-0 and day-n items of Cisco VIM.

Figure 4: Cisco VIM Capability Overview



Cisco VIM Features

Cisco VIM is the only standalone fully automated cloud lifecycle manager offering from Cisco for a private cloud. The current version of VIM, integrates with Cisco C or B-series UCS servers and Cisco or Intel NIC. This document and its accompanying administrator guide help the cloud administrators to set up and manage the private cloud.

Following are the features of the Cisco VIM:

Feature Name	Comments
OpenStack Version	RHEL 7.4 with OSP 10 (Newton).

Hardware Support Matrix	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. UCS C220/B200 M4 controller or compute with Intel V3 (Haswell).2. UCS C240/220 M4 controller or compute + Intel V4 (Broadwell).3. HP DL360 Gen 9.4. UCS C220/240 M5 in Micropod environment, with an option to add up to 16 220/240-M5 computes.5. UCS C240/220 M5 controller or compute with Intel X710 support with SRIOV and Cisco Nexus 9000 /Cisco NCS-5500 series switch as ToR.
NIC support	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Cisco VIC: VIC 1227, 1240, 1340, 1380, 1387 (for M5) in 40G VIC/NIC offering.2. Intel NIC: X710, 520, XL710.

POD Type	
----------	--

1. Dedicated control, compute, and storage (C-series) node running on Cisco VIC (M4) or Intel X710 (for M4 or M5) (full on) with Cisco Nexus 9000 or Cisco NCS 5500 series switch (only for Intel NIC and VPP as mechanism driver) as ToR.
2. Dedicated control, compute, and storage (C-series) node running on Cisco VIC and Intel NIC (full on) with Cisco Nexus 9000 as ToR. Only SRIOV is supported on Intel NIC. Support of Intel X520 (with 2 NIC cards/compute) on M4 pods or XL710 (2 or 4 NIC cards/compute) on M4/M5 pods for SRIOV cards in the VIC/NIC combination. Few computes can run with/without SRIOV in a given pod. For M4 pods, VIC/NIC computes running XL710 and X520 can reside in the same pod.
3. Dedicated control, compute, and storage (B-Series) node running on Cisco NIC.
4. Micropod: Integrated (AIO) control, compute, and storage (C-series) node running on Cisco VIC, Intel X710X or VIC and NIC combo. Micropod can be optionally expanded to accommodate more computes (up to 16) running with the same NIC type. This can be done as a day-0 or day-1 activity. The computes can boot off HDD or SSD. Intel NIC-based Micropod supports SRIOV, with the M5-based Micropod supporting only XL710 as an option for SRIOV.
5. Hyper-converged on M4(UMHC): Dedicated control and compute nodes, with all storage acting as compute (M4 C-series) nodes, running on a combination of 1-Cisco VIC (1227) and 2x10GE 520 or 2x40GE 710XL Intel NIC with an option to migrate from one to another.

Note In a full-on (VIC based), or Hyper-Coverged pod, computes can either have a combination of 1-Cisco VIC (1227) and (2x10GE 520/2x40GE 710XL Intel NIC) or 1-CiscoVIC (1227). The compute running pure Cisco VIC does not run SR-IOV. In 2.4, Cisco supports HP DL360 Gen9 as a third party compute.

Currently, we do not support a mix of computes from different vendors for the same pod.
6. NGENA Hyper-Converged (NGENAHc): Dedicated control and compute nodes, with all storage acting as compute (C-series) nodes. All nodes have a combination of 1-Cisco VIC (1227) for control plane, and 1x10GE 710X Intel NIC for Data plane over VPP.
7. Hyper-Converged on M5: Dedicated control and compute nodes, with all storage acting as compute (C-series) nodes, running on a combination of 1-Cisco VIC (40G) and 2x40GE

	710XL Intel NIC.
ToR and FI support	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. For VTS-based installation, use the following Nexus version: 7.0(3)I2(2a) and 7.0(3)I6(2). 2. For the mechanism driver other than VTS, use the following Nexus software version: 7.0(3)I4(6) 7.0(3)I6(1). If you are using auto-ToR configuration and CONFIGURE_TORS set to True, the nxos version - 7.0(3)I6(1) automation fails irrespective of the mechanism driver due to the defect CSCve16902. 3. UCS-FI-6296. 4. Support of Cisco NCS 5500 (with recommended Cisco IOS XR version 6.1.33.02I or 6.5.1) with splitter cable option. 5. Cisco Nexus 9000 series switches running ACI 3.0 (for the mechanism driver ACI).
IPv6 Support for Management Network	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Static IPv6 management assignment for servers 2. Support of IPv6 for NTP, DNS, LDAP, external syslog server, and AD. 3. Support of IPv6 for the Cloud API endpoint.
Mechanism Drivers	<p>OVS/VLAN, Linuxbridge/VXLAN, ACI/VLAN, VPP/VLAN (Fast Networking, Fast Data FD.io VPP/VLAN, based on the FD.io VPP fast virtual switch).</p> <p>Note VPP with LACP is now the default configuration for the data plane.</p>
SDN Controller Integration	VTS 2.6.2 with optional feature of Managed VTS; ACI (ships in the night or with Unified ACI Plugin) with Cisco VIC or Intel NIC on the UCS C-series M4 platform.
Install Methodology	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fully automated online or offline installation. • Support of Software Distribution Server (SDS), to mitigate the problem associated with logistics of USB distribution for air-gapped installation.

Scale	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> GA: Full on: Total of 60 nodes (compute and OSD) with Ceph OSD max at 20. LA: Total of 120 nodes (compute and OSD) with Ceph OSD max at 20. Note It is recommended to deploy 30 nodes at a time. Also, after day-0, you can add only one ceph node at a time. Micropod: Maximum of 16 standalone compute nodes. Note Ceph OSDs can be HDD or SSD based, however it has to be uniform across the pod. Computes can boot off 2x1.2TB HDD or 2x1.6TB SSD). In the same pod, some computes can have SSD, while others can have HDD.
Automated Pod Life Cycle Management	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Add or remove compute and Ceph nodes and replace the controller. Reconfiguration of passwords and selected optional services. Automated software update
Platform security	<p>Secure OS, RBAC, Network isolation, TLS, Source IP filtering, Keystone v3, Bandit, CSDL-compliant, hardened OS, SELinux.</p> <p>Change the CIMC password after post install for maintenance and security.</p> <p>Non-root log in for Administrators.</p> <p>Read-only role available for OpenStack users.</p> <p>Enabling Custom Policy for VNF Manager.</p> <p>Optionally, you can disable the reachability of the management node to the cloud API network.</p>
EPA	NUMA, CPU pinning, huge pages, SRIOV with Intel NIC.
HA and Reliability	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Redundancy at hardware and software level. Automated backup and restore of the management node.
Unified Management Support	Single pane of glass in a single or multi instance (HA) mode. Supports multi-tenancy and manages multiple pods from one instance.
Central Logging	ELK integrated with external syslog (over v4 or v6) for a log offload, with optional support of NFS with ELK snapshot.
External Syslog Servers	Support of multiple external syslog servers over IPv4 or IPv6. The minimum and the maximum number of external syslog servers that is supported is 1 and 3, respectively

VM Migration	Cold migration and resizing. Live Migration
Storage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Object store with SwiftStack, Block storage with Ceph, or NetApp. • Option to use Ceph for Glance and SolidFire for Cinder.
Monitoring	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Third-party integration with Zenoss (called NFVIMON). • Automated ToR configuration of collector ToR ports, when Cisco NCS 5500 is used as ToR. • CVIMMON for monitoring, a Cisco solution as a technical preview.
Support of External Auth System	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. LDAP with anonymous bind option. 2. Active Directory (AD)
Software Update	Update of Cloud Software for bug fixes on the same release.
Software Upgrade	Upgrade of non-VTS cloud from release 2.2.24 to release 2.4.6.
CIMC Upgrade Capability	Central management tool to upgrade the CIMC bundle image of one or more servers.
VPP port mirroring	Ability to trace or capture packets for debugging and other administrative purposes.
VXLAN extension into the cloud	<p>Extending native external VXLAN network into VNFs in the cloud.</p> <p>Support of single VXLAN or multi-VXLAN network terminating on the same compute node.</p> <p>Note Only two-VXLAN network is supported for now.</p>
Power Management of Computes	Option to power off or on computes selectively to conserve energy.
Automated enablement of Intel X710/XL710 NIC's PXE configuration on Cisco UCS-C series	Utility to update Intel X710/XL710 NIC's PXE configuration on Cisco UCS-C series.
Disk maintenance for Pod Nodes	Ability to replace faulty disks on the Pod nodes without the need for add, remove or replace node operation.

Integrated Test Tools	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Open Source Data-plane Performance Benchmarking: VMTP (an open source data plane VM to the VM performance benchmarking tool) and NFVBench (NFVI data plane and a service chain performance benchmarking tool) 2. Services Health Checks Integration: Cloudpulse and Cloudsanity.
-----------------------	--

**Note**

Configure the LACP on the data plane ports of the Cisco Nexus 9000 ToR, when Cisco VIM is running on Intel NIC for data plane with VPP as the mechanism driver. When Cisco NCS 5500 is the ToR (with mechanism driver VPP), the LACP configuration on the data plane is done through the Auto-ToR configuration feature of Cisco VIM.

Cisco NFVI Networking Overview

Cisco VIM supports installation on two different type of pods. The B-series and C-series offering supports NICs that are from Cisco (called as Cisco VIC). You can choose the C-series pod to run in a pure Intel NIC environment, and thereby obtain SRIOV support on the C-series pod. This section calls out the differences in networking between the Intel NIC and Cisco VIC installations.

To achieve network level security and isolation of tenant traffic, Cisco VIM segments the various OpenStack networks. The Cisco NFVI network includes six different segments in the physical infrastructure (underlay). These segments are presented as VLANs on the Top-of-Rack (ToR) Nexus switches (except for the provider network) and as vNIC VLANs on Cisco UCS servers. You must allocate subnets and IP addresses to each segment. Cisco NFVI network segments include: API, external, management and provisioning, storage, tenant and provider.

API Segment

The API segment needs one VLAN and two IPv4 addresses (four if you are installing Cisco VTS) in an externally accessible subnet different from the subnets assigned to other Cisco NFVI segments. These IP addresses are used for:

- OpenStack API end points. These are configured within the control node HAProxy load balancer.
- Management node external connectivity.
- Cisco Virtual Topology Services (VTS) if available in your Cisco NFVI package.
- Virtual Topology Controller (VTC). It is optional for VTS.

External Segment

The external segment needs one VLAN to configure the OpenStack external network. You can provide the VLAN during installation in the Cisco NFVI setup_data.yaml file, but you must configure the actual subnet using the OpenStack API after the installation. Use the external network to assign OpenStack floating IP addresses to VMs running on Cisco NFVI.

Management and Provisioning Segment

The management and provisioning segment needs one VLAN and one subnet with an address pool large enough to accommodate all the current and future servers planned for the pod for initial provisioning (PXE boot Linux) and, thereafter, for all OpenStack internal communication. This VLAN and subnet can be local to Cisco NFVI for C-Series deployments. For B-Series pods, the UCS Manager IP and management network must be routable. You must statically configure Management IP addresses of Nexus switches and Cisco UCS server Cisco IMC IP addresses, and not through DHCP. They must be through the API segment. The management/provisioning subnet can be either internal to Cisco NFVI (that is, in a lab it can be a non-routable subnet limited to Cisco NFVI only for C-Series pods), or it can be an externally accessible and routable subnet. All Cisco NFVI nodes (including the Cisco VTC node) need an IP address from this subnet.

Storage Segment

Cisco VIM has a dedicated storage network used for Ceph monitoring between controllers, data replication between storage nodes, and data transfer between compute and storage nodes. The storage segment needs one VLAN and /29 or larger subnet internal to Cisco NFVI to carry all Ceph replication traffic. All the participating nodes in the pod will have IP addresses on this subnet.

Tenant Segment

The tenant segment needs one VLAN and a subnet large enough to manage pod tenant capacity internal to Cisco NFVI to carry all tenant virtual network traffic. Only Cisco NFVI control and compute nodes have IP addresses on this subnet. The VLAN/subnet can be local to Cisco NFVI.

Provider Segment

Provider networks are optional for Cisco NFVI operations but are often used for real VNF traffic. You can allocate one or more VLANs for provider networks after installation is completed from OpenStack.

Cisco NFVI renames interfaces based on the network type it serves. The segment Virtual IP (VIP) name is the first letter of the segment name. Combined segments use the first character from each segment for the VIP, with the exception of provisioning whose interface VIP name is "mx" instead of "mp" to avoid ambiguity with the provider network. The following table shows Cisco NFVI network segments, usage, and network and VIP names.

Table 2: Cisco NFVI Networks

Network	Usage	Network Name	VIP Name
Management/Provisioning	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • OpenStack control plane traffic. • Application package downloads. • Server management; management node connects to servers on this network. • Host default route. • PXE booting servers during bare metal installations. 	Management and provisioning	mx

Network	Usage	Network Name	VIP Name
API	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clients connect to API network to interface with OpenStack APIs. • OpenStack Horizon dashboard. • Default gateway for HAProxy container. • Integration with endpoints served by SwiftStack cluster for native object storage, cinder backup service or Identity service with LDAP or AD. 	api	a
Tenant	VM to VM traffic. For example, VXLAN traffic.	tenant	t
External	Access to VMs using floating IP addresses.	external	e
Storage	Transit network for storage back-end. Storage traffic between VMs and Ceph nodes.	storage	s
Provider Network	Direct access to existing network infrastructure.	provider	p
ACIINFRA	Internal ACI Network for Policy management (only allowed when deployed with ACI)	aciinfra	o
Installer API	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Administrator uses installer API network to ssh to the management node. • Administrator connects to installer API to interface with secured services. For example, Kibana on the management node. 	VIM installer API	br_api

For each C-series pod node, two vNICs are created using different ports and bonded for redundancy for each network. Each network is defined in `setup_data.yaml` using the naming conventions listed in the preceding table. The VIP Name column provides the bonded interface name (for example, mx or a) while each vNIC name has a 0 or 1 appended to the bonded interface name (for example, mx0, mx1, a0, a1).

The Cisco NFVI installer creates the required vNICs, host interfaces, bonds, and bridges with mappings created between all elements. The number and type of created vNICs, interfaces, bonds, and bridges depend on the Cisco NFVI role assigned to the UCS server. For example, the controller node has more interfaces than the compute or storage nodes. The following table shows the networks that are associated with each Cisco NFVI server role.

Table 3: Cisco NFVI Network-to-Server Role Mapping

	Management Node	Controller Node	Compute Node	Storage Node
Management/Provisioning	+	+	+	+
ACIINFRA*		+	+	
API		+		

	Management Node	Controller Node	Compute Node	Storage Node
Tenant		+	+	
Storage		+	+	+
Provider			+	
External		+		



Note *ACIINFRA is only applicable when using ACI as a mechanism driver.

The network arrangement on third-party HP compute is slightly different from that of Cisco compute running with Intel NIC, because the HP computes have 2 less NIC ports than that are available in the Cisco Intel NIC BOM.

Following table lists the differences in the network arrangement between the Cisco compute and third-party HP compute.

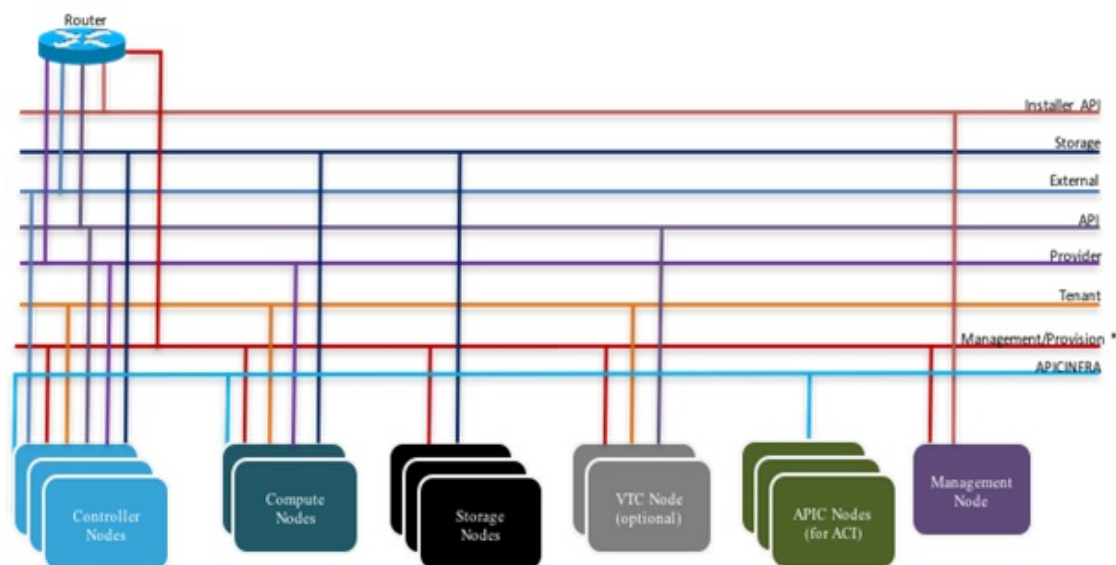
Network Interface	Cisco UCS c220/c240M4 Compute	HPE ProLiant DL360 Gen9 Compute
mx	Management control plane network	N/A
samxpet		Control and data plane network for everything other than SRIOV: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Management network on "br_mgmt" bridge interface with "samxpet" main interface as one of the member interface (native VLAN configuration required on the top-of-rack switches) 2. Storage network on the sub-interface "samxpet.<storage VLAN>" 3. Tenant and provider networks on veth interface "pet/pet-out" as one of the member interface with "br_mgmt" bridge interface
p	Provider data plane network	
sriov[0-3]	Provider data plane SRIOV networks	Provider data plane SRIOV networks
s	Storage control and data plane network	N/A

Network Interface	Cisco UCS c220/c240M4 Compute	HPE ProLiant DL360 Gen9 Compute
t	Tenant data plane network	N/A

In the initial Cisco NFVI deployment, two bridges are created on the controller nodes, and interfaces and bonds are attached to these bridges. The br_api bridge connects the API (a) interface to the HAProxy. The HAProxy and Keepalive container has VIPs running for each OpenStack API endpoint. The br_mgmt bridge connects the Management and Provisioning (mx) interface to the HAProxy container as well.

The following diagram shows the connectivity between Cisco NFVI nodes and networks.

Figure 5: Cisco NFVI Network Connectivity



* For C series, Cisco VIM Non-routable is recommended.
For B series, UCSMIP should be reachable from the management network.

Supported Layer 2 networking protocols include:

- Virtual extensible LAN (VXLAN) over a Linux bridge.
- VLAN over Open vSwitch(SRIOV with Intel 710NIC).
- VLAN over VPP/VLAN for C-series Only.
- Single Root Input/Output Virtualization (SRIOV) for UCS B-Series pods. SRIOV allows a single physical PCI Express to be shared on a different virtual environment. The SRIOV offers different virtual functions to different virtual components, for example, network adapters, on a physical server.

Any connection protocol can be used unless you install UCS B200 blades with the UCS Manager plugin, in which case, only OVS over VLAN can be used. The following table shows the available Cisco NFVI data path deployment combinations.

Table 4: Cisco NFVI Data Path Deployment Combinations

NFVI Pod Type	Pod Type	Mechanism Driver	Tenant Virtual Network Encapsulation		Provider Virtual Network Encapsulation	SRIOV for VM	PCI Passthrough Ports	MTU Values	
			MLAN	VxLAN				1500	9000
UCS C-series	Full on	LinuxBridge	No	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes	No
UCS C-series	Full on , micro (M4 or M5 based), , HC	Openvswitch	Yes	No	Yes	Yes*	No	Yes	Yes
UCS C-series	Full on, micro (M4 or M5 based),	VPP	Yes	No	Yes	Yes*	No	Yes	Yes
UCS C-series	Full on, micro (M4 based),	ACI	Yes	No	Yes	Yes*	No	Yes	Yes
UCS C-series	Full on	VTF with VTC	No	Yes	Yes	No	No (except through DPDK)	Yes	Yes
UCS B	Full on	Openvswitch	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes

**Note**

Fullon: Indicates dedicated control, compute and ceph nodes.

Micro: Indicates converged control, compute and ceph nodes with expandable computes.

Hyperconverged (HC): Indicates dedicated control, compute, but all ceph nodes are compute nodes also.

**Note**

The SRIOV support applies to only with Intel NIC-based pods.

**Note**

VTF with VTC is only supported on C-series Cisco VIC.

Pod with Intel NICs— In case of the pod having Intel NICs (X710), the networking is slightly different. You need to have atleast two NICs (4x10G) on a single server to support NIC level redundancy. Each NIC is connected to each ToR (connections explained later in the chapter). Since vNICs are not supported in the Intel card, bond the physical interfaces at the host and then create sub-interfaces based on the segment VLAN. Lets call the two NIC cards as NIC_1 and NIC_2 and call their four ports as A, B, C, D. Unlike Cisco VIC based pod, the traffic here is classified as follows:

1. Control plane
2. Data plane (external, tenant and non-SRIOV provider network).
3. SRIOV (optional for provider network). If SRIOV is used, the data plane network only carries external and tenant network traffic.

Control Plane

The control plane is responsible for carrying all the control and management traffic of the cloud. The traffic that flows through control plane are:

1. Management/Provision
2. Storage
3. API

The control plane interface is created by bonding the NIC_1 A port with NIC_2 A port. The bonded interface name is called as samx, indicating that it is carrying Storage, API, Management/Provision traffic (naming convention is similar to Cisco VIC pod). The slave interfaces (physical interfaces) of the bonded interface are renamed as samx0 and samx1. samx0 belongs to NIC_1 and samx1 belongs to NIC_2. Sub interfaces are then carved out of this samx interface based on the Storage, API VLANs. The management/provision traffic will be untagged/native VLAN in order to support pxe booting.

Data Plane

The data plane is responsible for carrying all the VM data traffic. The traffic that flows through the data plane are

- Tenant
- Provider
- External

The data plane is created by bonding the NIC_1 B port with NIC_2 B port. The bonded interface name here would be pet, indicating that it is carrying Provider, External and Tenant traffic. The slave interfaces of this bonded interface would be visible as pet0 and pet1. pet0 belongs to the NIC_1 and pet1 belongs to NIC_2.

In case of OVS/VLAN, the "pet" interface is used as it is (trunked to carry all the data VLANs) to the Openstack cloud, as all the tagging and untagging happens at the Openstack level. In case of Linux Bridge/VXLAN, there will be sub-interface for tenant VLAN to act as the VXLAN tunnel endpoint.

SRIOV

In case of Intel NIC pod, the third (and optionally the fourth) port from each NIC can be used for SRIOV traffic. This is optional and is set or unset through a setup_data.yaml parameter. Unlike the control and data plane interfaces, these interfaces are not bonded and hence there is no redundancy. Each SRIOV port can have maximum of 32 Virtual Functions and the number of virtual function to be created are configurable through the setup_data.yaml. The interface names of the SRIOV will show up as sriov0 and sriov1 on each host, indicating that sriov0 belongs to NIC_1 C port and sriov1 belongs to NIC_2 C port.

In the case of Intel NIC pod, the following table summarizes the above discussion

Network	Usage	Type of traffic	Interface name
Control Plane	To carry control/management traffic	Storage, API, Management/Provision	samx
Data Plane	To carry data traffic	Provider, External, Tenant	pet
SRIOV	To carry SRIOV traffic	SRIOV	sriov0, sriov1

The following table shows the interfaces that are present on each type of server (role based).

	Management Node	Controller Node	Compute Node	Storage Node
Installer API	+			
Control plane	+	+	+	+
Data plane		+	+	
SRIOV			+	

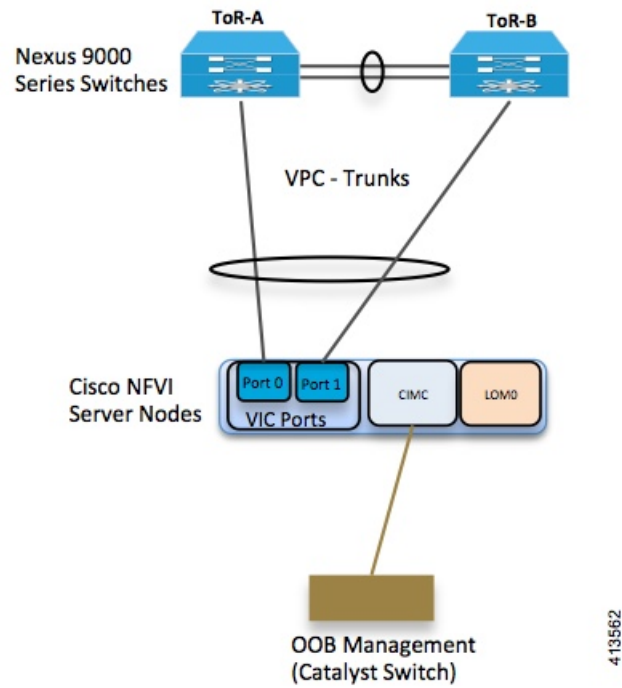


Note On an Intel pod, all kind of OpenStack networks are created using the **physnet1** as the physnet name.

UCS C-Series Network Topologies

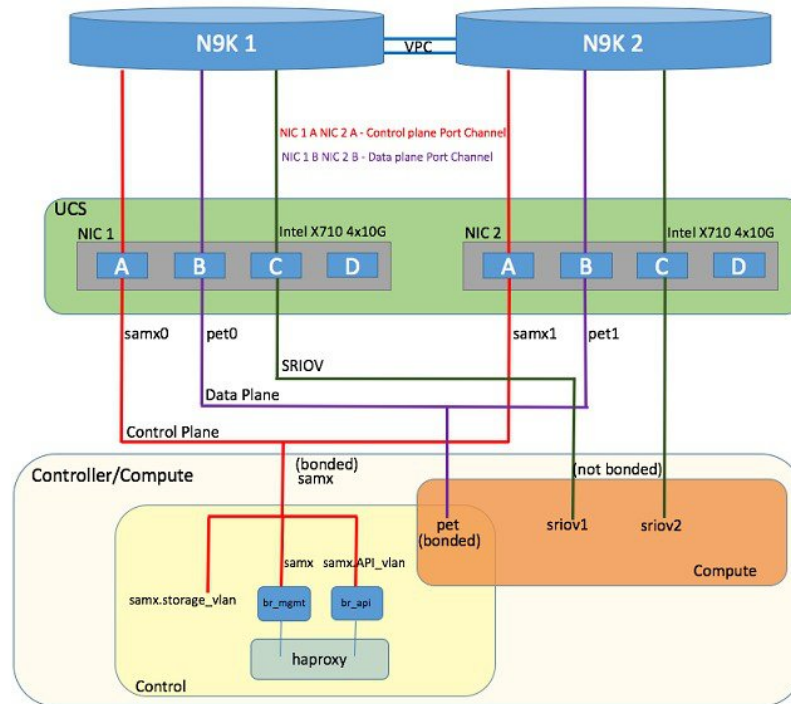
Cisco NFVI UCS servers connect to the ToR switches using Cisco UCS dual-port Virtual Interface Cards (VICs). The VIC is an Enhanced Small Form-Factor Pluggable (SFP+) 10 Gigabit Ethernet and Fiber Channel over Ethernet (FCoE)-capable PCI Express (PCIe) card designed for Cisco UCS C-Series Rack Servers. Each port connects to a different ToR using a Virtual Port Channel (VPC). Each VIC is configured with multiple vNICs that correspond to specific Cisco VIM networks. The UCS Cisco IMC port is connected to an out-of-band (OOB) Cisco management switch.

The following figure shows the UCS C-Series pod Cisco NFVI host to ToR topology.

Figure 6: UCS C-Series Host to ToR Topology

In the case of Intel NIC, a single two port Cisco VIC in the preceding diagram, is replaced with two 4-port 710 Intel NIC. An extra Intel NIC is added to provide card level redundancy.

Figure 7: UCS C-Series Intel NIC Details



Of the four ports that are available in each NIC card, port A is used for management traffic (provision, API, storage, etc), whereas the port B is used for data plane (tenant and provider network) traffic. Port C (and optionally Port D) is dedicated for SRIOV (configured optionally based on `setup_data.yaml`). Sub-interfaces are carved out of the data and control plane interfaces to provide separate traffic based on specific roles. While the ports A and B from each NIC help in forming bonded interface, the ports C and D over which SRIOV traffic for provider network flows is not bonded. Extreme care should be taken during pod setup, so that ports A, B and C for the Intel NIC is connected to the ToRs. Port D can be optionally used as a second pair of SRIOV ports by appropriate intent defined in the `setup_data.yaml` file. From Cisco VIM release 2.4.2 onwards, this port option is available for both M4 and M5 based systems or pods.

The following table provides the default link aggregation member pairing support for the pods based on server type:

Table 5: Default Link Aggregation Members Pairing

Server/POD Type	Target Functions	Default NIC Layout
M4 Intel NIC based	Control Plane	NIC-1 A + NIC-2 A
	Data Plane	NIC-1 B + NIC-2 B
	SRIOV 0/1	NIC-1 C + NIC-2 C
	SRIOV 2/3	NIC-1 D + NIC-2 D

Server/POD Type	Target Functions	Default NIC Layout
M5 Intel NIC based	Control Plane	NIC-1 A + NIC-1 B
	Data Plane	NIC-1 C + NIC-1 D
	SRIOV 0/1	NIC-2 A + NIC-2 B
	SRIOV 2/3	NIC-2 C + NIC-2 D



Note In M5, a NIC_LEVEL_REDUNDANCY option is introduced to support the M4 default option for link aggregation settings.

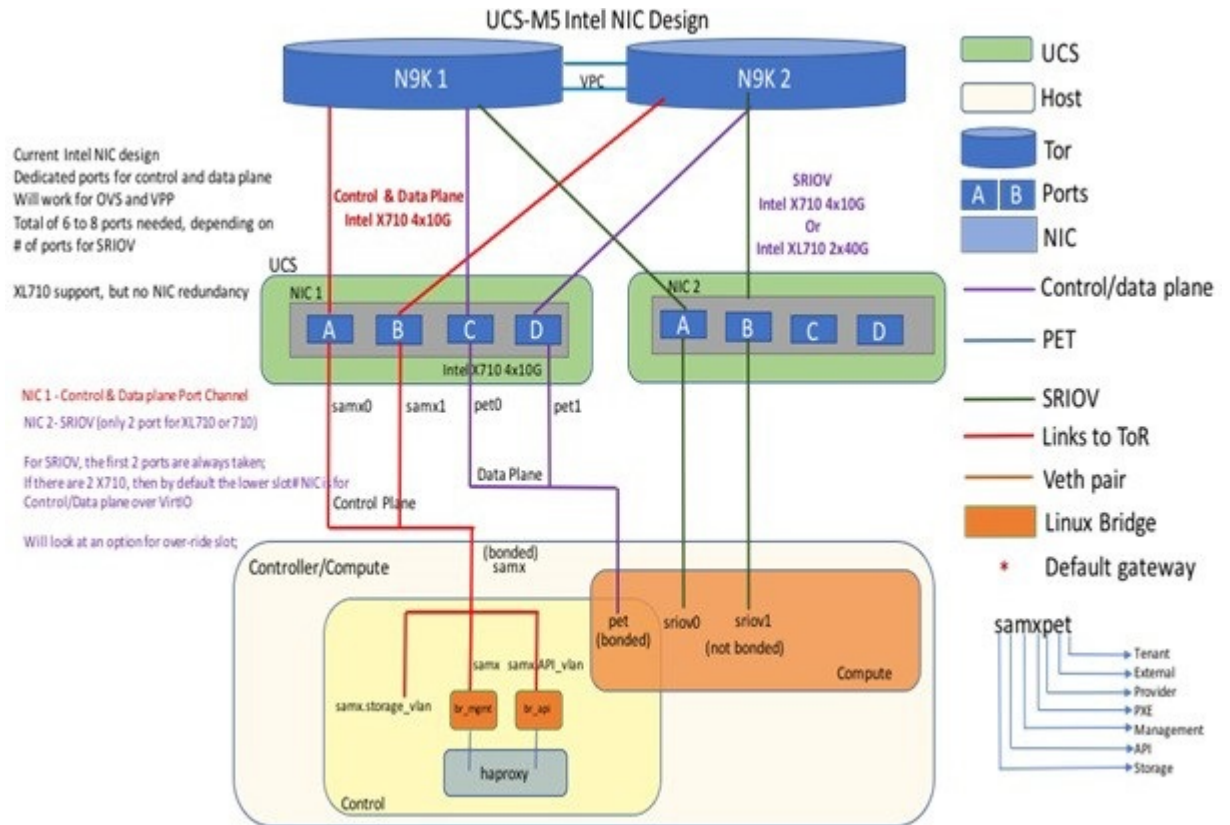
From Cisco VIM 2.4.2 onwards, support of M5 full on pods with two port XL-710 across control, compute and dedicated Ceph Nodes, and with NIC_LEVEL_REDUNDANCY is available. This deployment can be achieved with Cisco Nexus 9000 series or Cisco NCS 5500 as ToR. SRIOV is not supported in computes with XL-710. However, the pod can also support computes with four port X-710, where SRIOV is over port C and D.

In Cisco VIM, computes (M4 based testbed) running a Cisco 1227 VIC, and 2 2-port Intel 520 NIC are supported. In this combination, SRIOV is running on the Intel NIC, whereas the control and data plane are carried by virtual interfaces over Cisco VIC.

Cisco VIM 2.4 introduces the support of C220/C240 M5 servers in a micropod configuration with an option to augment the pod with additional computes (upto a max of 16). The M5 micropod environment is based on X710 for control and data plane and an additional XL710 or 2xX710 for SRIOV. The SRIOV card is optional. Once the SRIOV card is chosen, all the computes must have same number of SRIOV ports across the pod.

The following diagram depicts the server network card diagram for the M5 setup.

Figure 8: Networking Details of UCS-M5 Micropod Deployment

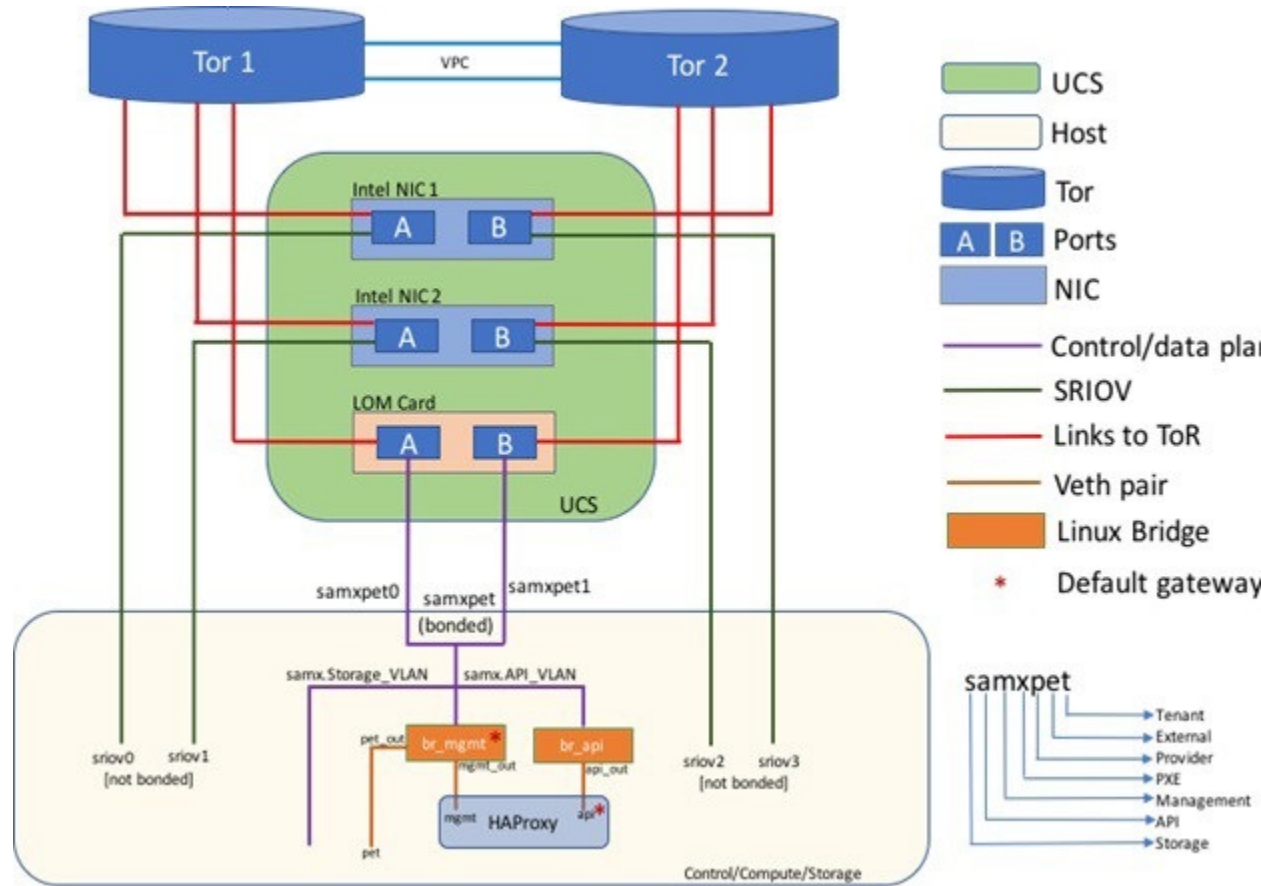


Cisco VIM 2.4 introduces the first third-party compute. The first SKU chosen is HPE ProLiant DL360 Gen9. In Cisco VIM 2.4, the supported deployment is a full-on pod, with OVS as the mechanism driver, where the management, control, and storage nodes are based on existing Cisco UCS c220/240M4 BOM, and the compute nodes are on HPE ProLiant DL360 Gen9 hardware:

```
ProLiant DL360 Gen9 with HP Ethernet 1Gb 4-port 331i Adapter - NIC (755258-B21) 2 x E5-2695
v4 @ 2.10GHz CPU
8 x 32GB DDR4 memory (Total 256GB)
1 x Smart Array P440ar hardware RAID card with battery
2 x 1.2 TB - SAS 12GB/S 10k RPM HDD
1 x FlexLOM HP Ethernet 10Gb 2-port 560FLR-SFP+ Adapter
2 x PCIe HP Ethernet 10Gb 2-port 560SFP+ Adapter
System ROM: P89 v2.40 (02/17/2017)
iLO Firmware Version: 2.54 Jun 15 2017
```

In the case of HP Computes, the FlexLOM HP Ethernet 10Gb interface is used for management and tenant network, and the two additional HP Ethernet 10Gb 2-port 560SFP+ Adapters are used for SRIOV for the provider network. Listed below is network schematic of the HP Compute node.

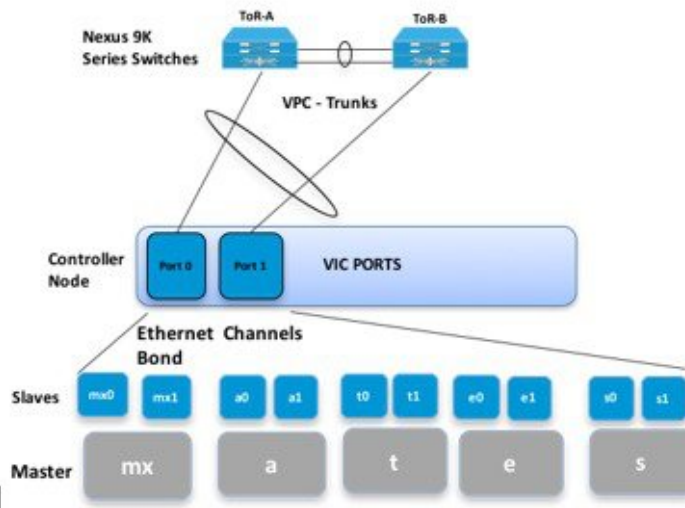
Figure 9: Networking details of HP DL360GEN9



The Cisco NFVI controller node has four bonds: mx, a, t, and e. Each has a slave interface that is named with the network name association and a mapped number. For example, the management and provisioning network, mx, maps to mx0 and mx1, the API network, a, to a0 and a1, and so on. The bonds map directly to the vNICs that are automatically created on the controller node when it is deployed.

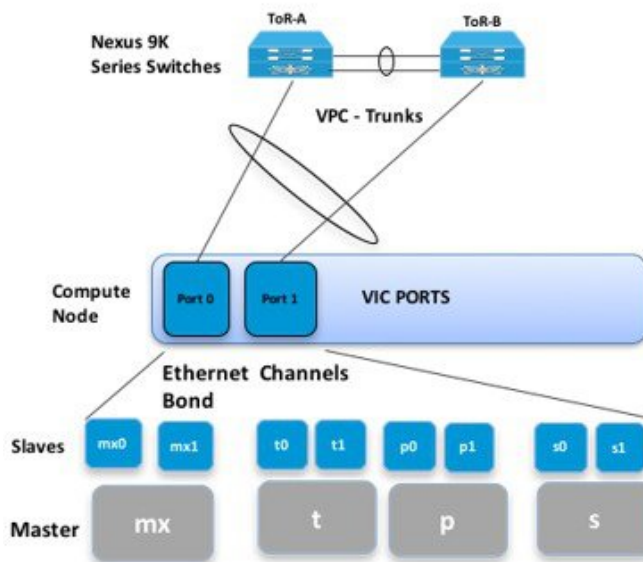
The following figure shows the controller node network-to-bond-to-vNIC interface mapping.

Figure 10: Controller Node Network to Bond Mapping

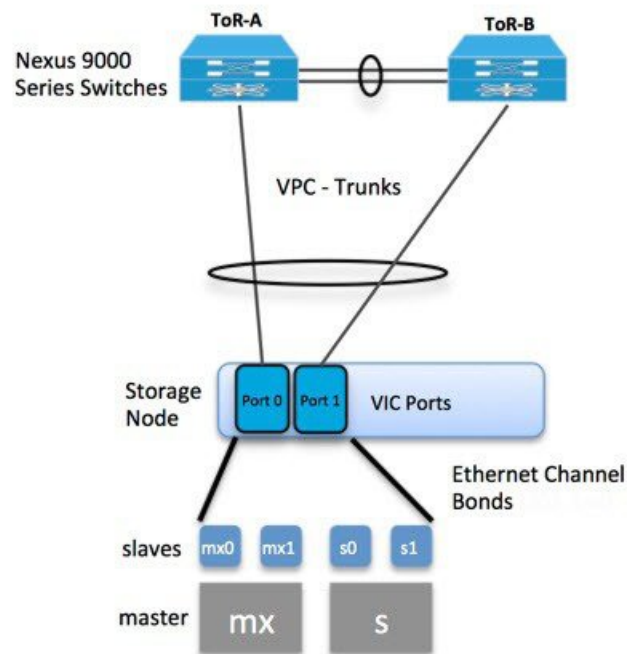


The Cisco NFVI compute node has three bonds: mx, t, and p. Each has a slave interface that is named with the network name association and a mapped number. For example, the provider network, p, maps to p0 and p1. The bonds map directly to the vNICs that are automatically created on the compute node when it is deployed. The following figure shows the compute node network-to-bond-to-vNIC interfaces mapping.

Figure 11: Compute Node Network to Bond Mapping



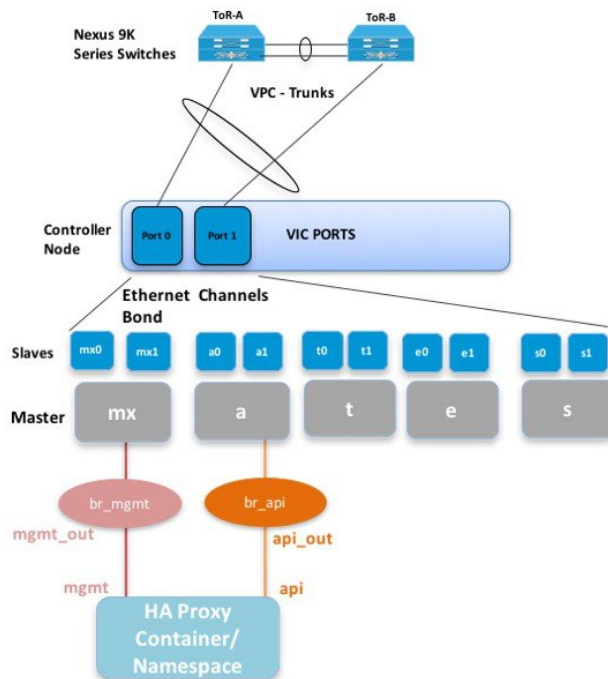
The Cisco NFVI storage node has two bonds: mx and s. Each has a slave interface that is named with the network name association and a mapped number. For example, the storage network, s, maps to s0 and s1. Storage nodes communicate with other storage nodes over the mx network. The storage network is only used for Ceph backend traffic. The bonds map directly to the vNICs that are automatically created on the storage node when it is deployed. The following figure shows the network-to-bond-to-vNIC interfaces mapping for a Cisco NFVI storage node.

Figure 12: Storage Node Networking to Bond Mapping

Cisco NFVI installation creates two bridges on the controller nodes and interfaces and bonds are attached to the bridges. The br_api bridge connects the API (a) interface to the HAProxy container. The HAProxy and Keepalive container has VIPs running for each OpenStack API endpoint. The br_mgmt bridge connects the Management and Provisioning (mx) interface to the HAProxy container as well.

The following figure shows the connectivity between the mx interface and the br_mgmt bridge. It also shows the connectivity between the br_mgmt and the HAProxy container/namespace using mgmt_out and mgmt_in interfaces. The figure shows the connectivity between the api interface and the br_api bridge as well as the link between the br_mgmt bridge and the HAProxy container using api_out and mgmt_out interfaces.

Figure 13: Bridge and Network Namespace Layout



A sample routing table is shown below. `br_api` is the default route and `br_mgmt` is local to the pod.

```
[root@c43-bot-mgmt ~]# ip route
default via 172.26.233.193 dev br_api proto static metric 425
172.26.233.0/25 dev br_mgmt proto kernel scope link src 172.26.233.104 metric 425
172.26.233.192/26 dev br_api proto kernel scope link src 172.26.233.230 metric 425

[root@c43-bot-mgmt ~]# ip addr show br_api
6: br_api: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue state UP
    link/ether 58:ac:78:5c:91:e0 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
    inet 172.26.233.230/26 brd 172.26.233.255 scope global br_api
        valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
    inet6 fe80::2c1a:f6ff:feb4:656a/64 scope link
        valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever

[root@c43-bot-mgmt ~]# ip addr show br_mgmt
7: br_mgmt: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue state UP
    link/ether 58:ac:78:5c:e4:95 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
    inet 172.26.233.104/25 brd 172.26.233.127 scope global br_mgmt
        valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
    inet6 fe80::403:14ff:fef4:10c5/64 scope link
        valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
```

Cisco VIM Management Node Networking

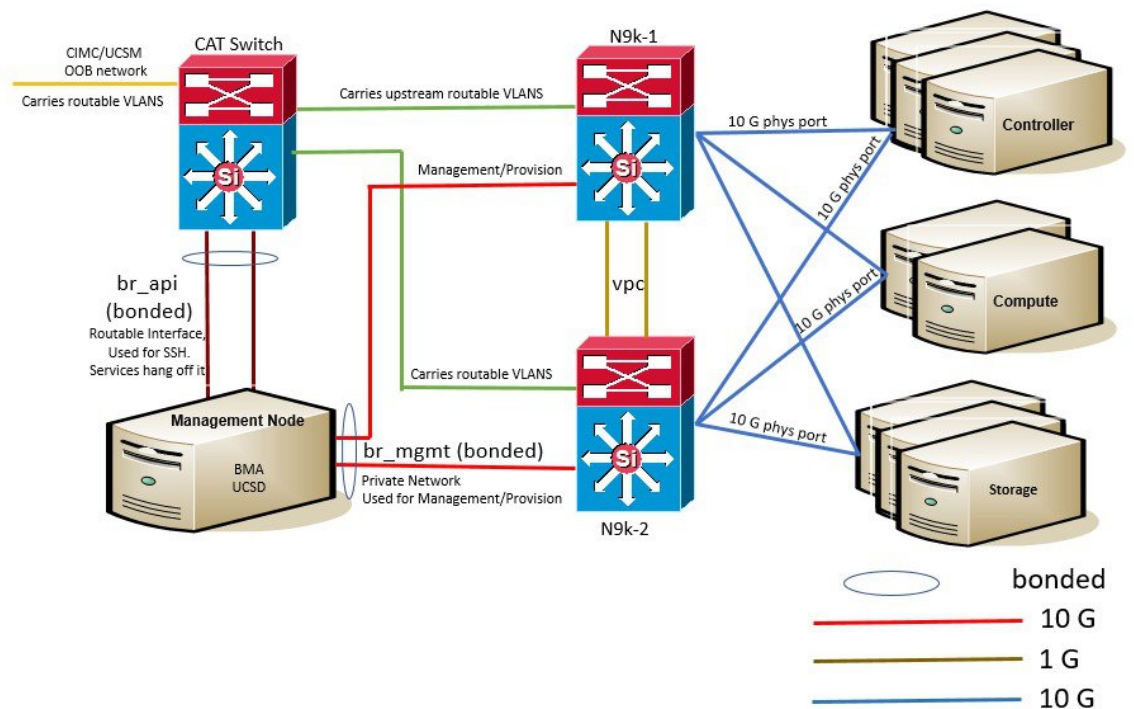
In Cisco VIM, the management node has two interfaces. One for API and the other for provisioning. This is primarily done for security reasons so that internal pod management or control plane messages (RabbitMQ, Maria DB, and so on) do not leak out, and hence reduce the attack vector to the pod. As the name indicates, the API interface is to access the VIM installer API and is also used to SSH to the management node. All

external services (installer API, Insight, ELK, and so on) are password protected and hang off the API interface. Default route of the management node points to the API interface.

The second interface, also called the provisioning interface is used to PXE boot the various nodes that constitute the OpenStack pod. Typically, provisioning interface is a non-routable interface that is reserved for OpenStack management traffic.

In B-series pod, the networks between provisioning and the UCSM IP need to be routable. Proper ACL has to be applied in the upstream router so that other networks do not interfere with the provisioning network. Depending on the overall deployment, the management node acts as a jump-server to the OpenStack nodes.

Figure 14: Cisco VIM Management Node Networking



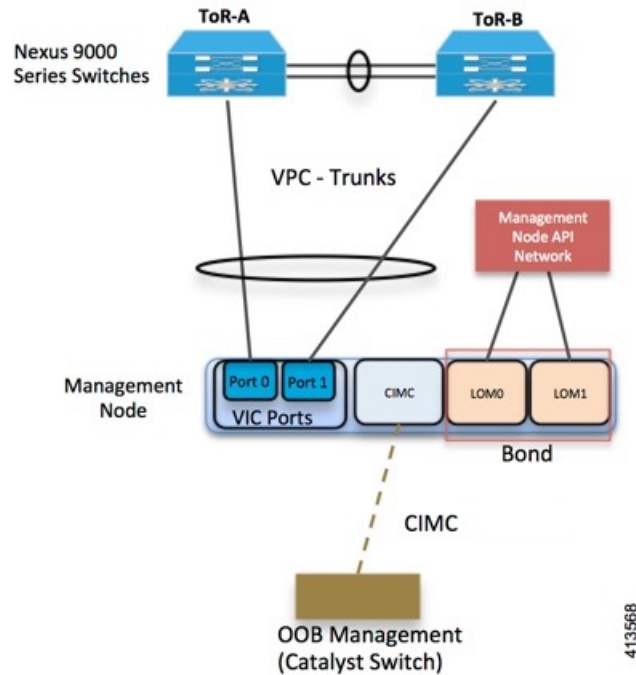
Cisco NFVI UCS C-Series management node physically connects to the network. Unlike other nodes, the management node does not use multiple vNICs corresponding to specific Cisco NFVI networks. Instead, it connects to the management and API networks using two different physical connections. The management node connects to the management network using a Cisco two-port VIC with each port connecting to a different ToR switch in a VPC configuration. The Cisco VIC card utilizes the default vNICs, but requires the vNICs to be in trunk mode and the default VLAN set to the management network VLAN. The management node connects to the API network using both one Gbps LAN On Motherboard (LOM) ports connected in a port channel configuration. These ports can either connect to the Nexus 9000 Series switch in a VPC configuration, or to an operator-managed switch(es), depending on how the operator wants to segment their network. The Cisco IMC port can optionally be connected to an out-of-band management Catalyst switch.

Management node services, which are required to start the other topology nodes, listen on the management network and the traffic flowing over the vNICs or NICs on that network. These services and the other management network services are unsecured. Secure management node services listen on the management node API network, and their traffic flows over the LOM ports. This service division allows tenants to utilize tighter network access control to the management network than the management node API network. The following figure shows the Cisco NFVI management node (UCS C-Series) API network connections.



Note Connecting Cisco IMC port to a Cisco OOB management switch is optional.

Figure 15: Management Node API Network Connections



For the day-0 server automation in Cisco VIM, ensure that the reachability to:

CIMC/ILO/BMC of the individual servers from the management node is available through the br_api network.

Cloud API, external network (for ssh to floating IPs) and provider network from the management node is available, as the VMTP and NFVbench are typically run from the management node.



Note From the CVIM release 2.4.3 onwards, you can enable or disable the default behavior of the management node reachability from cloud API, external network, and provider network as part of their day-0 configuration.

If you disable the reachability to cloud api, external, and provider network for security reasons, then:

- VMTP and NFVbench are not accessible from the management node.
- Cloud api, external network and provider network must be properly routed as the Cisco VIM cannot automatically validate the same.

IPv6 Support on Management Network

You can switch from IPv4 to IPv6 as the number of available routable IPv4 networks is limited. In Cisco VIM, the management network uses the default IPv4 route to reach external service like NTP, DNS, AD/LDAP, SwiftStack, and so on, if it is not locally hosted.

Due to the limited availability of IPv4 address space, if you cannot provide a routable IPv4 network or local or dual-home of the external services that require routing, for example, AD or LDAP, deployment hindrance can occur.

IPv4 is obligatory in Cisco VIM, as the provision network colocates with the management network (mx/samx interface) for baremetal PXE install and Ansible orchestration.

As CEPH and OpenStack control plane communication are on the same management network, you cannot completely remove IPv4 from the management network. However, you can run IPv4+IPv6 dual stack in which IPv4 network can exist in a non-routable private network and IPv6 network can exist in a routable semi private network. This ensures to satisfy the requirements of the CiscoVIM and accessibility to the external services.

In Cisco VIM, the management network supports IPv6 addresses for servers, while the management node is statically allocated from a given pool. The external services that support both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses, are DNS, NTP, and AD or LDAP. You can run IPv4+IPv6 (optionally) as the cloud API endpoint.

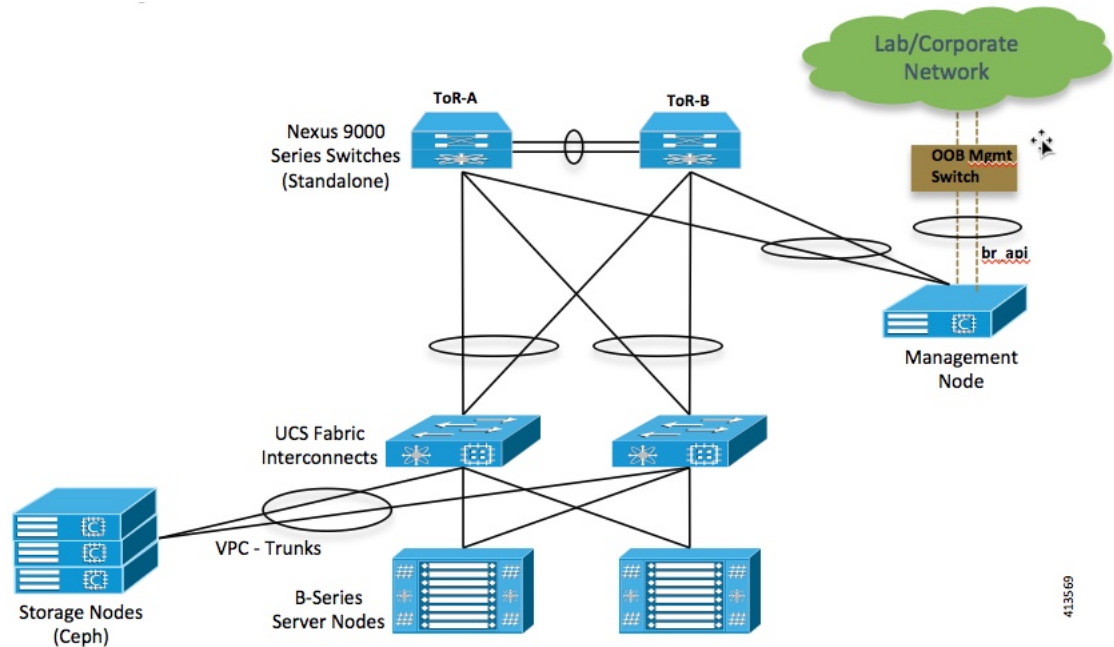
UCS C-Series and B-Series -Topologies

You can deploy Cisco NFVI using a combination of Cisco C-Series and B-Series servers. The C-Series management node is connected to the Cisco Nexus 9000 Series ToRs through the Cisco VIC in a VPC configuration. The UCS Fabric Interconnects (FIs) are connected to the ToRs and the UCS B-Series blade chassis is connected to the FIs. The C-Series storage nodes are connected to the ToRs as well. For C-series implementation, see *Cisco NFVI Networking Overview*. For the combination of the C-Series and B-Series implementation, two exceptions are listed below:

- For UCS B-Series, the Cisco UCS Manager IP address must be available to the Cisco NFVI management network. For UCS C-Series, this requirement is optional.
- The UCS Manager cluster and VIP connections are not attached to one of the Cisco NFVI network segments.

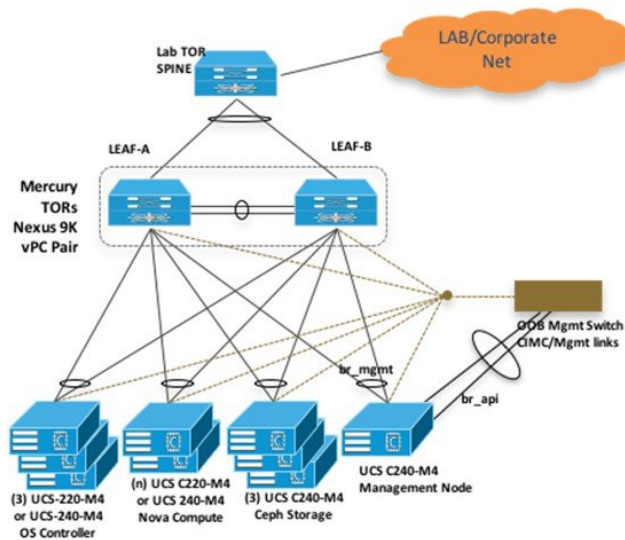
Following figure shows a high-level view of Cisco UCS C-Series and B-Series servers that are used in a Cisco NFVI deployment.

Figure 16: UCS B-Series Topology



For C-Series pods, each host has a 2x10-GE Cisco network card 1227 from which the installer creates two vNICs for each network to ensure that the network topology has built-in redundancy. The provider network, if needed, is also created from the same network card. Each link of a given network type terminates to a unique Cisco Nexus 9000 switch, which acts as the ToR. The Cisco Nexus 9000s are configured in VPC mode to ensure that the network redundancy. The networking redundancy is extended to the management node, which has a redundant vNIC for the installer API and management or provisioning networks. The following figure shows the C-Series topology.

Figure 17: Cisco NFVI C-Series Topology

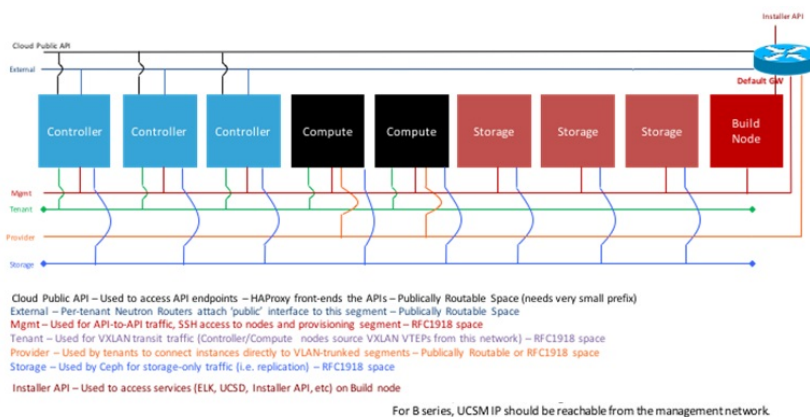




Note While the figure depicts UCS 220 M4s as the controller and compute, it also supports UCS 240 M4s as control and compute nodes.

Cisco NFVI uses multiple networks and VLANs to isolate network segments. For the UCS C-Series management and storage nodes, VLANs are trunked between the ToR switches and the Cisco VICs on the C-Series nodes. For the UCS B-Series controllers and compute nodes, VLANs are trunked between the ToR switches, the UCS Fabric Interconnects, and the B-Series blades. The figure shows the network segments and how each node is attached to them. The network segments are VLANs that are trunked between the respective upstream switch/FI and the C-Series or B-Series node.

Figure 18: Network and VLAN Layout for Combined C-Series and B-Series Installation



Cisco NFVI High Availability

Cisco NFVI high availability (HA) is provided by HAProxy, a single-threaded, event-driven, non-blocking engine combining a fast I/O layer with a priority-based scheduler. HAProxy architecture is layered with bypass mechanisms at each level to ensure that the data does not reach higher levels than needed. Most processing is performed in the kernel.

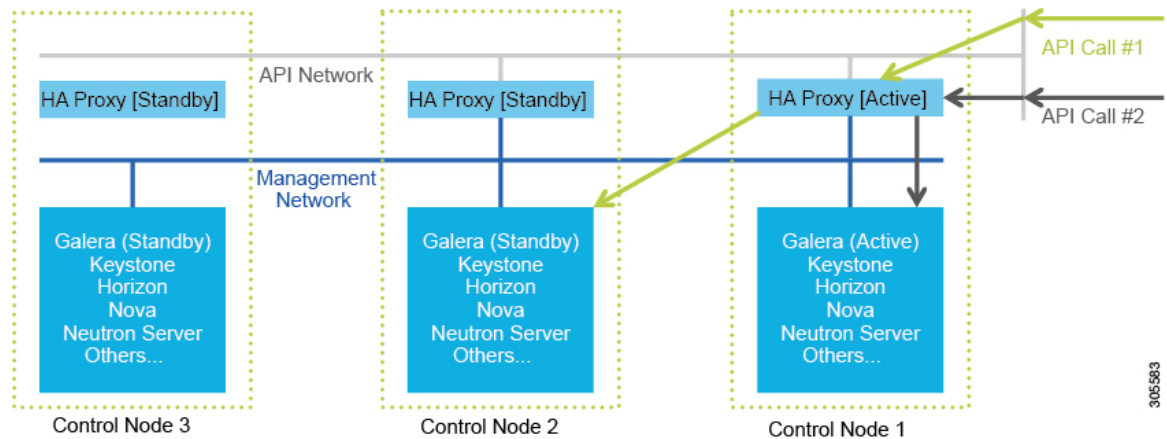
The following figure shows a detailed view of Cisco NFVI controllers connecting to the API and Management and Provisioning network. It also shows how the bridges are configured and the roles of the HAProxy container and network namespace. The dedicated HAProxy container network namespace was created to avoid split default gateway problems. The namespace allows API segment ingress and egress traffic to have a different default gateway than the one configured on each controller host for non-API traffic. In the illustration, two of the three Cisco NFVI controllers have HAProxy containers and a dedicated Linux network namespace. (Cisco NFVI supports three HAProxy containers).

In the figure, Control Node 1 is attached to the API network segment through the br_api bridge. The br_api bridge connects to the Linux network namespace where the HAProxy container has an interface that is mapped through the api <> api_out interface mapping. The HAProxy container has a default gateway configured that points to the upstream API Layer 3 First Hop Redundancy Protocol (FHRP) VIP. This gateway is used for the HAProxy container incoming and outgoing API traffic.

Outside traffic coming in through the API interface is routed into the API network. The traffic traverses the br_api bridge, goes into the Linux network namespace and then the API VIP (based on the IP address or port)

that is listening on the HAProxy container. The HAProxy container establishes a connection with the backend API endpoint (for example, the OpenStack Horizon dashboard) and the return traffic passes through the container and back out the API network following the default gateway for the container on the API network. All other non-API traffic such as the management access over SSH to the Cisco VIM controller comes into the management or provisioning network and access the node directly. Return traffic uses the host-level default gateway that is configured on the Linux (RHEL) operating system.

Figure 19: HAProxy Control Node Flow



If an HA event occurs in a Cisco NFVI pod, Cisco VIM automatically shuts down machines by failing over services. Examples include:

- For API servers, HAProxy automatically ensures that the other redundant control services handle requests, avoiding the shutdown/terminated/non-responding one.
- For quorum services, such as Galera, the remaining members of the quorum continue to provide service and HAProxy ensures that new requests go to the remaining processes.
- For an active/standby process such as HAProxy, the system moves the endpoint IP to a standby copy and continues to operate.

All these behaviors are automatic and do not require manual intervention. When the server is restarted, the services automatically come into service and are added to the load balancing pool, joining their quorums or are added as backup services, depending on the service type.

While manual intervention is not needed, some specific failure scenarios (for example, Mariadb, rabbit) can cause problems that require manual intervention. For example, if a complete network failure occurs, the Galera and RabbitMQ clusters can go into three-way partition. While the Cisco NFVI cluster is resilient to single-point failures, two switches failing simultaneously—something highly unlikely in long-running systems—can sometimes happen due to administrative error, in which case, manual intervention is needed. To repair the pod, the management node must be up and running and all the nodes accessible through password-less SSH from the management node. From the installer<tagid> dir, execute:

```
# ciscovim cluster-recovery
```

Control nodes recovers after the network partitions are resolved. After executing this command, control nodes services come back to working state. To make sure that the Nova services are good across the compute nodes, execute the following command after sourcing /root/openstack-configs/openrc:

```
# nova service-list
```


To check for the overall cloud status, execute the following:

```
# cd installer-<tagid>/tools  
# ./cloud_sanity.py -c all
```

Cisco NFVI Storage Node Overview

Block Storage

Cisco NFVI storage nodes utilize Ceph, an open source software for creating redundant, scalable data storage using clusters of standardized servers to store petabytes of accessible data. OpenStack Object Storage is a long-term storage system for large amounts of static data that can be retrieved, leveraged, and updated. It uses a distributed architecture with no central point of control, providing greater scalability, redundancy, and permanence. Objects are written to multiple hardware devices, with the OpenStack software responsible for ensuring data replication and integrity across the cluster. Storage clusters scale horizontally by adding new nodes. If a node fails, OpenStack replicates its content across other active storage nodes. Because Ceph uses software logic to ensure data replication and distribution across different devices, inexpensive commodity hard drives and servers can be used in lieu of more expensive equipment.

Cisco NFVI storage nodes include object storage devices (OSDs), hard disk drives (HDDs), and solid state drives (SSDs). OSDs organize data into containers called objects that a user or application determines are related. The objects reside in a flat address space where they all exist at the same level and cannot be placed inside one another. Each OSD has a unique object identifier (OID) that allows the Cisco NFVI control node to retrieve it without knowing the physical location of the data it contains.

HDDs store and retrieve digital information using one or more rigid rapidly rotating disks coated with magnetic material. The disks are paired with magnetic heads arranged on a moving actuator arm, which read and write data to the disk surfaces. Data is accessed in a random-access manner; individual data blocks can be stored or retrieved in any order and not only sequentially. HDDs are a type of non-volatile memory, retaining stored data even when powered off.

SSDs are solid-state storage devices that use integrated circuit assemblies as memory to store data persistently. SSDs primarily use electronic interfaces compatible with traditional block input/output (I/O) hard disk drives, which permit simple replacements in common applications.

Cisco NFVI storage nodes are managed by the control node applications including Ceph monitoring dashboard, Glance, and Cinder. The Ceph monitoring dashboard provides a view into the overall storage node health. Glance virtualizes pools of block storage devices and provides a self-storage API to request and consume those resources. Cinder is an OpenStack block storage service designed to present storage resources to the OpenStack compute node.

In Cisco VIM, depending on the needs of the user, the number of OSDs a pod can have is between 3 and 20.

Cisco VIM 2.4 supports NetApp devices running ONTAP 9.X or higher. NetApp devices are added as an alternate to Ceph for block storage. Cisco VIM has been integrated and tested with FAS2650 SKU of NetApp, however it does not preclude Cisco VIM from working with SKUs of NetApp that are compatible FAS2650. Now, you have to choose the blockstorage and the hardware from Day 0.

Object Storage

Cisco VIM provides an integration with SwiftStack, an object storage solution. In this case, the SwiftStack is installed and managed outside the Cisco VIM ahead of time, and the VIM orchestrator adds the relevant Keystone configuration to access the SwiftStack endpoint. In addition to Keystone integration, the Cinder service is also configured to support backup of the volumes to SwiftStack object store. In the current integration, the SwiftStack endpoint has to be in a network routable to/from the CiscoVIM API network (as the VIM API

is the same as the Keystone public endpoint network). In the current release, because of limitations in SwiftStack, Cisco VIM is integrated only with KeystoneV2.

In Cisco VIM, you can choose to use Solidfire as an option for block storage along with Ceph. In this scenario, the backend for Glance is Ceph, and the customers have a choice for the Cinder backend to be Ceph or Solidfire. The Cinder block storage service manages the creation, attachment, and detachment of these volumes between a storage system, such as, SolidFire, and different host servers. Also, in Cisco VIM, the data in Solidfire will be backed by Ceph. The Solidfire cluster is pre-deployed and has 2 networks: management and storage. It is recommended that:

- The storage network for Cisco VIM is same as that for Solidfire.
- The management network for Solidfire is reachable from Cisco VIM control nodes.

Overview to Cisco Virtual Topology System

The Cisco Virtual Topology System (VTS) is a standards-based, open, overlay management and provisioning system for data center networks. It automates the data center overlay fabric provisioning for both physical and virtual workloads.

Cisco VTS provides a network virtualization architecture and software-defined networking (SDN) framework that meets multitenant data center cloud service requirements. It enables a policy-based approach for overlay provisioning.

Cisco VTS automates network overlay provisioning and management tasks, integrates with OpenStack and simplifies the management of heterogeneous network environments. Cisco VTS provides an embedded Cisco VTS GUI and a set of northbound Representational State Transfer (REST) APIs that is consumed by orchestration and cloud management systems.

Cisco VTS architecture has two main components: the Policy Plane and the Control Plane. These perform core functions such as SDN control, resource allocation, and core management function.

- **Policy Plane**—Enables Cisco VTS to implement a declarative policy model that captures user intent and converts it into specific device-level constructs. Cisco VTS includes a set of modular policy constructs that can be organized into user-defined services for use cases across service provider and cloud environments. The policy constructs are exposed through REST APIs that is consumed by orchestrators and applications to express user intent, or instantiated through the Cisco VTS GUI. Policy models are exposed as system policies or service policies.
- **Control Plane**—Serves as the SDN control subsystem that programs the various data planes including the VTFs residing on the x86 servers, hardware leafs, DCI gateways. The control plane hosts the Cisco IOS XRv Software instance that provides route peering capabilities between the DCI gateways or to a BGP route reflector. (Cisco IOS XRv is the virtualized version of Cisco IOS XR Software.) The control plane enables an MP-BGP EVPN-based control plane for VXLAN overlays originating from leafs or software VXLAN tunnel endpoints (VTEPs)

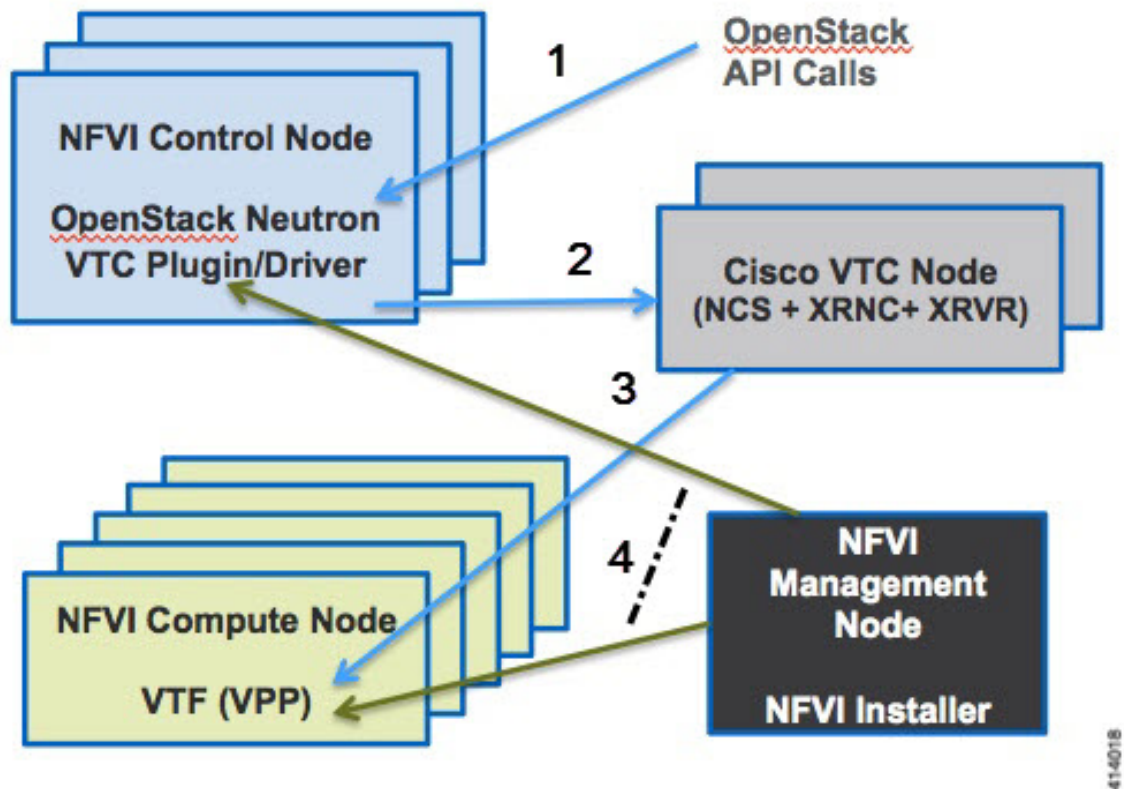
The Cisco NFVI implementation of Cisco VTS includes the VTS Virtual Topology Forwarder (VTF). VTF provides a Layer 2/Layer 3 (L2/L3) software switch that can act as a software VXLAN terminal endpoint (VTEP). VTF is a lightweight, multitenant software data plane designed for high performance packet processing on x86 servers. VTF uses Vector Packet Processing (VPP). VPP is a full-featured networking stack with a software forwarding engine. VTF leverages VPP and the Intel Data Path Development Kit (DPDK) for high performance L2, L3, and VXLAN packet forwarding.

VTF allows Cisco VTS to terminate VXLAN tunnels on host servers by using the VTF as a software VXLAN Tunnel Endpoint (VTEP). Cisco VTS also supports hybrid overlays by stitching together physical and virtual endpoints into a single VXLAN segment.

The figure below shows the Cisco VTS architecture and high-level flow when installed in Cisco NFVI. Cisco VTS is installed on separate UCS servers, the Virtual Topology Controller plugin is installed on the control node, and the VTF is installed on the compute node.

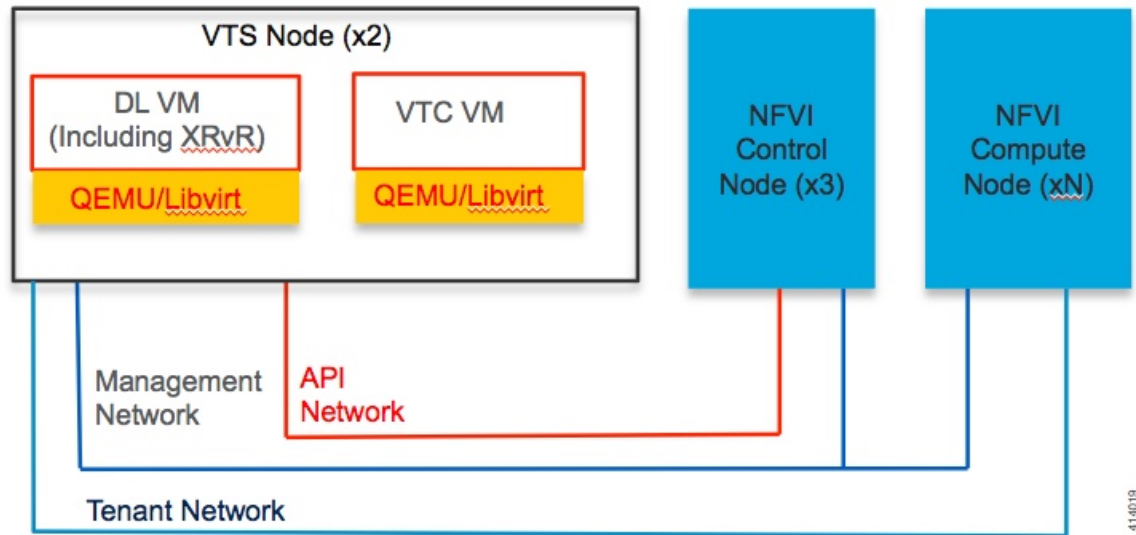
1. The OpenStack user invokes the OpenStack Neutron API.
2. Neutron uses the VTS plugin and driver to make calls to the VTC REST API.
3. VTS control components interact with the VTF agent to carry out the corresponding dataplane setup.
4. During Cisco NFVI installation, the Cisco NFVI Installer installs the OpenStack Neutron VTC plugin and driver on the Cisco NFVI controller node, and installs the VTF component (including VPP) on the Cisco NFVI compute node.

Figure 20: Cisco VTS in Cisco NFVI



The following illustration shows that the Cisco NFVI networking after the Cisco VTS is installed. The SDN controller nodes are an addition to the existing Cisco NFVI pod.

Figure 21: Cisco VTS Networking Inside Cisco NFVI



Overview to Cisco NFVIMON

Cisco VIM solution uses Cisco NFVI Monitor (NFVIMON) to monitor the health and performance of the NFVI. This includes monitoring both the physical and logical components of one or multiple NFVI pods. NFVIMON feature is enabled by the Zenoss which provides for extensive monitoring and collection of performance data for various components of the cloud infrastructure including Cisco UCS blade and rack servers, service profiles, Nexus top of rack switches, fabric interconnects, and also the OpenStack instances. The monitoring system is designed such that it can monitor single or multiple pods from a single management system. NFVIMON is integrated into Cisco VIM as an optional component. NFVIMON is enabled by extending the `setup_data.yaml` file with relevant information. To enable the NFVIMON, refer to *Enabling NFVIMON on Cisco VIM*. Also, NFVIMON can be enabled on an existing pod, through the reconfigure option. To reconfigure through Insight UI, refer to *Reconfiguring Optional Services*. Then, the pod is added as a new VIM resource to be monitored in the Monitoring UI.

The diagram illustrates a multi-tenant architecture for Pod A and Pod B. At the top, a **Zenoss Management Node** contains a **Control Center (CC)** and two **RM*** (Resource Manager) components. Below this, **Pod A** and **Pod B** are shown. Each pod contains a **Zenoss Collector Cluster** (with two **Collector** components) and a **VIM Mgmt Node**. The **Zenoss Collector Cluster** is connected to the **Control Center (CC)** via **routeable_nw** and **mgmt_nw** interfaces. The **VIM Mgmt Node** is connected to the **Control Center (CC)** via **br_api** and **br_mgmt** interfaces. The **Zenoss Collector Cluster** is also connected to the **VIM Mgmt Node** via **collector VIP** and **mgmt_nw** interfaces. The **Zenoss Collector Cluster** is connected to the **VIM Mgmt Node** via **collector VIP** and **mgmt_nw** interfaces. The **Zenoss Collector Cluster** is connected to the **VIM Mgmt Node** via **collector VIP** and **mgmt_nw** interfaces. The **Zenoss Collector Cluster** is connected to the **VIM Mgmt Node** via **collector VIP** and **mgmt_nw** interfaces.

Legend:

- RM* = Resource Manager
- Virtual machine

Pod A components:

- Zenoss Collector Cluster (Collector, Collector)
- VIM Mgmt Node
- dispatcher Controller
- Controller
- Compute
- ceiometer
- Compute

Pod B components:

- Zenoss Collector Cluster (Collector, Collector)
- VIM Mgmt Node
- dispatcher Controller
- Controller
- Compute
- ceiometer
- Compute

NFVIMON consists of four components: dispatcher, collector, resource manager (RM), and control-center (CC) with Cisco Zenpacks. As NFVIMON is a third party software, its integration with the VIM is loosely coupled and the VIM automation only deals with installing the minimal software piece (dispatcher) required to monitor the pod. The installing of the other NFVIMON components (collector, resource manager (RM), and control-center (CC) with Cisco NFVI Zenpacks) are Cisco Advance Services led activity and those steps are outside the scope of the current install guide. Make sure that you have engaged with Cisco Advance Services on the planning, image information (of collector(CC) with Cisco NFVI Zenpacks and RM), and installation of the NFVIMON accessories along with its network requirements. Start with one Cisco VIM pod (Pod A in the picture) and two external nodes (one to host 2 Collector VMs and one for remote management to host 1 control-center with Cisco Zenpacks and 2 RM VMs) of multiple pods.

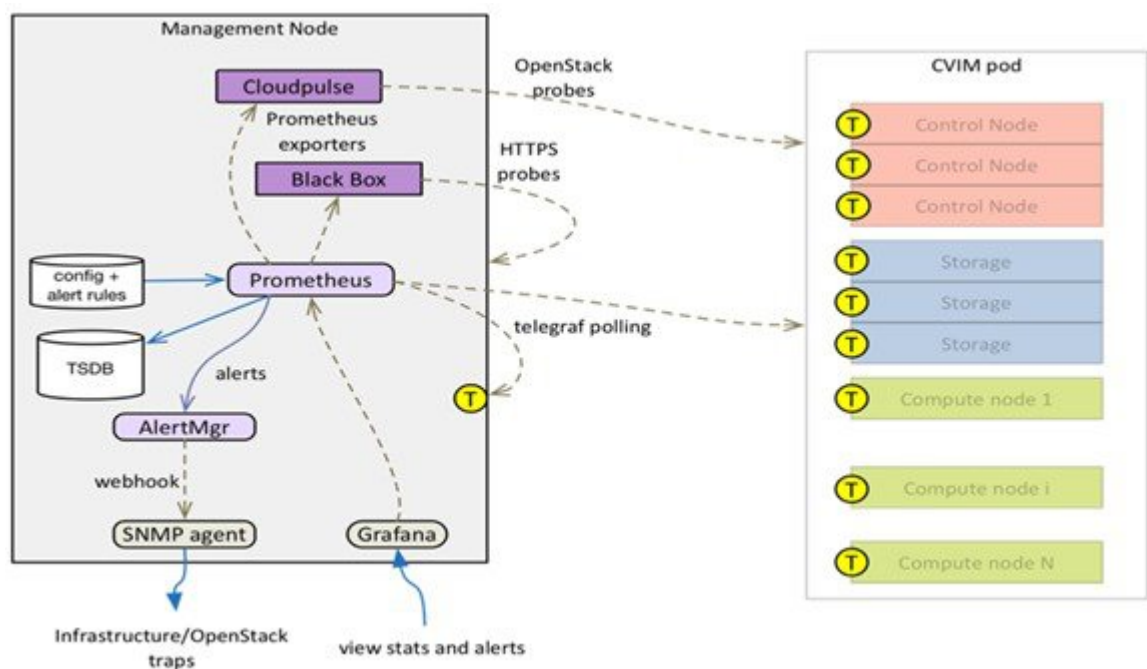
Cisco Virtualized Infrastructure Manager Installation Guide, 2.4.6

Overview to CVIMMON

Cisco VIM can be deployed through a lightweight pod-level monitoring solution known as CVIMMON which is based on the open source PTG stack (Prometheus, Telegraf, Grafana). This solution is available as an add-on in technical preview mode for 2.4 lineup with plans of getting productized in release 3.0. This feature is available as an add-on, from both commercial and feature point of view. This solution provides the following services:

- Infrastructure-level metric collection based on metric collection agents installed on all nodes in the pod and on specialized collectors running on the management node.
- Metric aggregation into a time series database (TSDB) installed on the management node.
- Rule-based alerting engine integrated in the management node.
- TSDB visualization web server installed on the management node with pre-defined dashboards customized for Cisco VIM.

Figure 23: CVIMMON Architecture



All CVIMMON components are containerized, except for the Telegraf agents which run on bare metal on all nodes in the pod (including the management node). The two sub-components of CVIMMON are:

CVIM_MON—Provides the base functionality of monitoring and KPIs.

CVIM_TRAP—It is enabled through SNMP and available only if CVIM_MON is enabled. Optionally, you can enable SNMP at the server/infrastructure level.

Comparative Analysis

The comparison of the two monitoring solutions of Cisco VIM is listed below:

Table 6: Comparison of CVIMMON and NFVIMON

Features	CVIMMON	NFVIMON/Zenoss
Open source	Yes	Yes
Collector	Telegraf and Prometheus exporters	Direct ssh to each node
Metrics manager	Prometheus	Zenoss
TSDB	Prometheus	Zenoss
Typical metric frequency	Few seconds or more	Few minutes
Web UI	Grafana	Zenoss
Smart metrics	Yes	No
Alerts	Yes	Yes
SNMP traps	Yes	No
Installation	Integrated with Cisco VIM	External/separate
Hardware requirements	Runs on management node	Requires additional servers

TSDB size and Retention Policy

The size of the TSDB depends on the frequency of the polling (configurable) and the number of compute nodes. By default, the metrics collected in each management node are kept for 15 days.

Smart Metrics

The Cisco VIM deployment blueprint assigns different roles to different hardware or software resources for operational and optimization purposes. CVIMMON leverages the metric labelling feature in Telegraf and Prometheus, to associate important contextual information with the metrics associated to the resources. This labelling enables monitoring the pod in a precise manner than with traditional unlabelled metrics.

Node Type Label

The nodes in a Cisco CVIM pod can play different roles based on the deployment model. All metrics originating from a node are labelled with the node type (label name = "node_type") and the node name (label name="host").

The following node types are defined:

Table 7: Node Type and its metric source

Node Type	Source of Metric
mgmt	Management node

Node Type	Source of Metric
controller	Controller node
compute	Compute node
storage	Storage node
aio	all-in-one node(micro-pod deployment)
hc	hyper-converged node (hyper-converged deployment)

CPU Role Label

CPUs in a Cisco VIM pod are statically categorized to perform specific functions. This partitioning is critical to guarantee proper level of service for each subsystem independent of the load in the other subsystem. For example, it is imperative to isolate the CPUs reserved for the VPP virtual switch, from any other activity on the same compute node, to guarantee the virtual switch forwarding performance. The CPU metrics are labeled with a role (label name = "role") to indicate the function of each CPU. This allows to aggregate CPU metrics based on category, which is a lot more useful than aggregating all CPUs.

This categorization cannot be done with unlabeled metrics (by reading CPU time series from a TSDB), due to the following reasons:

- Identification of CPU role based on the core number.
- Existence of multiple types of nodes.
- Each node type has a different CPU partitioning map. The CPU partitioning map may depend on the Cisco VIM release default mapping or customer specific deployment configuration (for example, on a hyper converged node, the number of cores reserved for CEPH can vary from deployment to deployment).

CVIMMON uses the following roles to label CPU metrics:

Table 8: Role label and static CPU assignment

Role	Static CPU Assignment
host	System and OpenStack tasks
ceph	CEPH OSD tasks (note that ceph-mon is in the host category)
vpp	VPP virtual switch
vm	VM vCPUs
mgmt	Management tasks on the management node

Metrics Collection

Telegraf Metrics

CVIMMON collects hundreds of different metrics from each node through the Telegraf plugin. The metrics range from low-level kernel to infrastructure services. The interval between metrics collections is configurable between 10 seconds to 1 hour.

The following table describes the Telegraf plugins installed as part of the CVIMMON deployment:

Table 9: List of plug-in and their metric name

Plug-in	Metric Name	Notes
cpu	cpu_usage_*	Detailed stats for every CPU (with role label)
disk	disk_*	Detailed stats for every disk
diskio	diskio_*	Disk activity
mem	mem_*	Host level memory stats
net	net_bytes_* net_packets_* net_contrack_* net_drop_* net_err_* net_icmp_* net_ip_* net_tcp_* net_udp_*	Stats for interfaces used by CVIM
kernel	kernel_boot_time kernel_context_switches kernel_interrupts kernel_*	
processes	process_* processes_*	
swap	swap_*	
system	system_*	
docker	docker_container	
ntp	ntp	

Plug-in	Metric Name	Notes
ceph	ceph_osdmap_* ceph_pgmap_* ceph_pool_usage_* ceph_usage_total_*	Medium frequency collection group
rabbitmq	rabbitmq_overview_* rabbitmq_node_* rabbitmq_queue_* rabbitmq_exchange_*	Low frequency collection group
conntrack	ip_conntrack_count ip_conntrack_max	
exec	directory_plugin_bytes	Monitor EFK and Prometheus own storage usage
haproxy	haproxy_*	

**Note**

All metrics are part of the high frequency collection group. The collection interval is in seconds or minutes:

Table 10: Frequency group and metrics collection interval

Frequency_group	Default Interval	Min	Max
High	10s	10s	60m
Medium	30s	30s	60s
Low	1m	1m	60m

OpenStack and infrastructure service metrics

Each Cisco VIM pod provides the Cloudpulse service to monitor the essential OpenStack services. CVIMMON integrates Cloudpulse results by mapping the state of OpenStack services into actionable time series data. Cloudpulse provides the following metrics to Prometheus:

Metric	Metric Name	Notes
openstack service	checkcp_openstack_service_up	Checks the state of an openstack service. Monitors nova, glance, cinder, keystone, and neutron.
rabbitmq status	cp_rabbitmq_server_up	Describes the state of each rabbitmq server.

Metric	Metric Name	Notes
galera status	cp_galera_server_up	Describes the state of each galera server.
ceph check	cp_ceph_health	Checks if ceph is healthy
docker check	cp_container_up	Describes the state of each container. The host label helps to differentiate the containers that have same name on different nodes, for example, neutron-vpp, nova-compute, ceph-mon.
hypervisor checks	cp_hypervisor_up	Check the state of each hypervisor.
Service Down	cp_service_down	Indicated only when exception has occurred during metric creation.

**Note**

The collection interval for all cloudpulse metrics is set to 4 minutes and are not configurable for the release Cisco VIM 2.4.5.

Etdcd monitoring

When the ML2/VPP Neutron plug-in is deployed, Prometheus is configured to poll directly the etcd cluster to retrieve etcd metrics every 15 seconds.

Alerting Rules

CVIMMON provides a list of predefined alerting rules that trigger the alerts based on the value of time series metrics polled by Prometheus. To avoid flapping caused by transient conditions, the rules have a grace period and an alert can be in one of the two states:

- Pending — Rule is triggered but the grace period has not expired.
- Fired — Rule is triggered for a period longer than the grace period.

The alerts can be monitored using the web user interface and can optionally be converted into SNMP traps. You can configure CVIMMON to send alerts as SNMP traps to any registered SNMP managers. The maximum number of SNMP managers supported is three, and a combination of SNMPv2 or v3 managers in different servers is supported.

Table 11:

Fault Source	Fault Code	Severity	Description
instance_down	hardwareFailure	major	Instance down
disk_used_percent	resourceThreshold	alert	

Fault Source	Fault Code	Severity	Description
disk_filling_up_in_4h	resourceUsage	major	Disk may fill up within 4 hours.
mem_available_percent	resourceThreshold	alert	mem_available_percent
memory_running_out_in_4h	resourceUsage	major	mem_available_percent
swap_used	resourceThreshold	alert	
conntrack_percent	resourceThreshold	alert	conntrack_ip_conntrack_count is more than 80% of max
reboot	hardwareFailure	alert	system_uptime
system_n_users	resourceThreshold	alert	Number of logged in users
docker_n_containers_running	serviceFailure	major	Not running any Docker containers.
docker_container_memcached	serviceFailure	major	Memcached containers missing or down
docker_container_heatapicfn	serviceFailure	major	heatapicfn containers missing or down
docker_container_heatapi	serviceFailure	major	heatapi containers missing or down
docker_container_heatengine	serviceFailure	major	heatengine containers missing or down
docker_container_horizon	serviceFailure	major	horizon containers missing or down
docker_container_cloudpulse_server	serviceFailure	major	cloudpulse_server containers missing or down
docker_container_novanovncproxy	serviceFailure	major	novanovncproxy containers missing or down
docker_container_novaconsoleauth	serviceFailure	major	novaconsoleauth containers missing or down
docker_container_novassh	serviceFailure	major	novassh containers missing or down
docker_container_novacompute	serviceFailure	major	novacompute containers missing or down

Fault Source	Fault Code	Severity	Description
docker_container_novaapi	serviceFailure	major	novaapi containers missing or down
docker_container_novascheduler	serviceFailure	major	novascheduler containers missing or down
docker_container_novaconduct	serviceFailure	major	novaconduct containers missing or down
docker_container_novalibvirt	serviceFailure	major	novalibvirt containers missing or down
docker_container_novacommon	serviceFailure	major	novacommon containers missing or down
docker_container_cindervolume	serviceFailure	major	cindervolume containers missing or down
docker_container_cinderscheduler	serviceFailure	major	cinderscheduler containers missing or down
docker_container_cinderapi	serviceFailure	major	cinderapi containers missing or down
docker_container_neutron_metadata_agent	serviceFailure	major	neutron_metadata_agent containers missing or down
docker_container_neutron_l3_agent	serviceFailure	major	neutron_l3_agent containers missing or down
docker_container_neutron_dhcp_agent	serviceFailure	major	neutron_dhcp_agent containers missing or down
docker_container_neutron_server	serviceFailure	major	neutron_server containers missing or down
docker_container_neutron_common	serviceFailure	major	neutron_common containers missing or down
docker_container_glanceapi	serviceFailure	major	glanceapi containers missing or down
docker_container_glancer	serviceFailure	major	glancer containers missing or down
docker_container_keystone	serviceFailure	major	keystone containers missing or down

Fault Source	Fault Code	Severity	Description
docker_container_rabbitmq	serviceFailure	major	rabbitmq containers missing or down
docker_container_mariadb	serviceFailure	major	mariadb containers missing or down
docker_container_haproxy	serviceFailure	major	haproxy containers missing or down
docker_container_cephmon	serviceFailure	major	cephmon containers missing or down
docker_container_fluentd	serviceFailure	major	fluentd containers missing or down
docker_container_prometheus	serviceFailure	major	prometheus containers missing or down
docker_container_cvim_mon	serviceFailure	major	cvim_mon containers missing or down
docker_container_alertmanager	serviceFailure	major	alertmanager containers missing or down
docker_container_vmtop	serviceFailure	major	vmtop containers missing or down
docker_container_vimconfig	serviceFailure	major	vimconfig containers missing or down
docker_container_fluentd_aggr	serviceFailure	major	fluentd_aggr containers missing or down
docker_container_curator	serviceFailure	major	curator containers missing or down
docker_container_kibana	serviceFailure	major	kibana containers missing or down
docker_container_elasticsearch	serviceFailure	major	elasticsearch containers missing or down
docker_container_tftp_server	serviceFailure	major	tftp_server containers missing or down
docker_container_my_cobbler	serviceFailure	major	my_cobbler containers missing or down
docker_container_repo_mirror	serviceFailure	major	repo_mirror containers missing or down

Fault Source	Fault Code	Severity	Description
docker_container_registry	serviceFailure	major	container_registry containers missing or down
ceph_osdmap_num_in_osds	resourceThreshold	major	Some ceph OSDs are not IN
ceph_osdmap_num_up_osds	resourceThreshold	major	Some ceph OSDs are not UP
ceph_pgmap_state_count	resourceUsage	major	Ceph PG Map State not all active+clean
ceph_pgmap_bytes_avail_falling_in_4h	resourceUsage	major	ceph_pgmap_bytes_avail will drop to zero within 4 hours.
ceph_pgmap_bytes_used_percent	resourceThreshold	alert	ceph_pgmap_bytes_used percent
ceph_pgmap_bytes_used_percent	resourceThreshold	Major	ceph_pgmap_bytes_used percent is
haproxy_plugin_data_absent	other	informational	HAProxy Telegraf plugin not returning data.
haproxy_active_servers_down	serviceFailure	major	HAProxy active server status not UP.
haproxy_active_servers_backend	serviceFailure	critical	HAProxy active server backends should be 3 but it is in \$value.
haproxy_active_servers_galera	serviceFailure	major	HAProxy galera_cluster-internal_vip active should be singular but it is in \$value.
haproxy_backup_servers_galera	serviceFailure	major	HAProxy galera_cluster-internal_vip backup should be 2 for quorum but it is in \$value.
rabbitmq_node_running	serviceFailure	major	Rabbitmq nodes running should be 9 but is \$value.
rabbitmq_queue_messages	resourceUsage	major	Rabbitmq queued message total is too high, but is \$value.

Fault Source	Fault Code	Severity	Description
rabbitmq_node_mem_used_percent	resourceThreshold	major	Rabbitmq node {{ \$labels.node }} memory usage is \$value printf "%.2f" } } %.
rabbitmq_node_disk_free_limit_percent	resourceThreshold	major	Rabbitmq node {{ \$labels.node }} disk usage is \$value printf "%.2f" } } %.
ntp_offset	resourceThreshold	alert	ntp_offset is \$value
memcached_restarted	serviceFailure	alert	memcached restarted
cp_galera_down	serviceFailure	major	Galera Down on Node(s)
cp_container_down	serviceFailure	major	Container(s) Down on Node(s)
cp_openstack_service_down	serviceFailure	major	Openstack Service(s) Down
cp_rabbitmq_down	serviceFailure	major	RabbitMQ Service Down on Node(s)
cp_ceph_error	serviceFailure	major	CEPH Storage in Error State
cp_hypervisor_down	serviceFailure	major	Hypervisor(s) in Down State

The following OpenStack services alerts based on Cloudpulse metrics are supported:

Table 12: Openstack service alerts and their parameters

Alert	Parameter	Description
openstack service is down	service name (nova, glance, cinder, keystone, neutron)	Triggers if any of the openstack services is down
rabbitmq server is down		Triggers whenever any rabbitmq server goes down
galera server is down		Triggers whenever any galera server goes down
ceph is in error state	error description	Triggers whenever the ceph cluster gets into error state
hypervisor down	hypervisor name	Triggers whenever a hypervisor goes down

Alert	Parameter	Description
infra container is down	container name or host name	Triggers whenever any CVIM container goes down

CVIMMON Web User Interface

The CVIMMON graphical user interface allows the pod administrator to monitor the status of the pod using any web browser. This interface is based on Grafana and comes with a set of predefined dashboards.

Access Login

The CVIMMON web user interface is available by pointing a web browser to the management node IP address at port 3000 using https. To access this interface, enter 'admin' as username and password.. The password is auto-generated at the time of deployment and can be retrieved from the Cisco VIM password repository (openstack-configs/secrets.yaml file) in the CVIM_MON_PASSWORD entry.



Note

- The 'Forgot your password?' option in the Grafana login page is disabled.
- New password can be generated for Grafana, by running Cisco VIM reconfiguration with the regenerate secrets option.

Pod <pod-name> Dashboard

The pod dashboard is named as “Pod <pod-name>” where <pod-name> is configured in setup_data.yaml under the option PODNAME) to provide the following:

- High level view of the pod.
- Total number of nodes grouped by node type.
- Total number of cores grouped by role.
- Total load in the pod or sum of the load for all nodes.
- Average usage of all the CPUs reserved for VMs.

Node Level Metrics Dashboard

This dashboard provides a detailed view of the state of the most important resources for any node in the pod including the management node. A list of drop-down menus allow to select:

- Node to display (only one)
- Disk devices to display (all or any selection)
- Network interfaces to display (all or any selection)
- CPUs to display (all or any selection)

The dashboard provides the utilization charts for the following:

- System
- CPU
- Memory
- Processes
- Disks
- Network interfaces

Specialized Dashboards

Table 13: List of specialized dashboards

Dashboard Name	Description
OpenStack services	Chart shows the state of all OpenStack services, infrastructure containers and hypervisors.
Alerts	Alerts that are triggered passed the grace period or pending (triggered but still within their grace period).
HAProxy	Chart to monitor the HAProxy service.
CEPH	CEPH storage chart, for example, overall OSD CPU load.
NTP	Chart to monitor NTP on the pod.
RabbitMQ	Chart related to rabbitMQ
Etd	Chart related to etcd. Only available for ML2/VPP deployments.
Memcached	Chart to monitor Memcached on the pod.
Advanced Metrics	Chart that monitor the management node activity such as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Prometheus and Elasticsearch disk usage • Prometheus scraping stats

CVIM-TRAP

Along with CVIM-MON, CVIM-Trap enables Cisco VIM to send SNMP Traps to the remote SNMP managers. The SNMP traps are identified from the following, only when the SERVER-MON is enabled in the setup_data.yaml file.

- Alerts collected on Prometheus
- Faults reported by the CIMC of the Cisco Series-C servers

The SNMP Trap sends a notification, when the fault occurs or gets resolved. The notification types are listed below:

- cvimFaultActiveNotif: Notification sent when the fault gets triggered.
- cvimFaultClearNotif: Notification sent when the fault gets resolved.

The SNMP trap contains the following information:

- cvimPodID: PODNAME configured in setup_data.yaml file
- cvimNodeID: Node that generated the fault, or N/A
- cvimFaultSource: Component name that generated the fault
- cvimFaultSeverity: Severity of the fault following the guidelines:
 - emergency (1): System level fault impacting multiple services.
 - critical (2): Critical fault specific to a service.
 - major (3): Component level fault within a service.
 - alert (4): Warning condition for service. It may eventually impact the service.
 - informational (5): Informative message and does not impact any service.
- cvimFaultCode: Code. Guidelines followed for code:
 - other(1) : Type of event not specified in the other labels.
 - resourceUsage(2): Resource usage exhausted event.
 - resourceThreshold(3): Resource threshold reached event.
 - serviceFailure(4): Software failure service event.
 - hardwareFailure(5): Hardware failure event.
 - networkConnectivity(6) :Networking issues.

For more details, refer CISCO-VIM-MIB.my.4.0 definition of the MIB at <ftp://ftp.cisco.com/pub/mibs/v2/>.

CVIMMON is integrated into Cisco VIM as an optional component, and is offered as an add-on with additional license. CVIMMON is enabled by extending the setup_data.yaml file with relevant information. To enable CVIMMON, refer to [Enabling CVIMMON on Cisco VIM, on page 175](#).

You can enable CVIMMON on an existing pod through the reconfigure option, if the pod is fresh installed with Cisco VIM 2.4.3 or later versions. To reconfigure through Unified Management, refer to [Reconfiguring Optional Services](#). Then, add the pod as a new VIM resource to be monitored so that it is available through the Unified Management portal.

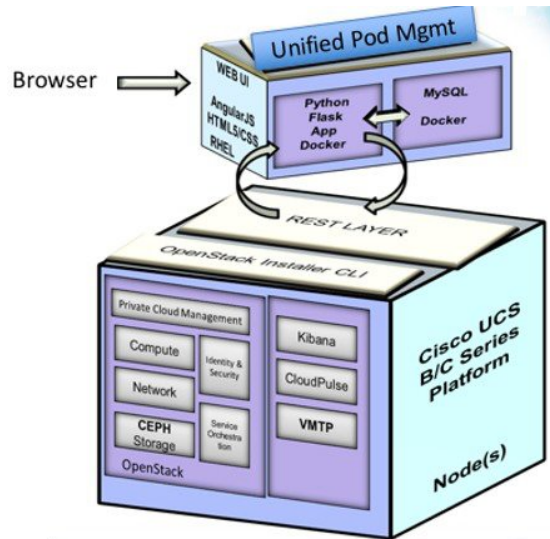
Overview to Cisco VIM Unified Management

Cisco VIM UM, a light-weight UI, is introduced in Cisco VIM to ease the deployment and management of the NFVI platform. This feature is available as an add-on from both commercial and feature point of view.

Also, Cisco VIM Insight offers a single pane of glass service to provide deployment visualization and to manage multiple Cisco VIM pods thereby reducing user-errors.

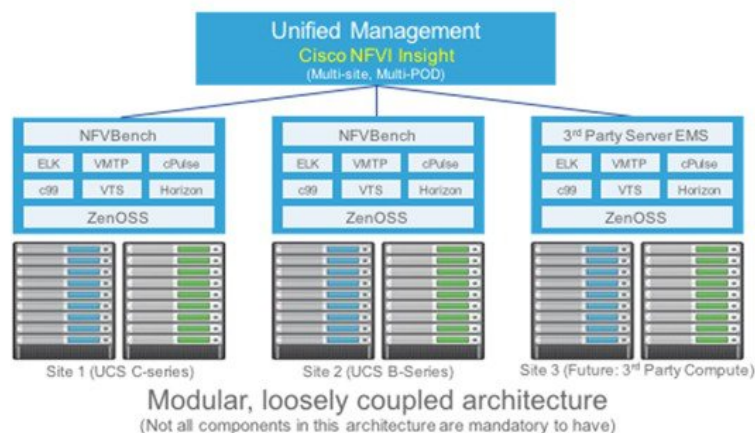
Cisco VIM UM supports multi-tenancy with local RBAC support and is easily integrated with the CiscoVIM REST layer. The container based UI platform is loosely coupled, and can help manage multiple CiscoVIM pods right from day-0, or later in the lifecycle of the cloud.

Figure 24: Cisco VIM UM Interaction with a Pod



The architecture of the CiscoVIM UM is light-weight, hierarchical and scalable. While it introduces an ease of management from the global UI, each local site is autonomous with localized toolsets. The Global Unified Management UI, provides ease of management with multi-site multi-pod capability for distributed NFV deployment at scale. Also, CiscoVIM UM is designed to operate in HA as an option. The platform is a modular, loosely coupled architecture, that will provide the capability to manage multiple pods, with RBAC support as shown in the figure .

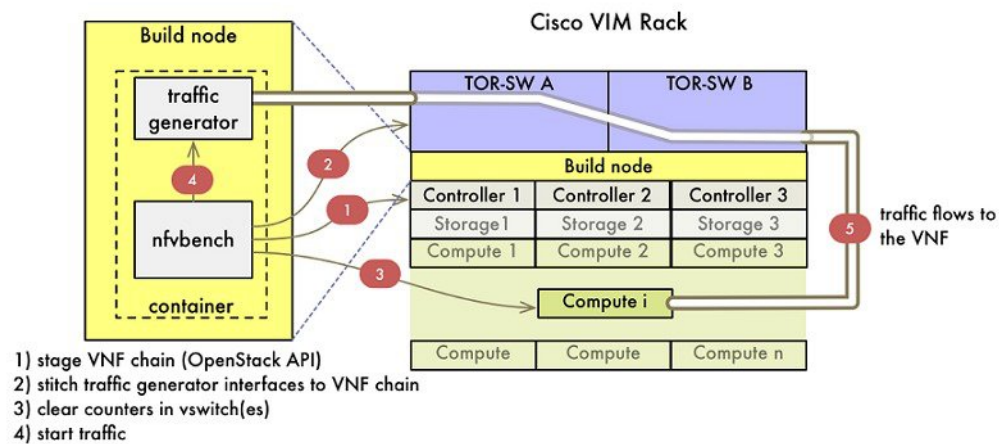
Figure 25: Cisco VIM UM Architecture



Overview to NFVBench

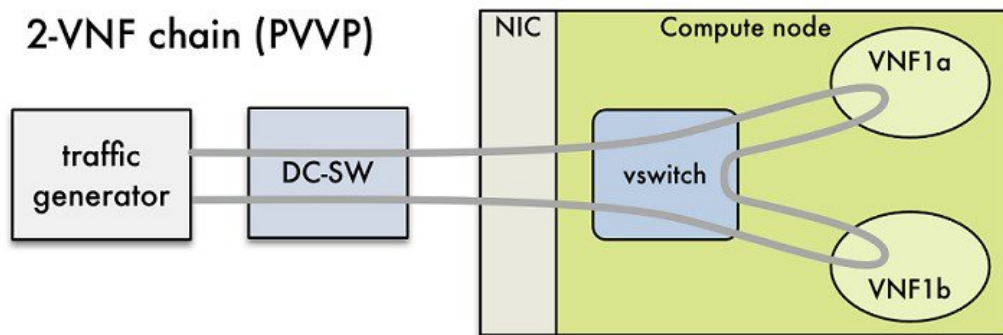
NFVBench is a containerized network benchmarking tool that is introduced in Cisco VIM, to bring consistent methodology to measure the network performance of the cloud. NFVBench is offered in a container that is preinstalled on the management node.

Figure 26: Order of Steps Performed in NFVBench Test



The main goal of NFVBench is to measure the cloud performance that is based on real cloud deployments and not on synthetic, hypothetical lab test environment. So, during the test the packet path must traverse through every network element that participates in the production environment; that is traffic flows through switch (ToR) to v-switch on compute node, continues to VM representing any basic VNF in NFV deployment and comes back similar way on different ports. Network performance or throughput is computed based on sent and received traffic.

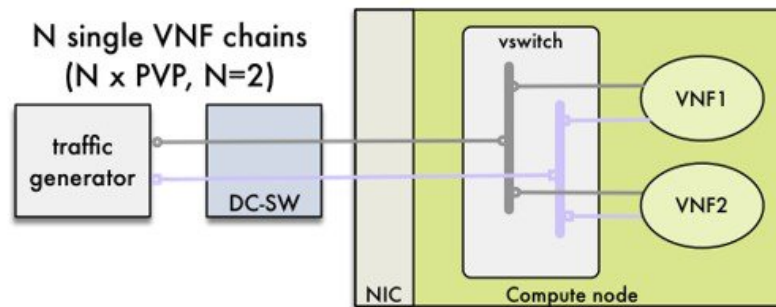
Figure 27: Packet Path with Two VNFs



Also it helps to verify network configuration and possible bottlenecks. Reports from NFVBench show data measurements from every element in path, which makes it easier to detect configuration errors or potential bottlenecks. NFVBench sends Layer2 or Layer3 packets that are generated by open-source traffic generator (TRex) already included in the container. Advanced testing using NFVBench allows you to conduct the multichaining and multiflow testing. Multichaining testing enables you to run multiple parallel independent

packet paths at the same time, while the multiframe testing performs IP ranging in packet headers within every chain.

Figure 28: Multichaining Example with Two Chains



NDR/PDR and Fixed Rate Tests

NDR/PDR Test: NFVBench offers a more advanced test (called the NDR/PDR test), provides information about network throughput using any of the standard defined packet sizes - 64B, IMIX, 1518B. NDR (No Drop Rate) value represents throughput at which no packets are dropped (satisfied by less than 0.001% of packets being dropped). Similarly, PDR (Partial Drop Rate) represents throughput at which only small number of packets is dropped (less than 0.1% of packets sent).

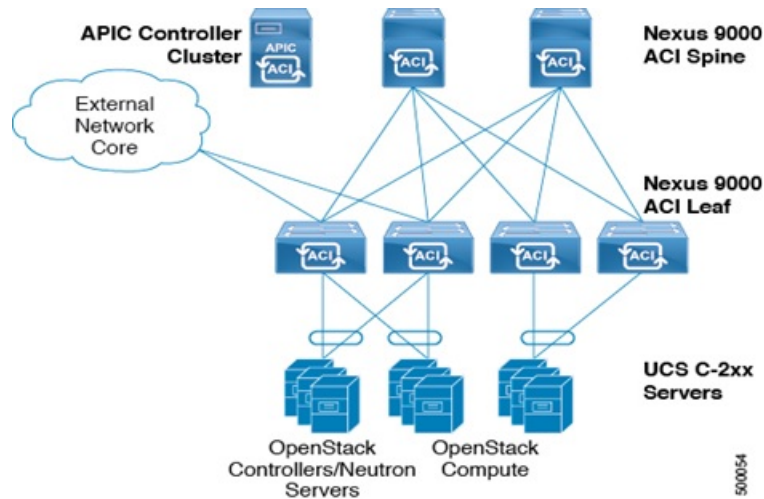
Fixed Rate Test: NFVBench offers a simple test to run traffic at fixed rate, which verifies that every network component of packet path works properly. It is useful for identifying bottlenecks in the test environment. Traffic generator generates packets at fixed rate for the given time by the user. From the statistics that is collected, drop rates and latencies are computed and displayed.

Both the NDR/PDR Test and Fixed Rate Test types of test provide a way of verifying network performance of NFV solution.

Overview to ACI Plugin Integration

The following section gives you an overview of a typical architecture for an ACI fabric with an OpenStack deployment. An ACI with OpenStack deployment consists of a Nexus 9000 Spine/Leaf topology, an APIC cluster, a minimum of 3-node cluster of Controllers (which also acts as the Neutron network node), and two or more compute nodes to host Virtual Machine (VM) instances.

ACI External Routed Network connection is a Layer 3 connection outside the fabric. It is used to provide connectivity outside the OpenStack cloud, as depicted in the following figure.

Figure 29: ACI with OpenStack Physical Topology

Note Basic ACI architecture can be obtained at documentation available in CCO.

In Cisco VIM, we have integrated the Opflex ML2 plugin (in Unified mode) to manage the tenant VLANs dynamically, as VMs come and go in the cloud. By utilizing OpFlex, the policy model native to ACI can be extended all the way down into the virtual switches running on OpenStack Nova compute hosts. OpFlex extension to the compute host allows ACI to use Open vSwitch (OVS) to support common OpenStack features such as Source NAT (SNAT) and Floating IP in a distributed manner.

Cisco VIM extends the automation to include the day-0 ToR level configuration to work with ACI, except for L3 out. The exception for L3 out was made because you can configure their upstream infrastructure in different ways. In the current offering, Cisco VIM with the address scope along with ACI is not supported.



Note Cisco VIM is validated against APIC 3.0, hence it is imperative to use APIC 3.0 version only.

NCS-5500 as a ToR Option

Cisco VIM supports NCS-5500 as an alternate to a Nexus ToR. NCS-5500 is an IOS XR-based router, which is similar to Nexus switches. You can use the 48 10/25G ports or the 6 40/100G uplink ports model to implement NCS-5500 (port-numbers depend on NCS version). Also, other SKUs of NCS-5500 are supported as long as the NCS-5500 software supports the EVLAG feature. NCS-5500 uses the technology of bridge domain to connect to the server. Enable the Auto ToR configuration feature to support NCS-5500 as ToR. NCS-5500 supports a micropod with more computes running on Intel 710 NICs with the mechanism driver of VPP over LACP. The support is extended to include 40G/100G based NCS-5500 SKUs with splitter cables (of 4x10) connecting to the servers, which helps in increasing the server port density by four folds.

Disk Management in VIM

Cisco VIM uses the disk-maintenance tool that gives you the ability to check the status of all hard disk drives present in the running and operational mode in the following nodes:

- management node
- specific or all controller servers
- specific or all compute servers

Status of the disks such as online, offline, rebuilding helps you to identify which particular disks in which slot has potentially gone bad and require to be physically replaced in the server. It can be run on servers that have either a RAID controller or an SAS passthrough controller.

Once the disk is physically replaced, Disk management tool can be used to add the new disk back into the system as part of the RAID system (recommended one server at a time).



Note

Disk Maintenance tool is useful only when one or at most two (in RAID6) go bad. Failure of more than one disk at a time puts the entire server in an irrecoverable state. Replace the server using remove and add operations through ciscovim. Disk management is not supported on a third party compute due to the licensing issue with the HPE SmartArray Utility tool.

OSD Maintenance

OSD maintenance tool gives you the ability to check the status of all OSDs and their corresponding physical hard disk drives present in the running and operational storage nodes. The status of the OSDs is reported along with the HDD mapping.

OSD Maintenance tool helps you to identify the status of the OSD (Up or Down) and its corresponding hard disk drive slot in the server that requires to be physically replaced. OSD Maintenance tool can run on servers that have either a RAID or an SAS passthrough controller.

Once the HDD to be physically replaced is identified, the same OSD tool can be used to rebalance the ceph tree, remove the OSD from the cluster, and unmount the disk drive, in preparation for the disk removal. After the disk has been physically replaced, the tool can be used to add the new disk back into the system as part of the Ceph cluster and recreate the OSD (only one HDD/OSD at a time). It ensures to replace a bad HDD, it is not required to remove the ceph cluster from operation and then add it back through remove-storage and add-storage options in ciscovim.



Note

OSD tool does not support the replacement of the internal OS drives and the external journal drives, for which you still have to use add or remove of OSD nodes.

Power Management of Computes for C-Series

Cisco VIM pods has many compute servers, but the actual usage of the compute servers are limited at times. To optimize the overall power consumption of the data center, we have to power down the server through an API/CLI.

To prevent the cloud destabilization, you cannot power off all the compute nodes. For example, one cannot power off all the compute nodes, at least one pod has to be Active.

Pod management operation(s) applies to the entire pod during updating and reconfigure, the server.

Updating and reconfiguration are not possible under the following circumstances:

- If one or more compute nodes are powered off.
- Computes on which VMs are running cannot be powered-off.
- Computes with. All-in-one (AIO) nodes in a micro-pod) cannot be powered-off through this API.

When there is a power-off, internally cloud-sanity is run and if the cloud sanity fails, then the power-off action is aborted.

Physical Cores and Memory Reserved for Cisco VIM Infrastructure

Cisco VIM has been tuned to deliver performance from an infrastructure and VNF point of view. The following are the details of the physical cores (regardless of hyper-thread enabled or not) that the infrastructure needs. Number of cores that are reserved for the system (host system + openstack services) is 2 in all cases and is included in the count that is shown in the following table.

Table 14: Number of Physical Cores and RAM Reserved for Cisco VIM Infrastructure

Pod Type/Node Types	Control	Storage	Compute	AIO	HC
Full On	all	all	CPU: 2+V cores	n/a	n/a
Hyper-Converged (hc)		n/a	RAM: 25+Vr GB	n/a	CPU: 2+C+V cores RAM: 41+Vr GB
Micro-Pod (aio)	n/a	n/a		CPU: 2+C+V cores RAM: 41+Vr GB	N/A

Table 15: Number of Physical Cores and RAM Reserved for Cisco VIM Infrastructure

Variables	Usage	Valid range	Default
C	Cores reserved for CEPH (aio and hc)	2..12	2
V	Cores reserved for VPP vswitch	2..4	2
Vr	RAM reserved for VPP		2GB

For OVS deployments, use V=0 and Vr=0

Some VPP deployments with high throughput requirements may require more than 2 VPP cores.

Software Distribution Server (SDS)

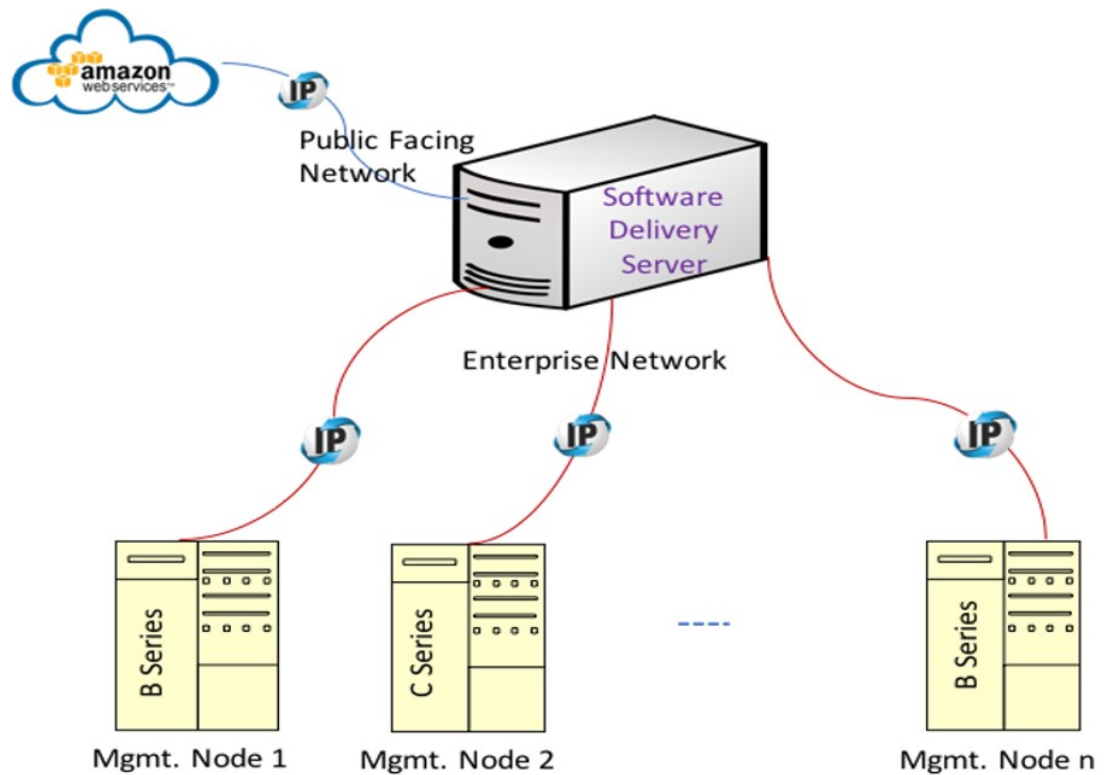
Cisco VIM is supported in an air-gapped (disconnected mode) environment. You can use a USB or Cisco VIM-SDS (Software Delivery Server) for an air-gapped install. When the number of pods is more, shipping USBs for an air-gapped install and update is not scalable. In such scenarios, we recommend that you use Cisco VIM-SDS.

An SDS contains the Cisco VIM release artifacts, such as buildnode ISO, CVIM code, docker registry, and docker images. Using the management node, you can access the release artifacts from the SDS.

You can install the artifacts available on the SDS server through a connected or a disconnected install procedure. For a connected install, one end of the SDS server is connected to the internet, and the other end is connected to the datacenter.

The following figure shows the architecture of a connected install.

Figure 30: Architecture of a Connected Install

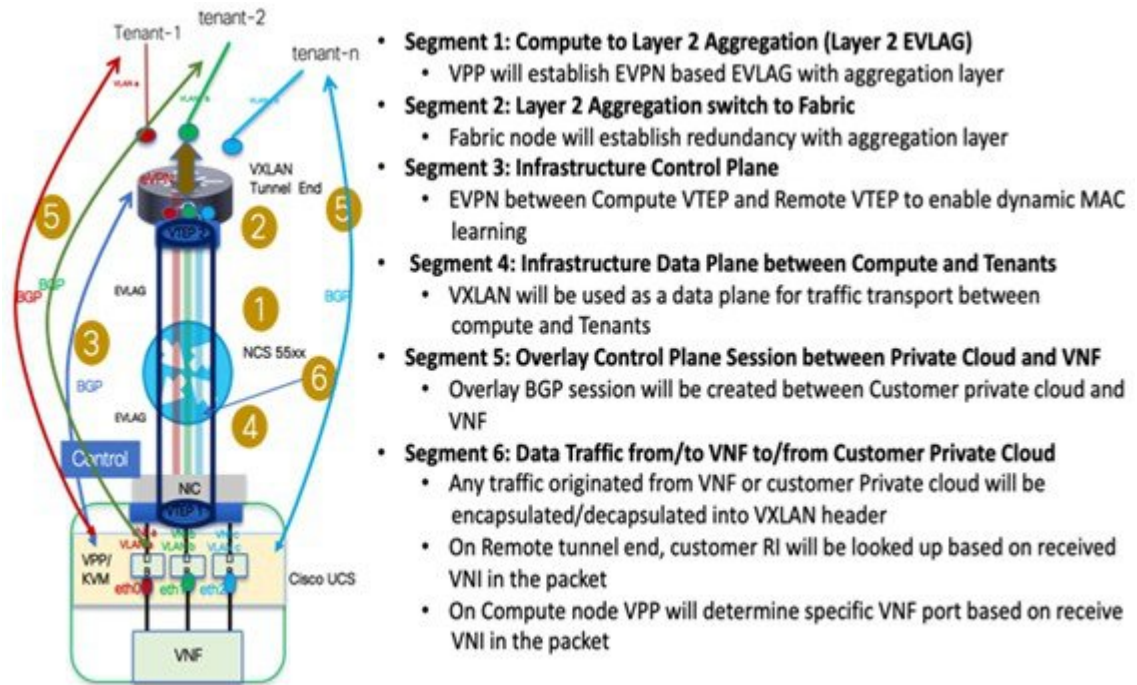


For a disconnected install, both interfaces are private and the artifacts are installed on the SDS using the USB procedure. You must ensure that the ssh interface (br_api) of the management node for each Cisco VIM pod can connect to the enterprise facing interface of the SDS server through Layer 2 or Layer 3 networking.

Cisco VIM VXLAN EVPN Design

From release Cisco VIM 2.4.3 onwards, seamless connectivity from VNFs of the private cloud to the customer premise private cloud is enabled. The architecture of the Cisco VIM Tenant L2 Connectivity is depicted below:

Figure 31: High Level NFVI Tenant L2 Connectivity Architecture

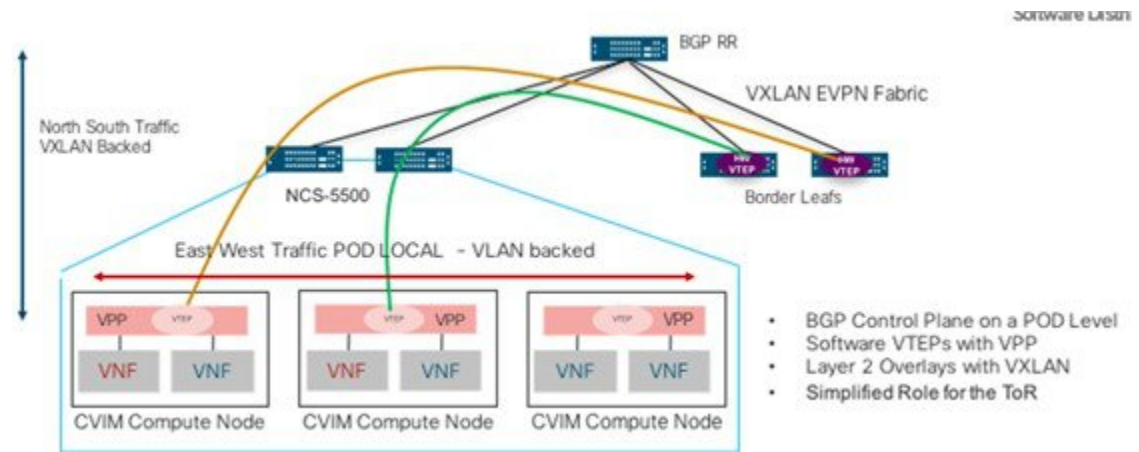


To set up Cisco VIM tenant L2 connectivity architecture, the following assumptions are made:

- OpenStack will manage VLAN allocation.
- Customer will manage VXLAN network and subnet for overlays, and enable OpenStack to use the EVI/VNID by creating appropriate networks/subnets in OpenStack.
- BGP configuration (peer, ASes) will be provided at the time of Cisco VIM cloud deployment through `setup_data.yaml`.

VXLAN tunnel is used for traffic between the VNF and customer Private cloud, while the VLAN is used for the traffic within the pod or across VNFs. EVPN is used to share L2 reachability information to the remote end, and Cisco NCS 5500 in EVLAG mode acts as a conduit for the traffic. For the VXLAN/EPVN solution to work, Cisco VIM and VXLAN tunnel peers with an external BGP route reflector to exchange IP address to Mac Binding information as shown in the below figure.

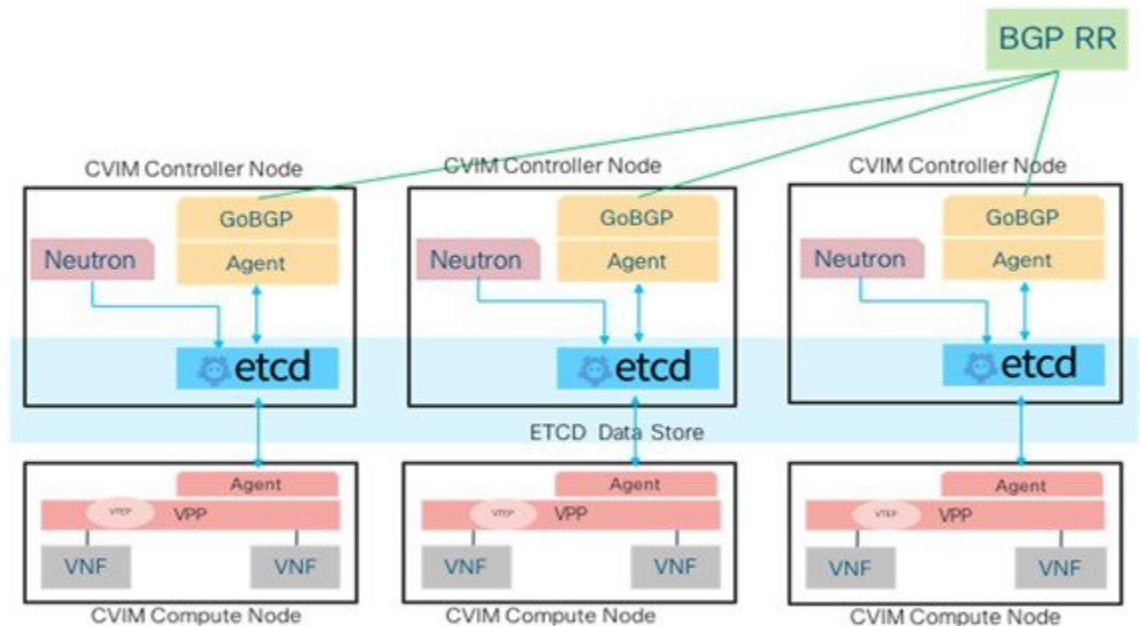
Figure 32: Cisco VIM VXLAN EVPN Setup



From a control plane point of view, three instances of GoBGP (in Active-Active-Active mode) run on the controller nodes and peer with the external BGP RR, by which VxLAN routes are imported into and exported from Cisco VIM. The imported information is then pushed into etcd, to maintain a single source of the information within Cisco VIM.

VPP agents create and program VTEP on VPP, and also create a VXLAN tunnel interface for the VM based on the VNI information from Neutron. VPP updates VNF IP/MAC mapping in etcd, which gets exported out through EVPN to the BGP RR.

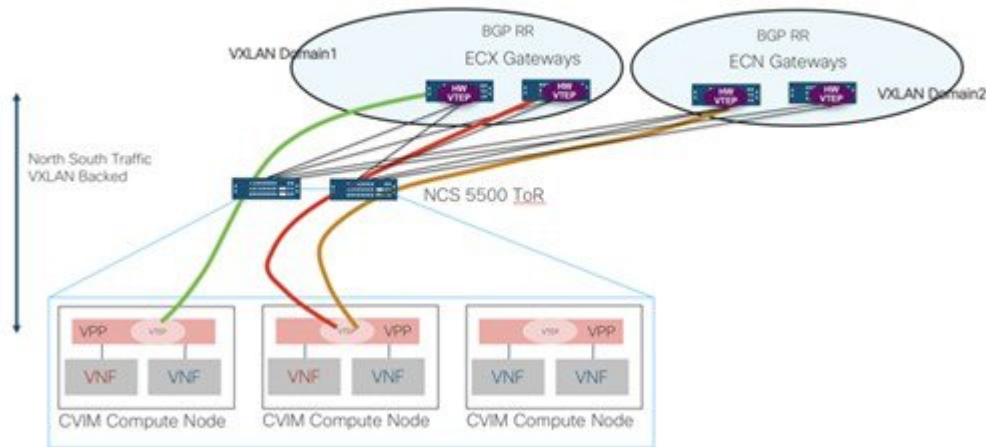
Figure 33: Cisco VIM VXLAN EVPN Control Plan Design



Multi-VXLAN EVPN Design

From release Cisco VIM 2.4.6 onwards, multiple-AS VXLAN EVPN overlay networks are supported. The following image depicts the schematic view of the multi-AS VXLAN EVPN overlay network.

North South VXLAN traffic



One set of VXLAN overlays manage the Cloud exchange traffic, while the other set of VXLAN overlays manage the Cloud management traffic. The multi-VXLAN (multi refers to 2) is used to conserve the number of bridge domains (BD) consumed on the Cisco NCS 5500 ToR.

From the control plane point of view, it is similar to that of a single VXLAN architecture.

The multi-VXLAN EVPN based design optionally supports a static implementation of VXLAN technology through head-end replication (HER). HER helps leverage the VXLAN technology, regardless of the hardware/software limitation in the VXLAN feature set at the remote end of the VTEP tunnel.

With the static information defined in the `setup_data`, VPP performs the HER to all defined remote VTEPs and updates L2FIB (MAC-IP) table based on flood and learn. If EVPN co-exists with HER, Cisco VIM treats it as if two different sets of BGP speakers exist and provides information from each speaker in the same etcd FIB table.

Only drawback of this implementation is that VPP may perform unnecessary flooding. Cisco VIM uses EVPN as the primary mechanism and HER as the fallback methodology. You can add or remove HER to or from an existing EVPN pod through Cisco VIM reconfigure option.

VPP Port Mirroring Support

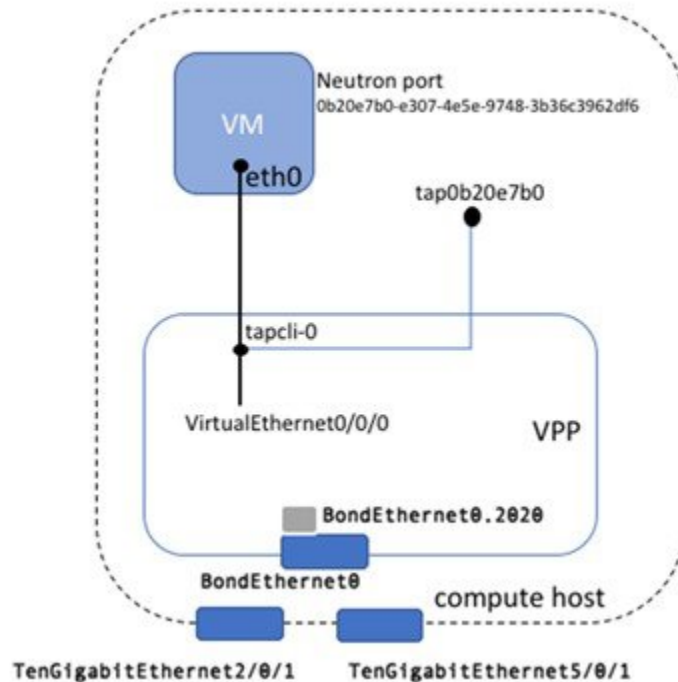
From release CVIM 2.4.3 onwards, all the network traffic between the VM and VPP is over a vhost interface which is in memory and does not use a traditional kernel side interface, when VPP is used as the vSwitch in OpenStack. The network interface is no longer on the host and available within VM, to trace packets or capture them for debugging or other administrative purposes.

Underlying Architecture of the Port Mirroring Tool

Port mirroring works by setting up the following:

1. A span port on vpp to mirror the VirtualEthernet interface corresponding to the VMs vhost interface. This is a tap interface in VPP
2. A tap device (tap0b20e7b0) on the compute host side is set as a kernel interface. A veth pair is created between the tap device on the VPP side (tapcli-0) and kernel side tap device (tap0b20e7b0) as shown in the below figure.

Figure 34: Port mirror components



Limitations of the Port Mirroring Tool

- The port mirror feature uses tap as the interface type for the mirrored traffic. VPP may drop packets designated for this interface, under high load conditions or high traffic scenarios.
- You can only run the Port mirror CLI tools from the VPP container. This requires access to the compute node where the VM is running.
- You can only mirror the neutron ports managed by vpp-agent. This means that these have to be vhost interfaces belonging to Openstack VMs. Non VirtualEthernet interfaces are not supported.



CHAPTER 2

Overview to Cisco NFVI Installation

This chapter describes the Cisco NFVI installation procedures.

- [Cisco NFVI Installation Overview, on page 69](#)

Cisco NFVI Installation Overview

Cisco NFVI installation is divided into two processes:

- **Preparation**—Preparing the Cisco NFVI pod hardware and configuring all supporting applications including Cisco Integrated Management Controller (IMC) and Cisco UCS Manager.
- **Installation**—Installing the Cisco NFVI component applications such as Cisco Virtual Infrastructure Manager (VIM), Cisco Insight (Unified Management), and Cisco Virtual Topology System (VTS) with Virtual Topology Forwarder (VTF) based on your Cisco NFVI package.

Cisco NFVI installation depends on the component applications that you install. For example, if you are installing Cisco VTS, install VTC before installing Cisco VIM or Cisco Unified Management (UM). When installing Cisco VIM UM, install the Cisco VIM management node and Insight in a sequence to complete the Cisco VIM installation through Cisco VIM UM. However, if you have Cisco VIM without other Cisco NFVI applications in your package, you can install the Cisco VIM alone in your system.

Consider the following factors before installing the Cisco NFVI components:

- **Internet Access**—Internet access is required to download the Cisco NFVI installation files from cvim-registry.com. If you do not have an Internet access to your management node, you need an alternate server with an Internet access to download the installation files to a USB stick. You can copy the installation files from USB stick to the management node.
- **Cisco NFVI Configurations**—Cisco NFVI configurations are included in the `setup_data.yaml` file. If you are installing Cisco VIM and not Cisco VIM Insight, you can enter the configurations directly into the `setup_data.yaml` file with a yaml editor. You can refer to the examples in `setup_data` file (for C and B-series) at the `openstack-configs` directory in the `target install` folder in the management node. For more information on Cisco NFVI data and OpenStack parameters, see [Setting Up the Cisco VIM Data Configurations, on page 138](#). If you are installing Cisco VIM Insight, run Cisco NFVI using Insight UI wizard. For more information, see [Installing Cisco VIM Unified Management , on page 187](#).

Following are the license options for installing Cisco NFVI:

- Cisco NFVI Basic—Includes Cisco Virtual Infrastructure Manager (VIM), which is an OpenStack Newton release software solution used to enhance the functionality, scale, and performance of the node.
- Cisco NFVI Standard—Includes Cisco VIM and Cisco VIM Insight. Cisco VIM Insight deploys, provisions, and manages Cisco NFVI on Cisco UCS servers.
- Cisco NFVI with third-party monitoring - Includes Cisco VIM with or without Cisco VIM Insight based on the license option chosen, with monitoring of the pod through Zenoss.
- Optional Cisco NFVI Applications—Cisco Virtual Topology System (VTS) is an optional application that can be installed with both Cisco VIM and Cisco VIM Insight. Cisco VTS is a standard-based, open software-overlay management and provisioning system. It automates the data center network fabric provisioning, for virtual and physical infrastructure.

You must perform extra manual installation procedures while installing Cisco VIM. If your package includes Cisco VIM and UM, you must do Cisco VIM manual setup and configuration procedures through the Unified management system (VIM UM). You can manage cloud in Cisco VIM through Cisco VIM UM. Once you start managing the cloud, Cisco recommends you to continue using Cisco VIM UM for future use as well.

The following table helps you to understand the installation sequence.

#	Chapter Title	Audience	Notes
1	Overview to Cisco Network Function Virtualization Infrastructure, on page 1	Pod Administrator	Understanding the Cisco NFVI architecture and networking ensures a successful installation.
2	Overview to Cisco NFVI Installation, on page 69	Pod Administrator	Describes the Cisco NFVI installation procedures.
3	Preparing for Installation on Servers Without Internet Access, on page 71	Pod Administrator	Provides information on the hardware and application preparation procedures, before installing and configuring Cisco NFVI.
4	Preparing for Cisco NFVI Installation, on page 75	Users	Refer to this section, if your management node does not have Internet access.
5	Installing Cisco VTS, on page 103	Users	Refer to this section, if your package includes Cisco Virtual Topology System.. You must install Cisco VTS before you install other Cisco NFVI applications.
6	Installing Cisco VIM, on page 131	Pod Administrator	Describes how to configure and install Cisco VIM. Users with Cisco VIM UM can proceed with the Cisco VIM Insight installation, while users with only Cisco VIM have to complete the full procedure.
7	Installing Cisco VIM Unified Management , on page 187	Users	Refer to this section, if your package includes Cisco VIM UM.
8	Installing Cisco VIM through Cisco VIM Unified Management, on page 203	Users	Describes Cisco VIM UM installation and configuration procedures.
9	Verifying the Cisco NFVI Installation, on page 309	Pod Administrator	Provides methods to verify the Cisco NFVI installation.



CHAPTER 3

Preparing for Installation on Servers Without Internet Access

This section describes the procedures to install Cisco NFVI in a management node without Internet access.

In this scenario, you must:

1. Download the Cisco NFVI installation files to a 64 GB (minimum) USB 2.0 drive on a staging server with Internet access.
2. Copy the files to the management node.

- [Preparing to Install Cisco NFVI on Management Nodes Without Internet Access, on page 71](#)

Preparing to Install Cisco NFVI on Management Nodes Without Internet Access

Following procedure describes how to download the Cisco NFVI installation files onto a USB drive of the staging server with Internet access. You can use the USB to load the Cisco NFVI installation files onto the management node without Internet access.



Note Cisco recommends you to use Virtual Network Computing (VNC), other terminal multiplexer, or similar screen sessions to complete these steps.

Before you begin

You must have a CentOS 7 staging server (VM, laptop, or UCS server) with a 64 GB USB 2.0 drive only. The staging server must have wired Internet connection to download the Cisco VIM installation files onto the USB drive. Once downloaded, you can copy the installation files onto the management node from USB drive.



Note Downloading of the installation files (over 25 GB in size) to the USB drive might take several hours depending on the speed of your Internet connection. Ensure that you disable the CentOS to the sleep mode, for faster installation.

Step 1 On the staging server, use yum to install the following packages:

- PyYAML (yum install PyYAML)
- python-requests (yum install python-requests)

Step 2 Log into Cisco VIM software download site and download the `getartifacts.py` script from external registry:

```
# download the new getartifacts.py file (see example below)
curl -o getartifacts.py
https://username:password@cvm-registry.com/mercury-releases/cvim24-rhel7-osp10/releases/2.4.4/getartifacts.py

curl -o getartifacts.py-checksum.txt
https://username:password@cvm-registry.com/mercury-releases/cvim24-rhel7-osp10/releases/2.4.4/getartifacts.py-checksum.txt

# calculate the checksum and verify that with one in getartifacts.py-checksum.txt
sha512sum getartifacts.py

# Change the permission of getartificats.py
chmod +x getartifacts.py
```

Step 3 Run `getartifacts.py`. The script formats the USB 2.0 drive and downloads the installation files. You must provide the registry username and password, tag ID, and USB partition on the staging server.

```
# ./getartifacts.py -h
usage: getartifacts.py [-h] -t TAG -u USERNAME -p PASSWORD -d DRIVE
                        [--proxy PROXY] [--retry]
                        [--artifacts [ARTIFACTS [ARTIFACTS ...]]]
```

Script to pull container images.

optional arguments:

```
-h, --help            show this help message and exit
-t TAG, --tag TAG      installer version to pull
-u USERNAME, --username USERNAME
                        Registry username
-p PASSWORD, --password PASSWORD
                        Registry password
-d DRIVE, --drive DRIVE
                        Provide usb drive path
--proxy PROXY          https_proxy if needed
--retry               Try to complete a previous fetch
--artifacts [ARTIFACTS [ARTIFACTS ...]]
                        Artifact List values(space separated): core insight
                        all
```

This script pulls images from remote registry and copies the contents to usb drive

To identify the USB drive, execute the `lsblk` command before and after inserting the USB drive. The command displays a list of available block devices. The output data will help you to find the USB drive location. Provide the entire drive path in the `-d` option instead of any partition as shown below. Here, the `tag_id` refers to the Cisco VIM release version 2.4.x.

For example:

```
sudo ./getartifacts.py -t <tag_id> -u <username> -p <password> -d </dev/sdc> [--artifacts ...] [--proxy proxy.example.com] -
```

For example: To download only the insight artifacts, execute the following command:

```
sudo ./getartifacts.py -t <tag_id> -u <username> -p <password> -d </dev/sdy/>-- artifacts insight
```

Note Ensure that you do not remove the USB drive during synchronization.

Note On executing getartifacts.py, the following message: *stderr: mount: wrong fs type, bad option, bad superblock on /dev/sdy1, missing codepage or helper program, or other error:* is displayed to notify bad superblock and mount failure. In this case, reformat the drive and use the **fsck** command to recover the drive: **fsck.ext4 -pv /dev/sdc**.

Note As the size of the artifacts is greater than 25G, Cisco recommends you to execute this step over a wired internet connection. It will take few hours to download and populate data on USB drive, depending on the internet connectivity.

The getartifacts.py script downloads the following:

- Core Packages
 - buildnode-K9.iso
 - mercury-installer.tar.gz
 - registry-2.3.1.tar.gz
- Optional: Unified Management Package called Insight
 - insight-K9.tar.gz
 - mariadb-app-K9.tar.gz
- Respective checksums

Step 4 Use the following command to verify the downloaded artifacts and container images:

```
# create a directory
sudo mkdir -p /mnt/Cisco

# /dev/sdc is the USB drive, same as supplied in getartifacts.py python script

#You need to mount the partition with the steps given below:
sudo mount /dev/sdc1 /mnt/Cisco
cd /mnt/Cisco

# execute the test-usb help to look at the options
./test-usb -h

usage: ./test-usb [-h] -- Show this program to check integrity of artifacts in this USB drive
                [-c] -- Check integrity of only core artifacts in this USB drive
                [-i] -- Check integrity of only insight artifacts in this USB drive
                [-a] -- Check integrity of all (core and insight) artifacts in this USB drive
                [-l] -- Location of artifacts

# execute the verification script
./test-usb

# failures will be explicitly displayed on screen, sample success output below
# sample output of ./test-usb execution with 2.4 release
#./test-usb
INFO: Checking the integrity of this USB drives
INFO: Checking artifact buildnode-K9.iso
INFO: Checking artifact registry-2.3.1.tar.gz
INFO: Checking required layers:
INFO: 548 layer files passed checksum.
```

```

Following output shows the result when using -a option
# ./test-usb -a
INFO: Checking the integrity of this USB drive
INFO: Checking artifact buildnode-K9.iso
INFO: Checking artifact registry-2.3.1.tar.gz
INFO: Checking artifact mariadb-app-K9.tar.gz
INFO: Checking artifact haproxy-K9.tar.gz
INFO: Checking artifact insight-K9.tar.gz
INFO: Checking required layers:
INFO: 548 layer files passed checksum.

```

If the download fails, an error message is displayed.

For example:

```

# ./test-usb
INFO: Checking the integrity of this USB stick
INFO: Checking artifact buildnode-K9.iso
ERROR: Checksum for artifact buildnode-K9.iso does not match ('SHA512 (buildnode-K9.iso) =
96ec62a0932a0d69daf60acc6b8af2dc4e5ecalc32cd3781fc17a494592feb52a7f171eda25e59c0d326fbb09194eeda66036cbdc3870dfe74f59c1f2dce225'
!= 'SHA512 (buildnode-K9.iso) =
a6a9e79fa08254e720a80868555679baaea2dd8f26a0360ad47540eda831617bea0514a117b12ee5f36415b7540afal12a1c904cd69e40d704a8f25d78867acf')
INFO: Checking artifact registry-2.3.1.tar.gz
ERROR: Artifact registry-2.3.1.tar.gz is not present
INFO: Checking required layers:
ERROR: Layer file sha256:002aa1f0fbdaea7ea25da1d906e732fe9a9b7458d45f8ef7216d1b4314e05207 has a bad
checksum
ERROR: Layer file sha256:5be3293a81773938cdb18f7174bf595fe7323fdc018c715914ad41434d995799 has a bad
checksum
ERROR: Layer file sha256:8009d9e798d9acea2d5a3005be39bcbfe77b9a928e8d6c84374768ed19c97059 has a bad
checksum
ERROR: Layer file sha256:ea55b2fc29b95d835d16d7eeac42fa82f17e985161ca94a0f61846defffla9c8 has a bad
checksum
INFO: 544 layer files passed checksum.

```

Step 5 To resolve download artifact failures, unmount the USB and run the `getartifacts` command again with the `--retry` option.

```
sudo ./getartifacts.py -t <tag_id> -u <username> -p <password> -d </dev/sdc> --retry
```

Step 6 Mount the USB and then run the `test-usb` command to validate if all the files are downloaded:

```

# /dev/sdc is the USB drive, same as supplied in get artifacts.py python script
sudo mount /dev/sdal /mnt/Cisco
cd /mnt/Cisco

```

```

# execute the verification script
./test-usb

```

In case of failures the out of the above command will explicitly display the same on the screen

Step 7 When the USB integrity test is done, unmount the USB drive by running the following command:

```
sudo umount /mnt/Cisco
```



CHAPTER 4

Preparing for Cisco NFVI Installation

Before you can install and configure Cisco NFVI, you must complete the following hardware and application preparation procedures provided in the following topics.

- [Installing the Cisco NFVI Hardware, on page 75](#)
- [Configuring ToR Switches for C-Series Pods, on page 78](#)
- [Configuring ToR Switches for UCS B-Series Pods, on page 82](#)
- [Preparing Cisco IMC and Cisco UCS Manager, on page 85](#)
- [Installing the Management Node, on page 86](#)
- [Installing Software Distribution Server \(SDS\), on page 89](#)
- [Setting Up the UCS C-Series Pod, on page 95](#)
- [Setting Up the UCS B-Series Pod, on page 100](#)
- [Configuring the Out-of-Band Management Switch, on page 102](#)
- [Support of 3rd Party Compute \(HP DL 360 Gen9\), on page 102](#)

Installing the Cisco NFVI Hardware

Switch on the Cisco UCS C-Series or B-Series hardware, before you install the Cisco Virtualized Infrastructure Manager (VIM). Depending upon the pod type, you need to set up the CIMC connection or UCSM IP ahead of time. The following table lists the UCS hardware options and network connectivity protocol used with virtual extensible LAN (VXLAN) over a Linux bridge, VLAN over OVS or VLAN over VPP. If Cisco Virtual Topology Services (VTS), an optional Cisco NFVI application, is installed, Virtual Topology Forwarder (VTF) is used with VXLAN for tenants, and VLANs for providers on C-Series pods.

Table 16: Cisco NFVI Hardware and Network Connectivity Protocol

UCS Pod Type	Compute and Controller Node	Storage Node	Network Connectivity Protocol
C-Series	UCS C220/240 M4	UCS C240 M4 (SFF) with two internal SSDs	VXLAN/Linux Bridge or OVS/VLAN or VPP/VLAN, or ACI/VLAN
C-Series	Controller: UCS C220/240 Compute: HP DL360 Gen9	UCS C240 M4 (SFF) with two internal SSDs	OVS/VLAN

UCS Pod Type	Compute and Controller Node	Storage Node	Network Connectivity Protocol
C-Series with Cisco VTS	UCS C220/240 M4	UCS C240 M4 (SFF) with two internal SSDs	For tenants: VTF with VXLAN. For providers: VLAN
C-Series Micropod	<p>UCS 240 M4/M5 with 12 HDD and 2 external SSDs. Pod can be expanded to 16 computes. Each compute will have 2x1.2 TB HDD or</p> <p>UCS 220 M4/M5 with 7 HDD and 1 external SSDs. Pod can be expanded to 16 computes. Each compute will have 2x1.2 TB HDD.</p> <p>Note Refer to the BOM for SSD based install for M5; M5 BOM is based on Intel X710 for control and data plane and XL710 for SRIOV.</p> <p>For exact BOM details, reach out to Cisco VIM product marketing.</p>	Not applicable as it is integrated with Compute and Controller.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • UCS M4 Support: • OVS/VLAN or VPP/VLAN or ACI/VLAN. • UCS M5 Support: OVS/VLAN or VPP/VLAN.
C-Series Hyperconverged	UCS 240 M4.	UCS C240 M4 (SFF) with 12 HDD and two external SSDs, acts as compute node	OVS/VLAN

UCS Pod Type	Compute and Controller Node	Storage Node	Network Connectivity Protocol
B-Series	UCS B200 M4.	UCS C240 M4 (SFF) with two internal SSDs.	VXLAN/Linux Bridge or OVS/VLAN.
B-Series with UCS Manager Plugin	UCS B200 M4s	UCS C240 M4 (SFF) with two internal SSDs.	OVS/VLAN



Note The storage nodes boot off two internal SSDs. It also has four external SSDs for journaling, which gives a 1:5 SSD-to-disk ratio (assuming a chassis filled with 20 spinning disks). Each C-Series pod has either a dual-port 10 GE Cisco vNIC 1227 card or dual-port/quad-port Intel X 710 card. UCS B-Series blade servers only support Cisco 1340 and 1380 NICs. For more information on Cisco vNICs, see [LAN and SAN Connectivity for a Cisco UCS Blade](#). Cisco VIM has a Micropod (based on UCS-M4 hardware) which works on Cisco VIC 1227 or Intel NIC 710, with OVS/VLAN or VPP/VLAN as the virtual network protocol. The Micropod supports with a small, functional, but redundant cloud with capability of adding standalone computes to an existing pod.

Cisco VIM supports M4-based Micropod on a VIC/NIC system with OVS, to extend the SRIOV support on a 2x2-port Intel 520 NIC card. Also, the M5-based Micropod is based on Intel NIC 710, and supports SRIOV over XL710, with OVS/VLAN or VPP/VLAN as the virtual network protocol. From release Cisco VIM 2.4.2 onwards, 40G M5-based Micropod is supported on a VIC (40G)/NIC (2-XL710 for SRIOV) system.

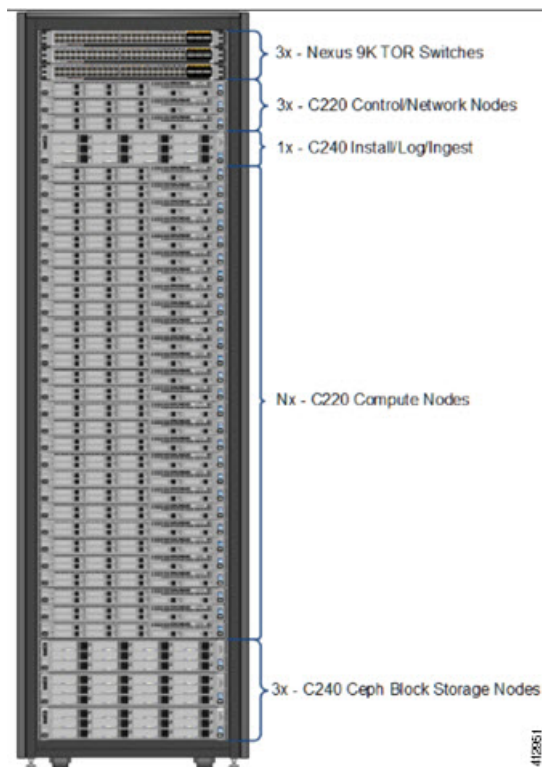
In addition, the Cisco Nexus 9372 or 93180YC, or 9396PX is also available to serve the Cisco NFVI ToR function.

After verifying that you have required Cisco UCS servers, blades and Nexus 93xx, install the hardware following procedures at the following links:

- [Cisco UCS C220 M4 Server Installation and Service Guide](#)
- [Cisco UCS C240 M4 Server Installation and Service Guide](#)
- [Cisco UCS B200 Blade Server and Installation Note](#)
- [Cisco Nexus 93180YC, 9396PX, 9372PS and 9372PX-E NX-OS Mode Switches Hardware Installation Guide](#)

The figure below shows C-Series Cisco NFVI pod. Although the figure shows a full complement of UCS C220 compute nodes, the number of compute nodes vary depending on the implementation requirements. The UCS C220 control and compute nodes can be replaced with UCS 240 series. However, in that case the number of computes fitting in one chassis system is reduced by half.

Figure 35: Cisco NFVI C-Series Pod

**Note**

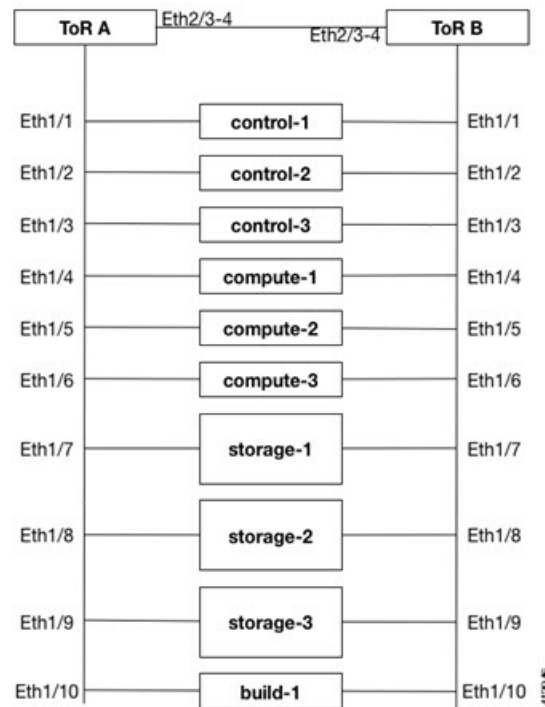
The combination of UCS-220 and UCS-240 within the compute and control nodes is not supported.

For more information on wiring schematic of various pod configuration, see [Appendix, on page 319](#).

Configuring ToR Switches for C-Series Pods

During installation, the Cisco VIM installer creates vNIC's on each of the two physical interfaces and creates a bond for the UCS C-Series pod. Before this you have to manually configure the ToR switches to create a vPC with the two interfaces connected to each server. Use identical Cisco Nexus 9372, or 93180YC, or 9396PX switches for the ToRs. We recommend you to use the N9K TOR software versions for setup: 7.0(3)I4(6) 7.0(3)I6(1). Also, you can refer to, the Appendix section for the wiring details for each pod type on a C-series-based install.

Complete the following steps to create a vPC on a pair of Cisco Nexus ToR switches. The steps use the following topology as an example. Modify the configuration as it applies to your environment. In Cisco VIM, we have introduced a feature which is called auto-configuration of ToR (for N9K series only). This is an optional feature, and if you decide to take this route, the following steps can be skipped.

Figure 36: ToR Configuration Sample**Step 1**

Change the vPC domain ID for your configuration. The vPC domain ID can be a unique number. The IP address on the other switch mgmt0 port is used for the keepalive IP. Change it to the IP used for your network.

For the preceding example, the following is the configuration:

```
ToR-A (mgmt0 is 172.18.116.185)
feature vpc
vpc domain 116
peer-keepalive destination 172.18.116.186
ToR-B (mgmt0 is 172.18.116.186)
feature vpc
vpc domain 116
peer-keepalive destination 172.18.116.185
```

Because both switches are cabled identically, the remaining configuration is identical on both switches. In this example, topology Eth2/3 and Eth2/4 are connected to each other and combined into a port channel that functions as the vPC peer link.

```
feature lacp
interface Ethernet2/3-4
channel-group 116 mode active
interface port-channel116
switchport mode trunk
vpc peer-link
```

Step 2

For each VLAN type, (mgmt_vlan, tenant_vlan_range, storage, api, external, provider), execute the following on each ToR:

```
vlan <vlan_type>
no shut
```

Step 3 Configure all the interfaces that are connected to the servers as the members of the port channels. In the example, only ten interfaces are shown. But you must configure all interfaces that are connected to the server.

Note If interfaces have configuration from previous deployments, you can remove them by entering `default interface Eth1/1-10`, then `no interface Po1-10`.

1. For deployment with any mechanism driver on Cisco VIC

There is no configuration differences among different roles (controllers/computes/storages). The same configuration applies to all interfaces.

```
interface Ethernet 1/1
channel-group 1 mode active
interface Ethernet 1/2
channel-group 2 mode active
interface Ethernet 1/3
channel-group 3 mode active
interface Ethernet 1/4
channel-group 4 mode active
interface Ethernet 1/5
channel-group 5 mode active
interface Ethernet 1/6
channel-group 6 mode active
interface Ethernet 1/7
channel-group 7 mode active
interface Ethernet 1/8
channel-group 8 mode active
interface Ethernet 1/9
channel-group 9 mode active
interface Ethernet 1/10
channel-group 10 mode active
```

2. For deployment with OVS/VPP with VLAN or LinuxBridge on Intel NIC

The interface configuration is same as Cisco VIC as shown in the above section. However, number of switch interfaces that are configured is more in the case of Intel NIC as it has dedicated control and data physical ports. For SRIOV switchport, no port channel is configured and the participating VLAN can be in trunk mode.

3. For deployment with VTS on Intel NIC

In this scenario, VTS is used as the mechanism driver. The interface configuration varies based on the server roles. Assume Ethernet1/1 to Ethernet1/3 are controller interfaces, Ethernet1/4 to Ethernet1/6 are storage interfaces, and Ethernet1/7 to Ethernet1/10 are compute interfaces. The sample configuration is as follows:

```
interface Ethernet 1/1
channel-group 1 mode active
interface Ethernet 1/2
channel-group 2 mode active
interface Ethernet 1/3
channel-group 3 mode active
interface Ethernet 1/4
channel-group 4 mode active
interface Ethernet 1/5
channel-group 5 mode active
interface Ethernet 1/6
channel-group 6 mode active
interface Ethernet 1/7
channel-group 7
interface Ethernet 1/8
channel-group 8
```

```
interface Ethernet 1/9
channel-group 9
interface Ethernet 1/10
channel-group 10
```

Note When using VTS with Intel NIC, ensure that LACP is turned off for those port channels that are connected to the compute nodes. In the sample configuration, the preceding codes correspond to Ethernet 1/7 to 1/10.

Step 4 Configure the port channel interface as vPC and trunk all VLANs. For Intel NIC, you must configure native vlan and set it to mgmt vlan on the control ports so that PXE boot does not fail. Skip to listen or learn in spanning tree transitions, and ensure that you do not suspend the ports if LACP packets are not received. Also, configure it with large MTU of 9216 to avoid Ceph installation failure. The last configuration allows you to start the servers before the bonding is set up.

```
interface port-channel1-9
shutdown
spanning-tree port type edge trunk
switchport mode trunk
switchport trunk native vlan mgmt_vlan for the control ports when Intel NIC is used
switchport trunk allowed vlan <mgmt_vlan, tenant_vlan_range, storage, api, external, provider>
no lACP suspend-individual
mtu 9216
vpc <1-9>
no shutdown
```

Step 5 Identify the port channel interface that connects to the management node on the ToR:

```
interface port-channel10
shutdown
spanning-tree port type edge trunk
switchport mode trunk
switchport trunk allowed vlan <mgmt_vlan>
no lACP suspend-individual
vpc 10
no shutdown
```

Step 6 Check the port channel summary status. The ports connected to the neighbor switch have to be in (P) state. Before the server installation, the server facing interfaces must be in (I) state. After installation, they have to be in (P) state, which means they are up and in port channel mode.

```
gen-leaf-1# show port-channel summary
Flags: D - Down P - Up in port-channel (members)
I - Individual H - Hot-standby (LACP only)
s - Suspended r - Module-removed
S - Switched R - Routed
U - Up (port-channel)
M - Not in use. Min-links not met
```

```
-----
Group Port- Type Protocol Member Ports
Channel
-----
```

```
1 Po1(SD) Eth LACP Eth1/1(I)
2 Po2(SD) Eth LACP Eth1/2(I)
3 Po3(SD) Eth LACP Eth1/3(I)
4 Po4(SD) Eth LACP Eth1/4(I)
5 Po5(SD) Eth LACP Eth1/5(I)
6 Po6(SD) Eth LACP Eth1/6(I)
7 Po7(SD) Eth LACP Eth1/7(I)
8 Po8(SD) Eth LACP Eth1/8(I)
9 Po9(SD) Eth LACP Eth1/9(I)
10 Po10(SD) Eth LACP Eth1/10(I)
116 Po116(SU) Eth LACP Eth2/3(P) Eth2/4(P)
```

Step 7 Enable automatic Cisco NX-OS errdisable state recovery:

```
errdisable recovery cause link-flap
errdisable recovery interval 30
```

Cisco NX-OS places links that flap repeatedly into errdisable state to prevent spanning tree convergence problems caused by non-functioning of hardware. During Cisco VIM installation, the server occasionally triggers the link flap threshold, so enabling automatic recovery from this error is recommended.

```
errdisable recovery cause link-flap
errdisable recovery interval 30
```

Step 8 If you are installing Cisco Virtual Topology Systems, an optional Cisco NFVI application, enable jumbo packets and configure 9216 MTU on the port channel or Ethernet interfaces. For example:

Port channel:

```
interface port-channel10
  switchport mode trunk
  switchport trunk allowed vlan 80,323,680,860,2680,3122-3250
  mtu 9216
  vpc 10
```

Ethernet:

```
interface Ethernet1/25
  switchport mode trunk
  switchport trunk allowed vlan 80,323,680,860,2680,3122-3250
  mtu 9216
```

Configuring ToR Switches for UCS B-Series Pods

Complete the following steps to create a vPC on a pair of Cisco Nexus ToR switches for a UCS B-Series pod. The steps are similar to configuring ToR switches for C-Series pods, with some differences. Here, the two ToR switches are Storm-tor-1 (mgmt0 is 172.18.116.185) and Storm-tor-2 (mgmt0 is 172.18.116.186). Modify the configuration as applicable to your environment.

Step 1 Change the vPC domain ID for your configuration. The vPC domain ID can be any unique number. The IP address on the other switch mgmt0 port is used for the keepalive IP. Change it to the IP used for your network.

Storm-tor-1 (mgmt0 is 172.18.116.185).

```
feature vpc
vpc domain 116
  peer-keepalive destination 172.18.116.186
for each vlan_type (mgmt_vlan, tenant_vlan_range, storage, api, external, provider); # execute the
following for each vlan
  vlan <vlan_type>
  no shut
vrf context management
  ip route 0.0.0.0/0 172.18.116.1

interface mgmt0
```

```
vrf member management
ip address 172.18.116.185/24
```

Storm-tor-2 (mgmt0 is 172.18.116.186).

```
feature vpc
vpc domain 116
  peer-keepalive destination 172.18.116.185
for each vlan_type (mgmt_vlan, tenant_vlan_range, storage, api, external, provider); # execute the
following for each vlan
  vlan <vlan_type>
  no shut
vrf context management
  ip route 0.0.0.0/0 172.18.116.1

interface mgmt0
  vrf member management
  ip address 172.18.116.186/24
```

Step 2 As both switches are cabled identically, the rest of the settings are identical on both the switches. Configure all the interfaces that are connected to the fabric interconnects for VPC.

```
feature lacp
interface port-channel1
  description "to fabric interconnect 1"
  switchport mode trunk
  vpc 1
interface port-channel2
  description "to fabric interconnect 2"
  switchport mode trunk
  vpc 2
interface Ethernet1/43
  description "to fabric interconnect 1"
  switchport mode trunk
  channel-group 1 mode active
interface Ethernet1/44
  description "to fabric interconnect 2"
  switchport mode trunk
  channel-group 2 mode active
```

Step 3 Create the port-channel interface on the ToR that connects to the management node:

```
interface port-channel3
  description "to management node"
  spanning-tree port type edge trunk
  switchport mode trunk
  switchport trunk allowed vlan <mgmt_vlan>
  no lacp suspend-individual
  vpc 3
interface Ethernet1/2
  description "to management node"
  switchport mode trunk
  channel-group 3 mode active
```

Step 4 To enable multicast traffic for Cisco VIM, change the Nexus 9000 configuration including enabling the PIM routing and OSPF:

```
feature ospf
feature pim
feature interface-vlan
feature hsrp

ip pim rp-address 192.1.1.1 group-list 224.0.0.0/4
ip pim ssm range 232.0.0.0/8
ip pim anycast-rp 192.1.1.1 192.168.100.1
```

```

ip pim anycast-rp 192.1.1.1 192.168.100.2

interface Ethernet1/18
  description "Mcast Sender Example"
  switchport trunk allowed vlan <provider/tenant vlan id>

interface loopback7
  ip address 192.1.1.1/32
  ip router ospf 777 area 0.0.0.0
  ip pim sparse-mode

router ospf 777
  router-id 1.1.1.1
  area 0.0.0.0 default-cost 10

interface Vlan<provider/tenant vlan id>
  no shutdown
  ip address <IP address/mask>
  no ip ospf passive-interface
  ip router ospf 777 area 0.0.0.0
  ip pim sparse-mode
  hsrp 101
  priority 11
  ip <provider/tenant gateway address>

```

Storm-tor-1

```

interface loopback0
  ip address 192.168.100.1/32
  ip router ospf 777 area 0.0.0.0
  ip pim sparse-mode

```

Storm-tor-2

```

interface loopback0
  ip address 192.168.100.2/32
  ip router ospf 777 area 0.0.0.0
  ip pim sparse-mode

```

Step 5

If Cisco VIM implementation has extensive multicast traffic, prioritize the multicast traffic by setting up the following service classes on the ToR switches and enabling the media QOS profile as described in the *UCS Manager Common Access Information for B-Series Pods* in [Setting Up the Cisco VIM Data Configurations, on page 138](#). The Nexus 9000 configuration is as follows:

```

class-map type qos match-all class-silver
  match cos 2
class-map type qos match-all class-bronze
  match cos 1

policy-map type qos system-level-qos
  class class-silver
    set qos-group 3
  class class-bronze
    set qos-group 2

class-map type queuing class-silver
  match qos-group 3
class-map type queuing class-bronze
  match qos-group 2

policy-map type queuing Uplink-out_policy
  class type queuing class-silver
    bandwidth percent 60
    priority
  class type queuing class-bronze

```



```

    bandwidth percent 30
    class type queuing class-default
    bandwidth percent 10
    class-map type network-qos class-silver
    match qos-group 3
    class-map type network-qos class-bronze
    match qos-group 2

policy-map type network-qos system-level-net-qos
  class type network-qos class-silver
    set cos 2
    mtu 9126
    multicast-optimize
  class type network-qos class-bronze
    set cos 1
    mtu 9126
  class type network-qos class-default
    mtu 9126

system qos
service-policy type queuing input fcoe-default-in-policy
service-policy type queuing output Uplink-out_policy
service-policy type qos input system-level-qos
service-policy type network-qos system-level-net-qos

```

Step 6 Enable jumbo frames for each ToR port-channel that connects to the Fabric Interconnects:

```

interface port-channel<number>
  mtu 9216

```

Note Enable jumbo frames in the `setup_data.yaml` file. See the *UCS Manager Common Access Information for B-Series Pods* topic in [Setting Up the Cisco VIM Data Configurations, on page 138](#).

Preparing Cisco IMC and Cisco UCS Manager

Cisco NFVI requires specific Cisco Integrated Management Controller (IMC) and Cisco UCS Manager firmware versions and parameters. The Cisco VIM bare metal installation uses the Cisco IMC credentials to access the Cisco IMC interface which is used to delete and create vNICs and to create bonds.

Complete the following steps to verify if Cisco IMC and UCS Manager are ready for Cisco NFVI installation:

- Step 1** Verify that each Cisco UCS server uses Cisco IMC firmware version of either 2.0 series (2.0(13i) or greater (preferably 2.0(13n)) or 3.0 series (use 3.0.3(f) or later). You can download the latest Cisco IMC ISO image from the Cisco Software Download site. For upgrade procedures, see the [Cisco UCS C-Series Rack-Mount Server BIOS Upgrade Guide](#).
- Step 2** For UCS B-Series pods, verify that the Cisco UCS Manager version is one of the following: 2.2(5a), 2.2(5b), 2.2(6c), 2.2(6e), 3.1(c).
- Step 3** For UCS C-Series pods, verify the following Cisco IMC information is added: IP address, username, and password.
- Step 4** For UCS B-Series pods, verify the following UCS Manager information is added: username, password, IP address, and resource prefix. The resource prefix maximum length is 6. The provisioning network and the UCS Manager IP address must be connected.
- Step 5** Verify that no legacy DHCP/Cobbler/PXE servers are connected to your UCS servers. If so, disconnect or disable the interface connected to legacy DHCP, Cobbler, or PXE server. Also, delete the system from the legacy cobbler server.

Step 6 Verify Cisco IMC has NTP enabled and is set to the same NTP server and time zone as the operating system.

Installing the Management Node

This procedure installs RHEL 7.4 with the following modifications:

- Hard disk drives are setup in RAID 6 configuration with one spare HDD for eight HDDs deployment, two spare HDDs for 9 to 16 HDDs deployment, or four spare HDDs for 17 to 24 HDDs deployment.
- Networking: Two bridge interfaces are created; one for the installer API (br_api off the LOM interfaces) and the other for provisioning (br_mgmt off the Cisco VIC on the MLOM or off a X710 based Intel NIC depending on the BOM). Each bridge interface has underlying interfaces bonded together with 802.3ad. Provision interfaces are 10/40 GE interfaces (either off Cisco VICs or X710 Intel NIC (first 2 ports of Intel NIC)). API interfaces are 1/10 GE LOMs based on the BOM. If the NFVbench is planned to be used, another NIC card constituting off 2xIntel 520, or 2xIntel 710XL, or 4xIntel710 X is needed. For management node BOM (Intel NIC based), ensure that you place the NIC for NFVbench at a slot higher than that of the br_mgmt based Intel NIC.
- The installer code is placed in /root/.
- SELinux is enabled on the management node for security.

Before you begin

Verify that the Cisco NFVI management node where you plan to install the Red Hat for Enterprise Linux (RHEL) operating system is a Cisco UCS C240 M4/M5 Small Form Factor (SFF) with 8, 16, or 24 hard disk drives (HDDs). In addition, the management node must be connected to your enterprise NTP and DNS servers. If your management node server does not meet these requirements, do not continue until you install a qualified UCS C240 server. Also, verify that the pod has MRAID card.

Step 1 Log into the **CIMC GUI** of Cisco NFVI management node.

Step 2 Follow steps in [Configuring the Server Boot Order](#) to set the boot order to boot from Local HDD.

Step 3 Follow steps in Cisco UCS [Configure BIOS Parameters](#) to set the following advanced BIOS settings:

For Management node based on UCS M4 boxes set the following for BIOS Parameters:

- PCI ROM CLP—Disabled
- PCH SATA Mode—AHCI
- All Onboard LOM Ports—Enabled
- LOM Port 1 OptionROM—Disabled
- LOM Port 2 OptionROM—Disabled
- All PCIe Slots OptionROM—Enabled
- PCIe Slot:1 OptionROM—Enabled
- PCIe Slot:2 OptionROM—Enabled

- PCIe Slot: MLOM OptionROM—Disabled
- PCIe Slot:HBA OptionROM—Enabled
- PCIe Slot:FrontPcie1 OptionROM—Enabled
- PCIe Slot:MLOM Link Speed—GEN3
- PCIe Slot:Riser1 Link Speed—GEN3
- PCIe Slot:Riser2 Link Speed—GEN3
- MLOM OptionROM—Enabled

For Management node based on UCS M5 boxes set the following for BIOS Parameters:

- • All Onboard LOM Ports—Enabled
- • LOM Port 1 OptionROM—Disabled
- • LOM Port 2 OptionROM—Disabled
- • PCIe Slot:1 OptionROM—Enabled
- • PCIe Slot:2 OptionROM—Enabled
- • MLOM OptionROM—Enabled
- • MRAID OptionROM—Enabled

Other parameters must be set to default.

Step 4 Click **Save Changes**.

Step 5 Add the management node vNICs to the provisioning VLAN to provide the management node with access to the provisioning network:

- In the CIMC navigation area, click the **Server** tab and select **Inventory**.
- In the main window, click the **Cisco VIC Adapters** tab.
- Under Adapter Card, click the **vNICs** tab.
- Click the first vNIC and choose **Properties**.
- In the vNIC Properties dialog box, enter the provisioning VLAN in the Default VLAN field and click **Save Changes**.
- Repeat Steps **a** through **e** for the second vNIC.

Note Delete any additional vNICs configured on the UCS server beyond the two default ones.

Step 6 Download the Cisco VIM Buildnode ISO image to your computer from the given location.

Step 7 In CIMC, launch the KVM console.

Step 8 Mount the Cisco VIM Buildnode ISO image as a virtual DVD.

Step 9 Reboot the UCS server, then press **F6** to enter the boot menu.

Step 10 Select the KVM-mapped DVD to boot the Cisco VIM Buildnode ISO image provided with the install artifacts.

Step 11 In boot menu appears, select **Install Cisco VIM Management Node**. This is default selection and it gets automatically selected after the timeout.

Step 12 At the prompts, answer the following questions to install the Management node as unified management node only or not:

- Hostname—Enter the management node hostname (The hostname length must be 32 or less characters).

- Select **Yes** to Install as Unified Management only when required. Migration from one to another is not supported.
- API IPv4 address—Enter the management node API IPv4 address in CIDR (Classless Inter-Domain Routing) format. For example, 172.29.86.62/26
- API Gateway IPv4 address—Enter the API network default gateway IPv4 address.
- MGMT IPv4 address—Enter the management node MGMT IPv4 address in CIDR format. For example, 10.30.118.69/26

Note The MGMT IPv4 entry is not required, if the management node is installed as “unified management node only”

- Prompt to enable static IPv6 address configuration—Enter **Yes** to continue input similar IPv6 address configuration for API and MGMT network or **No** to skip if IPv6 is not needed.
- API IPv6 address—Enter the management node API IPv6 address in CIDR (Classless Inter-Domain Routing) format. For example, 2001:c5c0:1234:5678:1001::5/8.
- Gateway IPv6 address—Enter the API network default gateway IPv6 address.
- MGMT IPv6 address—Enter the management node MGMT IPv6 address in CIDR format. For example, 2001:c5c0:1234:5678:1002::5/80
- DNS server—Enter the DNS server IPv4 address or IPv6 address if static IPv6 address is enabled.
- Option for Teaming Driver for Link Aggregation (answer **yes** when Nexus Switch is the ToR, and answer **no** when Cisco NCS 5500 is ToR): <yes|no> "

After you enter the management node IP addresses, the Installation options menu appears. In the installation menu, there are several options, fill in the options that are listed below (option 8 and 2) and leave everything else as it is. If you are unable to start the installation, enter **r** to refresh the Installation menu.

Step 13 In the Installation menu, select option **8** to enter the root password.

Step 14 At the Installation Menu, select option **2** to enter the time zone.

Step 15 At the Timezone settings, select the option **1** as option **2** is not supported.

Step 16 Enter the number corresponding to your time zone.

Step 17 Enter the number for your region.

Step 18 Choose the city and then confirm the time zone settings.

Note NTP server IP must not be entered at the time of setting time zone.

Step 19 After confirming your time zone settings, enter **b** to start the installation.

Step 20 After the installation is complete, press **Return** to reboot the server.

Step 21 After the reboot, check the management node clock using the Linux **date** command to ensure that the TLS certificates are valid, for example:

```
#date
Mon Aug 22 05:36:39 PDT 2016

To set date:
#date -s '2016-08-21 22:40:00'
Sun Aug 21 22:40:00 PDT 2016

To check for date:
```

```
#date
Sun Aug 21 22:40:02 PDT 2016
```

Installing Software Distribution Server (SDS)

SDS, alleviates the need for CVIM management nodes to have internet connectivity, and the same time helps remove the logistics of shipping USBs to multiple pods across the enterprise for software install or update of the cloud.

Before you begin

Prerequisites for SDS Nodes

- Ensure that the Cisco VIM management nodes have internet connectivity.
- Ensure that the Cisco NFVI SDS node where you want to install the `buildnode.iso` is a Cisco UCS C240 M4 Small Form Factor (SFF) with 16 or 24 hard disk drives (HDDs).
- Ensure that the SDS node is connected to the enterprise NTP and DNS servers.
- Ensure that the SDS node has a hardware MRAID and a cache card.

Prerequisites for SDS Server

• TLS certificate (For production environment)

On the SDS server, configure a secure registry so that the pods can obtain the container images over TLS. You need to provide a certificate signed by a trusted third-party CA authority and the **CommonName** in the certificate must match the SDS Registry FQDN name. The `sds_setup_data.yaml` has 3 fields:

- `SSL_CERT_FILE`: Path of x509 certificate obtained from a trusted CA authority
- `SSL_CERT_KEY_FILE`: Path of private key obtained from a trusted CA authority
- `SSL_CERT_CHAIN_FILE`: Path of a single ssl cert chain file. The trusted CA authority might provide you the x509 cert for your domain, intermediate x509 cert and root CA cert. You need to create a single ssl cert chain file using the commands below:

```
# cat <x509 domain cert> >> ssl_chain_file.cer
# cat <intermediate ca cert> >> ssl_chain_file.cer
# cat <root ca cert> >> ssl_chain_file.cer
```

• Self-signed certificate (For internal use)

Cisco recommends to use a trusted CA signed certificate when a SDS node is used in production environment. For internal testing and POC, Cisco supports SDS node with self signed certificate. Follow the below steps to generate the self-signed certificate:

```
# openssl genrsa -des3 -out https_reverse_proxy.key 2048
# openssl req -new -key https_reverse_proxy.key -out https_reverse_proxy.csr
# cp https_reverse_proxy.key https_reverse_proxy.org
# openssl rsa -in https_reverse_proxy.key.org -out https_reverse_proxy.key
# openssl x509 -req -days 365 -in https_reverse_proxy.csr -signkey
```

```
https_reverse_proxy.key -out https_reverse_proxy.cer
```

Generate the certificate with the same FQDN as specified in the `sds_setup_data.yaml`. Populate the `SSL_CERT_FILE`, `SSL_CERT_KEY_FILE` and `SSL_CERT_CHAIN_FILE` in `sds_setup_data.yaml`. In case of self-signed certificate, use the same x509 certificate for both cert file and cert chain file. You need to manually trust the self-signed certificate. The operator needs to execute the commands below on both SDS server and CVIM pod management node:

```
# cp <x509 cert> /etc/pki/ca-trust/source/anchors/ca.crt
# update-ca-trust extract
```

For docker registry to work with self signed certificates, execute the commands below on SDS server.

```
# mkdir /etc/docker/certs.d/<fqdn>
# cp <x509 cert> /etc/docker/certs.d/<fqdn>/ca.crt
```

• DNS server

Ensure that the pods and the SDS server are reachable to the DNS server and the DNS server must be able to resolve the SDS Registry FQDN. If the enterprise does not have a unified DNS, then you need to populate the `/etc/hosts` file with FQDN after provisioning a node using the ISO archive file.

Installing SDS Node

The steps to install an SDS node are similar to the steps in [Installing the Management Node, on page 86](#). The only difference being, in Step 11 of the task, you need to choose the option to configure the server as an SDS server. In the subsequent prompts, you can enter information such as the hostname, ipv4 or ipv6 addresses for `br_public` and `br_private` interfaces, and gateway addresses, similar to the [Installing the Management Node, on page 86](#) task.

The node is installed with RHEL 7.4 with the following modifications:

- Hard disk drives are set up in RAID 6 configuration with two spare HDDs for a 16 HDDs deployment or four spare HDDs for a 24 HDDs deployment.
- Two bridge interfaces are created, namely, `br_public` and `br_private`. In case of a connected SDS server, the `br_public` interface is connected to the internet. The `br_private` interface is local to your datacenter. The management node for every Cisco VIM pod must be reachable to the `br_private` interface of SDS server through the `br_api` interface. Each bridge interface has underlying interfaces bonded together with 802.3ad. For the SDS, the private interfaces are over 10 GE Cisco VICs, while the public interfaces are 1 GE LOMs.
- Security_Enhanced Linux (SELinux) is enabled on the management node for security.
- The SDS code consists of packages with installer code. After provisioning the server with ISO, the installer code is placed in the following path:

```
/root/cvim_sds-<tag>
```

Setting up SDS for Cisco VIM Artifact Distribution

You must configure a `sds_setup_data.yaml` file for each installer workspace.

- Step 1** Copy the EXAMPLE file from the openstack-configs directory and save it as sds_setup_data.yaml.
- Step 2** If you want to install a release tag on a SDS server, update the fields in the sds_setup_data.yaml file as necessary.

```
## Configuration File:
# This file is used as an inventory file to setup CVIM SDS (software delivery server).
#####
# User Defined Configuration File.
# Information in this file is specific to the SDS setup.
#####
SSL_CERT_FILE: <abs_location_for_cert_path of x509 certificate>
SSL_CERT_KEY_FILE: <abs_location_for_cert_priv_key of x509 certificate>
SSL_CERT_CHAIN_FILE: <abs_location_for_cert_chain_file of x509 certificate>
#####
# Registry credentials to access the CVIM registry (Cisco Supplied)
#####
CVIM_REGISTRY_USERNAME: <username>
CVIM_REGISTRY_PASSWORD: <password>
NETWORKING:
## Max. NTP servers = 4, min of 1
ntp_servers: <ntp.server1.fqdn.com, ntp.server2.fqdn.com >
or
ntp_servers: [ipv6_address, 'ipv4_address'] # ", " separated IPv4 or IPv6 address info
http_proxy_server: <proxy.domain.com:8080> # optional, needed if the pod is behind a proxy
https_proxy_server: <proxy.domain.com:8080> # optional, needed if the pod is behind a proxy
SDS_REGISTRY_NAME: <satellite.fqdn.com> #SDS registry name needs to resolve to valid IP
SDS_REGISTRY_USERNAME: <username>
SDS_REGISTRY_PASSWORD: <password>
# (Optional)SDS users who can only pull images from SDS docker registry
SDS_READ_ONLY_USERS:
- username: <user1>
  password: <password1>
- username: <user2>
  password: <password2>
```

- Step 3** Save the sds_setup_data.yaml file in the following path:
- openstack-configs directory under /root/cvim_sds-<tag>

Installing SDS in Connected Mode

In the Connected mode, the SDS server has a publicly routable IP address, and the server can connect to the cvim-registry. When the SDS server is initially configured with the ISO, Cisco VIM SDS workspace of that release is preinstalled in the /root/ directory.

- Step 1** Download the mercury-installer.tar.gz file of the release that you want.
- Step 2** Unzip the zip file manually and rename the unzipped file as cvim_sds-<release>.
- Step 3** Perform the following steps:
- Place a valid TLS certificate in the /root/cvim_sds-<tag>/openstack-configs directory.
 - Update the fields of the SDS setup data file and save it in the following directory:
- /root/cvim_sds-<tag> openstack-configs

- Step 4** To install the release on the SDS server, navigate to the `/root/cvim_sds-<target-tag>` directory on the SDS server and run the following command:

```
# cd to /root/cvim_sds-<target-tag>
# ./sds_runner/runner.py
```

The command validates the SDS node hardware, the contents of the `sds_setup_data.yaml` file, and the validity of the TLS certificate, and then obtains the artifacts from the external Cisco VIM release registry and populates the SDS server.

Installing SDS in Air-Gapped Mode

SDS is installed in the air-gapped mode when the SDS server in the datacenter does not have internet connectivity. You can use the USB drive to load the installation files on the SDS node. The installation files are over 25 GB in size. Downloading them to the USB drive may take several hours depending on the speed of your internet connection.

Before you begin

- Ensure that you have set up a CentOS 7 staging server (VM, laptop, or UCS server) with a 64 GB USB 2.0 drive.
- Ensure that you have internet, preferably a wired connection, to download the Cisco VIM installation files, which you want to load onto the USB drive.
- Ensure that you have disabled the CentOS sleep mode.

- Step 1** On the staging server, use yum to install PyYAML and the python-requests package.

- Step 2** Access the Cisco VIM software download web site using a web browser.

- Step 3** Log in with the credentials provided by your account representative and download the `getartifacts.py` script from the external registry.

```
# download the new getartifacts.py file
curl -o getartifacts.py
https://username:password@cvim-registry.com/mercury-releases/cvim24-rhel7-osp10/releases/<2.4.x>/getartifacts.py

curl -o getartifacts.py-checksum.txt
https://username:password@cvim-registry.com/mercury-releases/cvim24-rhel7-osp10/releases/<2.4.x>/getartifacts.py-checksum.txt

# calculate the checksum by executing "sha512sum getartifacts.py", and verify that the output is
same as that listed in getartifacts.py-checksum.txt
# Change the permission of getartificats.py via "chmod +x getartifacts.py"
```

- Step 4** Run the `getartifacts.py` script.
The script formats the USB 2.0 drive and downloads the installation files. You must provide the registry username and password, tag ID, and USB partition on the staging server.

```
getartifacts.py [-h] -t TAG -u USERNAME -p PASSWORD -d DRIVE
[--proxy PROXY] [--retry]
[--artifacts [ARTIFACTS [ARTIFACTS ...]]]
Script to pull container images en masse.
optional arguments:
-h, --help show this help message and exit
```



```

-t TAG, --tag TAG installer version to pull
-u USERNAME, --username USERNAME
Registry username
-p PASSWORD, --password PASSWORD
Registry password
-d DRIVE, --drive DRIVE
Provide usb drive path
--proxy PROXY https_proxy if needed
--retry Try to complete a previous fetch
--artifacts [ARTIFACTS [ARTIFACTS ...]]
Artifact List values(space separated): core insight
All

```

The `getartifacts.py` script gets the images from the remote registry and copies the contents to the USB drive.

Step 5

To identify the USB drive, execute the `lsblk` command before and after inserting the USB drive.

The command displays a list of available block devices. You can use the output data to find the location of the USB drive. You must provide the entire drive path in the `-d` option instead of any partition.

For example: `sudo ./getartifacts.py -t <tag_id> -u <username> -p <password> -d </dev/sdc> --artifacts all --ironic [--proxy proxy.example.com]`

For an SDS disconnected install, you must use the `--artifacts all` and `--ironic` options. These options enable you to save all the artifacts in the USB device, which is useful to create a replica of the Cisco VIM external releases.

Step 6

Verify the integrity of the downloaded artifacts and the container images.

```

# create a directory sudo mkdir -p /mnt/Cisco
# /dev/sdc is the USB drive, same as supplied in getartifacts.py python script sudo mount /dev/sdc1
/mnt/Cisco
cd /mnt/Cisco
# execute the test-usb help to look at the options
./test-usb -h
usage: ./test-usb
[-h] -- Show this program to check integrity of artifacts in this USB drive
[-c] -- Check integrity of only core artifacts in this USB drive
[-i] -- Check integrity of only insight artifacts in this USB drive
[-a] -- Check integrity of all (core and insight) artifacts in this USB drive
[-l] -- Location of artifacts
# execute the verification script
./test-usb
# failures will be explicitly displayed on screen, sample success output below
# sample output of ./test-usb execution with 2.4.5 release
#./test-usb
INFO: Checking the integrity of this USB drive
INFO: Checking artifact buildnode-K9.iso
INFO: Checking artifact registry-2.4.5.tar.gz INFO: Checking required layers:
INFO: 548 layer files passed checksum.
Following output shows the result when using -a option
# ./test-usb -a
INFO: Checking the integrity of this USB drive
INFO: Checking artifact buildnode-K9.iso
INFO: Checking artifact registry-2.4.5.tar.gz
INFO: Checking artifact mariadb-app-K9.tar.gz
INFO: Checking artifact haproxy-K9.tar.gz
INFO: Checking artifact insight-K9.tar.gz
Node
INFO: Checking required layers:
INFO: 548 layer files passed checksum.
If a failure occurs, an error message is displayed. For example:
# ./test-usb
INFO: Checking the integrity of this USB drive
INFO: Checking artifact buildnode-K9.iso

```

```

ERROR: Checksum for artifact buildnode-K9.iso does not match ('SHA512 (buildnode-K9.iso) =
96ec62a0932a0d69daf60acc6b8af2dc4e5eca132cd3781fc17a494592feb52a7f171eda25e59c0d326fbb09194eeda66036c3dc3870dfe74f59cf1f2d0e225'

!= 'SHA512 (buildnode-K9.iso) =
a6a9e79fa08254e720a80868555679baeea2dd8f26a0360ad47540eda831617bea0514a117b12ee5f36415b7540afal12a1c904cd69e40d704a8f25d78867acf')

INFO: Checking artifact registry-2.3.1.tar.gz
ERROR: Artifact registry-2.3.1.tar.gz is not present INFO: Checking required layers:
ERROR: Layer file sha256:002aalf0fbdaea7ea25da1d906e732fe9a9b7458d45f8ef7216d1b4314e05207 has a bad
checksum
ERROR: Layer file sha256:5be3293a81773938cdb18f7174bf595fe7323fdc018c715914ad41434d995799 has a bad
checksum
ERROR: Layer file sha256:8009d9e798d9acea2d5a3005be39bcbfe77b9a928e8d6c84374768ed19c97059 has a bad
checksum
ERROR: Layer file sha256:ea55b2fc29b95d835d16d7eeac42fa82f17e985161ca94a0f61846defff1a9c8 has a bad
checksum
INFO: 544 layer files passed checksum.

```

Step 7 To resolve failure in downloading artifacts, unmount the USB and run the `getartifacts` command again with the `--retry` option.

```
sudo ./getartifacts.py -t <tag_id> -u <username> -p <password> -d </dev/sdc> --retry
```

Step 8 Mount the USB and then run the `test-usb` command to validate if all the files are downloaded.

```
# /dev/sdc is the USB drive, same as supplied in get artifacts.py python script
sudo mount /dev/sda1 /mnt/Cisco
cd /mnt/Cisco
```

Execute the verification script.

```
# ./test-usb
# In case of failures the out of the command displays a message indicating the same on the screen.
```

Step 9 When the USB integrity test completes, unmount the USB.

```
sudo umount /mnt/Cisco
```

Step 10 After the artifacts of a target release are saved on the USB, you must unplug the USB from the staging server, connect it to the SDS server, and then perform the following steps on the SDS server:

- Provision your SDS server with the buildnode ISO of that release and then connect the USB to the SDS server.
- To copy the contents of the USB to the SDS server, navigate to the `/root/cvim_sds-<tag>` directory, and then execute the `import artifacts` command.

```
# cd ~/cvim_sds-<tag>/tools
# ./import_artifacts.sh -s
```

- Place a valid TLS certificate in `/root/cvim_sds-<tag>/openstack-configs` directory.
- Configure the SDS setup data file with all the fields and placed the file in the `/root/cvim_sds-<tag>/openstack-configs` directory.
- Install the release on the SDS server.

Navigate to the SDS directory on the SDS server and execute the following command:

```
# cd /root/cvim_sds-<tag>
# ./sds_runner/runner.py
Usage: runner.py [options]
Runner
Options:
-h, --help show this help message and exit
-l, --list_steps List steps
-s SKIP_STEPS, --skip_steps=SKIP_STEPS
```

```
Comma separated list of steps to skip. eg -s 2,3
-p PERFORM_STEPS, --perform=PERFORM_STEPS
-y, --yes Yes option to skip steps without prompt
```

Installing Pod from SDS Server

When you want to install a Cisco VIM pod using the artifacts obtained from the SDS server, you need to provide an additional parameter in `setup_data.yaml`. Ensure that the release artifacts are pre-installed on the SDS server and that the `setup_data.yaml` file is populated with the pod details. Provide the registry FQDN name for install through SDS. For example, `your.domain.com`.

```
REGISTRY_NAME: '<registry_name>' # Mandatory Parameter.
```

Cisco VIM pod `setup_data.yaml` require the `REGISTRY_USERNAME` and `REGISTRY_PASSWORD` to connect to the docker registry and fetch docker images. To fetch the docker images from SDS node, provide the user credentials available in the `SDS_READ_ONLY_USERS` section of `sds_setup_data.yaml`. The details of an admin user with read/write access to docker registry are provided in `SDS_REGISTRY_USERNAME` and `SDS_REGISTRY_PASSWORD` field. So, it is recommended to have a read-only user on Cisco VIM pod.



Note

The Cisco VIM management node must have connectivity to the organization DNS server to resolve the SDS server domain.

Day 2 Operations on SDS

The following Day-2 operations are supported on the SDS server:

- Reconfigure SDS TLS certificate and SDS registry credentials
- SDS server Backup and Restore
- Registry Cleanup Script
- Manual update of few packages in the **Maintenance** window

For more information on these topics, refer to the *Cisco Virtual Infrastructure Manager Administrator Guide*.

Setting Up the UCS C-Series Pod

After you install the RHEL OS on the management node, perform the following steps to set up the Cisco UCS C-Series servers:

- Step 1** Log into CIMC GUI of Cisco NFVI management node.
- Step 2** Follow steps in [Configuring the Server Boot Order](#) to set the boot order to boot from Local HDD
- Step 3** Follow steps in [Configure BIOS Parameters](#) to set the LOM, HBA, and PCIe slots to the following settings:

For servers based on UCS M4 boxes, set the following for BIOS Parameters:

- CDN Support for VIC—Disabled
- PCI ROM CLP—Disabled
- PCH SATA Mode—AHCI
- All Onboard LOM Ports—Enabled
- LOM Port 1 OptionROM—Disabled
- LOM Port 2 OptionROM—Disabled
- All PCIe Slots OptionROM—Enabled
- PCIe Slot:1 OptionROM—Enabled
- PCIe Slot:2 OptionROM—Enabled
- PCIe Slot: MLOM OptionROM—Enabled
- PCIe Slot:HBA OptionROM—Enabled
- PCIe Slot:N1 OptionROM—Enabled
- PCIe Slot:N2 OptionROM—Enabled
- PCIe Slot:HBA Link Speed—GEN3

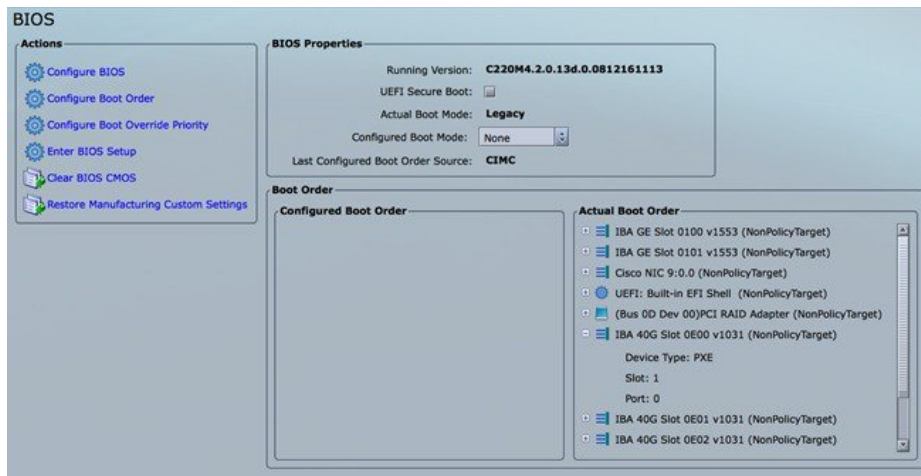
For servers based on UCS M5 boxes, set the following for BIOS Parameters:

- All Onboard LOM Ports—Enabled
- LOM Port 1 OptionROM—Disabled
- LOM Port 2 OptionROM—Disabled
- PCIe Slot:1 OptionROM—Enabled
- PCIe Slot:2 OptionROM—Enabled
- MLOM OptionROM—Enabled
- MRAID OptionROM—Enabled

Other parameters must be set to their default values.

To setup C-series pod with Intel 710 NIC:

1. Each C-series server must have two 4-port Intel 710 NIC cards.
2. Ports A, B, and C for each Intel 710 NIC card are connected to the respective ToR.
3. PCI slot in which the Intel NIC cards are inserted are enabled in the BIOS setting (BIOS > Configure BIOS > Advanced > LOM and PCI Slot Configuration -> All PCIe Slots OptionROM-Enabled and enable respective slots).
4. Slots are identified by checking the slot-id information under the **Network-Adapter** tab listed under the Inventory link on the **CIMC** pane.
5. All the Intel NIC ports must be indicated in the BIOS summary page under the **Actual Boot Order** pane, as IBA 40G Slot xyza with Device Type is set to PXE.



For UCS M5 look for “IBA 40G Slot ...” under the BIOS Properties



If the boot order for the Intel NICs is not listed as above, enable the PXE boot setting for each UCS-C series server by using either Intel's BootUtil tool on a pre-installed Linux system or boot a special ISO image. This is time consuming especially on a large POD with many nodes. Hence, an automated tool has been developed to help with this painstaking process.

While the pxe-boot tool simplifies the job of flashing the intel NIC cards, the restrictions of COSI compliance prevents us from shipping third-party utility. Administrators must download the PREBOOT.exe file from Intel website:

<https://downloadcenter.intel.com/download/27539/Ethernet-Intel-Ethernet-Connections-Boot-Utility-Preboot-Images-and-EFI-Drivers>

Version: 22.10

Date: 12/7/2017

OS Independent

Language: English

Size: 16.54 MB

MD5: ace485e8a3ef9039212f52b636ce48e3

PREBOOT.EXE

Ensure that there is unrestricted network access from Cisco VIM Management node to UCS-C series server's CIMC over following ports:

- TCP/2400 - serial-over-lan (SOL)
- TCP/22 - XMLAPI

Also, ensure that there is unrestricted network access from UCS-C series server's CIMC to Cisco VIM Management node's API interface over following port:

TCP/80 - HTTP

This utility updates only the Intel PXE configuration and not the card's firmware or Option ROM.

Utility Details

Two scripts available in the Cisco VIM Installer's tools directory are:

- create-bootutil-img.sh
- intel-bootutil-update.py

Usage

```
[root@ecologne-mgmt tools]# ./create-bootutil-img.sh
```

Usage: ./create-bootutil-img.sh <PREBOOT.exe file> <output image name>

You can download PREBOOT.exe file from :

<https://downloadcenter.intel.com/download/27862/Ethernet-Intel-Ethernet-Connections-Boot-Utility-Preboot-Images-and-EFI-Drivers>

Version: 23.1

Date: 2/21/2018

OS Independent

Language: English

Size: 16.54 MB

MD5: dadd5c85777164d8476670774b4459fc

PREBOOT.EXE

To toggle Intel PXE configuration on UCS C-series, use the script below:

```
[root@ecologne-mgmt tools]# ./intel-bootutil-update.py -h
usage: intel-bootutil-update.py [-h] [--hosts HOSTS]
[--exclude-hosts EXCLUDE_HOSTS] [-v] [-y]
--setupfile SETUPFILE --bootutil-image
BOOTUTIL_IMAGE --port {0,1,2,3} --state
{enable,disable}
```

Optional arguments:

-h --help show this help message and exit
 --hosts HOSTS comma separated list of servers
 setup_data.yaml file target for PXE configuration
 --exclude-hosts EXCLUDE_HOSTS comma separated list of servers
 setup_data.yaml file to exclude for PXE configuration
 -v, --verbose enable verbose output
 -y, --yes skip prompt
 Required arguments:
 --setupfile SETUPFILE setup_data.yaml file location
 --bootutil-image BOOTUTIL_IMAGE BootUtil image location
 --port {0,1,2,3} port #, multiple entries allowed
 --state {enable,disable} enable or disable PXE configuration

Example to enable all port A:

```
./intel-bootutil-update.py --setupfile /root/openstack-configs/setup_data.yaml
--bootutil-image /root/bootutil.img --port 0 --state enable
:
```

Example to enable all port A and B:

```
./intel-bootutil-update.py --setupfile /root/openstack-configs/setup_data.yaml
--bootutil-image /root/bootutil.img --port 0 --port 1 --state enable
```

Example to disable all port C:

```
./intel-bootutil-update.py --setupfile /root/openstack-configs/setup_data.yaml
--bootutil-image /root/bootutil.img --port 2 --state disable
```

Flow:

Multiple scripts are required as Intel's PREBOOT.exe utility is not packaged with Cisco VIM for COSI compliance:

1. Download PREBOOT.exe version 23.1 from Intel's website.
2. Go to Cisco VIM Installer's tools directory.
3. Run 'create-bootutil.img' script to create a CIMC-KVM mountable USB image.
4. Run 'intel-bootutil-update.py' script, to configure Intel NIC for enabling or disabling PXE.

Utility in action examples:

```
[root@cologne-mgmt installer]# cd tools
[root@cologne-mgmt tools]#
```

```
[root@cologne-mgmt tools]# ./create-bootutil-img.sh
```

```
Usage: ./create-bootutil-img.sh <PREBOOT.exe file> <output image name>
```

You can download PREBOOT.exe file from Intel: <https://downloadcenter.intel.com/download/27862/Ethernet-Intel-Ethernet-Connections-Boot-Utility-Preboot-Images-and-EFI-Drivers>

Version: 23.1

Date: 2/21/2018

OS Independent

Language: English

Size: 16.54 MB

MD5: dadd5c85777164d8476670774b4459fc

PREBOOT.EXE

```
[root@cologne-mgmt tools]#
```

```
[root@cologne-mgmt tools]# ./create-bootutil-img.sh /root/PREBOOT.exe /root/bootutil.img
```

```
...
```

```
Unmounting temporary mount point /tmp/tmp_bootutil.img
```

```
Cleaning up temporary workspaces
```

```
Successfully created image file with BOOTUTIL64E.EFI
```

```
-rw-r--r--. 1 root root 5.0M Jul 20 17:52 /root/bootutil.img
```

```
[root@cologne-mgmt tools]#
```

```
[root@cologne-mgmt tools]# ./intel-bootutil-update.py --setupfile
```

```
/root/openstack-configs/setup_data.yaml --bootutil-image /root/bootutil.img --port 0 --state enable
```

```
All servers will be rebooted as part of PXE configuration, would you like to continue? <y|n>
```

```
y
```

```
2018-07-18 18:34:36,697 INFO Enabling temporary HTTP server hosting BootUtil.img on 172.29.86.10
```

```
2018-07-18 18:34:36,790 INFO Successfully enabled temporary HTTP server hosting BootUtil.img on 172.29.86.10
```

```
...
```

```
2018-07-18 18:40:28,711 INFO Disabling temporary HTTP server hosting BootUtil.img on 172.29.86.10
```

```
2018-07-18 18:40:28,810 INFO Successfully disabled temporary HTTP server hosting BootUtil.img on 172.29.86.10
```

```
Server(s) successfully updated PXE configuration:
```

```
cologne-control-1,cologne-control-3,cologne-control-2,cologne-compute-1,cologne-compute-2,cologne-storage-1,cologne-storage-3,cologne-storage-2
```

```
[root@cologne-mgmt tools]#
```

Setting Up the UCS B-Series Pod

After you install the RHEL OS on the management node, complete the following steps to configure a Cisco NFVI B-Series pod:

Step 1 Log in to Cisco UCS Manager, connect to the console of both fabrics and execute the following commands:

```
# connect local-mgmt
```

```
# erase config
```

```
All UCS configurations are erased and system starts to reboot. Are you sure? (yes/no): yes
```

```
Removing all the configuration. Please wait...
```


Step 2 Go through the management connection and clustering wizards to configure Fabric A and Fabric B:

Fabric Interconnect A

```
# connect local-mgmt
# erase config
Enter the configuration method. (console/gui) console
Enter the setup mode; setup newly or restore from backup. (setup/restore) ? setup
You have chosen to setup a new Fabric interconnect. Continue? (y/n): y
Enforce strong password? (y/n) [y]: n
Enter the password for "admin":
Confirm the password for "admin":
Is this Fabric interconnect part of a cluster(select 'no' for standalone)? (yes/no) [n]: yes
Enter the switch fabric (A/B) []: A
Enter the system name: skull-fabric
Physical Switch Mgmt0 IPv4 address : 10.30.119.58
Physical Switch Mgmt0 IPv4 netmask : 255.255.255.0
IPv4 address of the default gateway : 10.30.119.1
Cluster IPv4 address : 10.30.119.60
Configure the DNS Server IPv4 address? (yes/no) [n]: y
DNS IPv4 address : 172.29.74.154
Configure the default domain name? (yes/no) [n]: y
Default domain name : ctocllab.cisco.com

Join centralized management environment (UCS Central)? (yes/no) [n]: n

Following configurations are applied:
Switch Fabric=A
System Name=skull-fabric
Enforced Strong Password=no
Physical Switch Mgmt0 IP Address=10.30.119.58
Physical Switch Mgmt0 IP Netmask=255.255.255.0
Default Gateway=10.30.119.1
DNS Server=172.29.74.154
Domain Name=ctocllab.cisco.com
Cluster Enabled=yes
Cluster IP Address=10.30.119.60
NOTE: Cluster IP is configured only after both Fabric Interconnects are initialized

Apply and save the configuration (select 'no' if you want to re-enter)? (yes/no): yes
Applying configuration. Please wait..
```

Fabric Interconnect B

```
Enter the configuration method. (console/gui) ? console

Installer has detected the presence of a peer Fabric interconnect. This Fabric interconnect is added
to the cluster. Continue (y/n) ? y

Enter the admin password of the peer Fabric interconnect:
Connecting to peer Fabric interconnect... done
Retrieving config from peer Fabric interconnect... done
Peer Fabric interconnect Mgmt0 IP Address: 10.30.119.58
Peer Fabric interconnect Mgmt0 IP Netmask: 255.255.255.0
Cluster IP address : 10.30.119.60
Physical Switch Mgmt0 IPv4 address : 10.30.119.59
Apply and save the configuration (select 'no' if you want to re-enter)? (yes/no): yes
Applying configuration. Please wait.
```

Step 3 Configure the NTP:

- a) In UCS Manager navigation area, click the **Admin** tab.
- b) In the Filter drop-down list, choose **Time Zone Management**.

- c) In the main window under Actions, click **Add NTP Server**.
- d) In the Add NTP Server dialog box, enter the NTP hostname or IP address, then click **OK**.

- Step 4** Following instructions in [Cisco UCS Manager GUI Configuration Guide, Release 2.4](#), "Configuring Server Ports with the Internal Fabric Manager" section, configure the Fabric Interconnect A and Fabric Interconnect B uplinks to the Cisco NFVI top of rack (ToR) switches as **Uplink Ports**, **Server Ports**, and **Port Channels**.
- Step 5** Configure the downlinks to the B-Series server chassis as **Server Ports**.
- Step 6** Acknowledge all chassis.
-

Configuring the Out-of-Band Management Switch

Cisco VIM installer API and SSH bonded interface occurs on 1-GB Intel NICs that connect the Cisco NFVI management node and the Cisco Catalyst switch. Following is a sample configuration for creating a port channel on a Catalyst switch. Modify the configuration for your environment:

```
interface GigabitEthernet0/39
 channel-group 2 mode active
 speed 1000

interface GigabitEthernet0/40
 channel-group 2 mode active
 speed 1000

interface Port-channel2
 switchport access vlan 165
 switchport mode access
```

Support of 3rd Party Compute (HP DL 360 Gen9)

Before you begin

Cisco VIM manages all aspects of the cloud through full automation, with no manual intervention beyond initial infrastructure setup. To extend this approach to third-party computes, specifically HP DL360 Gen9, we need to distribute the HP SmartArray Utility Tools as part of the platform offering.

To support third-party computes in Cisco VIM perform the following steps:

- Step 1** Download the **ssacli** tool directly from HPE's website and place the RPM file in `"/root/installer-<tagid>/openstack-configs/"` directory.
- Note** Currently Cisco VIM supports `ssacli-3.10-3.0.x86_64.rpm`.
- Step 2** Location and checksum of the target RPM is:
- `https://downloads.linux.hpe.com/SDR/repo/spp-gen9/RHEL/7/x86_64/2017.07.1/ssacli-3.10-3.0.x86_64.rpm` SHA1 checksum: `51ef08cd972c8e65b6f904fd683bed8e40fce377`
-



CHAPTER 5

Installing Cisco VTS

If your Cisco NFVI package includes Cisco Virtual Topology System, the following topics tell you how to install Cisco VTS for use with Cisco NFVI. The Cisco VTS installation procedures are customized for Cisco NFVI from the standard Cisco VTS 2.6.2 installation procedures located on the [Cisco VTS product site](#). You must install Cisco VTS before you install Cisco VIM.

- [Overview to Cisco VTS Installation in Cisco NFVI, on page 103](#)
- [System Requirements for VTC VM, on page 108](#)
- [System Requirements for VTSR VM, on page 109](#)
- [Supported Virtual Machine Managers, on page 109](#)
- [Supported Platforms, on page 109](#)
- [Installing Cisco VTS in Cisco NFVI Environment, on page 111](#)
- [Installing the VTSR VMs, on page 115](#)
- [Verifying Cisco VTS Installation in Cisco NFVI, on page 118](#)
- [Configuring Cisco VTS and VTSR After Installation, on page 120](#)
- [Installing VTS in an HA Configuration, on page 121](#)
- [Sample Cisco VTS Configurations for Cisco NFVI, on page 125](#)

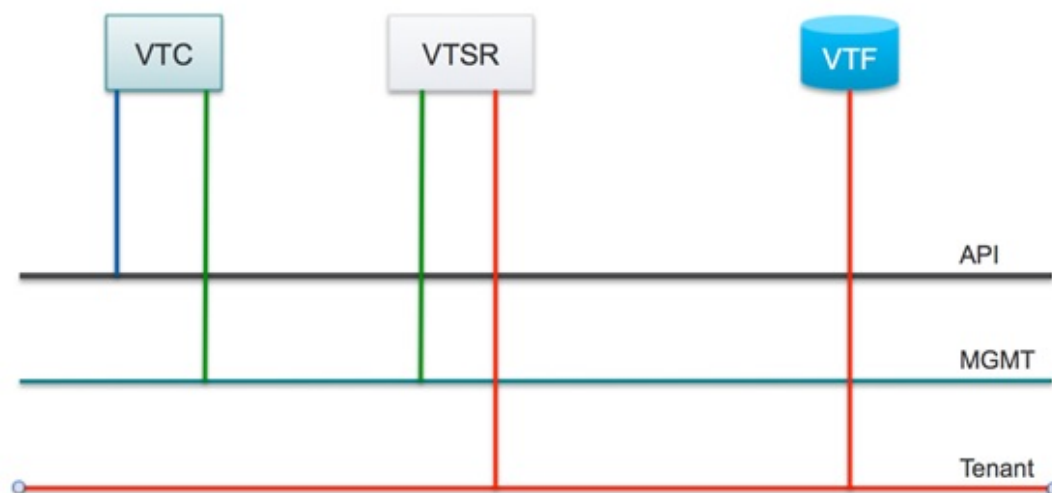
Overview to Cisco VTS Installation in Cisco NFVI

The Cisco Virtual Topology System (VTS) is an overlay management and provisioning system for data center networks. It automates data center overlay fabric provisioning for both physical and virtual workloads. It provides a policy-based approach for overlay provisioning, and can be used for multitenant data centers for cloud services, including Cisco NFVI.

To install Cisco VTS with Cisco NFVI, you must manually install the Cisco VTS Virtual Topology Controller (VTC) and its VTSR VMs before you start the Cisco VIM installation. The VTC and VTSR VMs must be run on an independent pair of servers, that is, not on a Cisco NFVI control, compute, storage, or management node. You set up the networking on those servers as described and outlined in the installation procedures. When you run the Cisco VIM installer, you have to provide the VTC VIP and appropriate VTS credentials.

The following figure shows how Cisco VTS Virtual Topology Controller (VTC) and the VTSR virtual machines (VMs) connect to the Cisco NFVI networks.

Figure 37: Cisco VTS Connectivity to Cisco NFVI



The following table maps Cisco VTS network names to Cisco VIM network names.

Table 17: Cisco VTS to Cisco VIM Network Name Mapping

Cisco VTS VM	Cisco VTS Network Name	Cisco VIM Network Name
VTC	Management Network	API (a)
VTC	Underlay Network	Management or Provision (mx)
VTSR	Management Network	Management or Provision (mx)
VTSR	Underlay Network	Tenant (t)

The following table describes the required IP address allocations for VTS components.

Table 18: Cisco VTS IP Address Allocations

Cisco VIM Network	Required Cisco VTS IP Addresses	Description
API (a)	3 total (1 VIP + 1 IP per VTC VM)	Set up in the VTC config.iso and cluster.conf
Management or Provisioning (mx)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 5 total—Three for VTC (one VTC VIP called as VTS_NCS_IP in setup_data and one IP per VTC VM) Two for VTSR: one IP per VTSR VM. 	Set up in VTSR config.iso. Note: VTS component IP addresses cannot overlap with the pool ranges configured in the Cisco VIM setup_data.yaml.

Cisco VIM Network	Required Cisco VTS IP Addresses	Description
Tenant (t)	2 total—(one IP address VTSR VM.	Set up in VTSR config.iso Note: The VTS component IPs cannot overlap with pool ranges that are configured in the Cisco VIM setup_data.yaml.

The following is the VTS IP distribution and setup mechanism.

VIM API network

- VTC1—api (a) network IP1 (associated through the VTC1 config ISO)
- VTC2—api (a) network IP2 (associated through the VTC2 config ISO)
- VTC VIP—api (a) network IP3 (associated through the HA step cluster.conf)

VIM Management/Provisioning network

- VTC1—management/provisioning (mx) network IP1 (associated through the VTC1 config ISO)
- VTC2—management/provisioning (mx) network IP2 (associated through the VTC2 config ISO)
- VTC VIP—management/provisioning (mx) network IP3 (associated through the HA step cluster.conf)
- VTSR 1—management/provisioning (mx) network IP4 (associated through the VTSR-1 config ISO)
- VTSR 2—management/provisioning (mx) network IP5 (associated through the VTSR-2 config ISO)

VIM Tenant network:

- VTSR 1—tenant (t) network IP1 (associated through the VTSR-1 config ISO)
- VTSR 2—tenant (t) network IP2 (associated through the VTSR-2 config ISO)

Cisco VTS Usernames and Passwords in Cisco NFVI

The following table lists the Cisco VTS usernames and passwords that are deployed after you install Cisco VTS in Cisco NFVI.

Table 19: Cisco VTS Usernames and Passwords in Cisco NFVI

Configuration Location	Value Requirements	Description/Comments
CVIM: openstack-configs/setup_data.yaml VTS_PARAMETERS: VTS_USERNAME VTS_PASSWORD VTS_SITE_UUID The following parameters are optional, only required if VTS_DAY0 is enabled. VTC_SSH_PASSWORD VTC_SSH_USERNAME VTS_SITE_UUID Optional: MANAGED	VTS_USERNAME must be admin. VTS_PASSWORD must match VTC UI login password for the admin user. Password must have a minimum of 8 characters and at least one uppercase letter, one digit, and one special character. VTS_SITE_UUID is unique UUID of VTS SITE controlled by Cisco VIM. The VTS_SITE_UUID must be in a generic UUID format (Unique Pod UUID to indicate which pod the VTS is controlling) The VTC_SSH_PASSWORD and VTC_SSH_USERNAME are ssh credentials to login to VTC VMs. MANAGED is either True or False. By default, it is false. If it is True, VTS deployment mode is managed.	Used by VTF to register with the VTC / VTSR.
VTC ISO config.txt : vts-adminPassword AdministrativeUser AdministrativePassword	Must match the Cisco VIM setup_data.yaml VTC_SSH_PASSWORD parameter. AdministrativeUser must match with setup_data.yml VTC_SSH_USERNAME parameter AdministrativePassword matches with VTC_SSH_PASSWORD parameter.	Configures VTC admin user's initial password. SSH username/password for VTC VM.
VTSR ISO: USERNAME PASSWORD		VTSR VM SSH username/password The VTSR adds this in VTS Inventory > Authorization Group > vtsgroup Device User Name associated with VTC admin user

Modes of TOR Configuration with VTS

Cisco VTS supports two modes of TOR configuration:

- **Unmanaged TOR:** It is the default mode of operation for VTS with Cisco VIM. VTS network inventory is added as “Unmanaged” device instead of actual TOR switches. BGP EVPN ingress replication mode mechanism is used for admin domain, but the port configuration does not push configuration to the TOR switches.
- **Managed TOR:** VTS network inventory is added with actual TOR switches. Control and compute nodes information are added with their corresponding interfaces connected with TOR in the VTS host inventory. BGP EVPN multicast replication mode is used for admin domain, while the port configuration enables multicast Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) snooping and PIM configuration for Tenant VLAN on actual TOR switches.



Note As the storage nodes do not have VTF, the switch ports hanging off the storage nodes are configured statically.

To maintain consistency, add the `tor_info` to the storage nodes in the `setup_data` of the pod. .

Listed below is the snippet of the Multicast configuration push to Cisco Nexus 9000, when port is configured with Tenant VLAN ID 111.

```
interface Vlan111
no shutdown
no ip redirects
ip address 22.22.22.200/24
no ipv6 redirects
ip router ospf 100 area 0.0.0.0
ip pim sparse-mode
ip igmp version 3
ip igmp static-oif 239.0.0.1
hsrp 22
ip 22.22.22.1
vlan configuration 111
ip igmp snooping static-group 239.0.0.1 interface port-channel12
ip igmp snooping static-group 239.0.0.1 interface port-channel13
ip igmp snooping static-group 239.0.0.1 interface port-channel14
```



Note Due to limitation of VTS, Tenant VLAN ID needs to be selected as lowest number in the TOR interface. If not, Multicast configuration will be pushed incorrectly.

The following table lists the configurations required to enable the functionality of TORs “managed” through VTS.

Table 20: Cisco VTS Parameters for TORs managed through VTS

Configuration Location	Value Requirements	Description
CVIMmercury: openstack-configs/setup_data.yaml VTS_PARAMETERS: MANAGED:	MANAGED: Set to True or False. By default, it is False.	MANAGED: Must be configured as True, when VTS deployment mode is managed. It is a day-0 configuration, and cannot be enabled as a reconfigure option.

Configuration Location	Value Requirements	Description
TORSWITCHINFO: CONFIGURE_TORS	CONFIGURE_TORS: False	CONFIGURE_TORS value has to be False to indicate that CVIM is not configuring the TORs; this is a way for VTC to know what switches to access and manage
SWITCHDETAILS:	Hostname, ssh_ip, username, and password of the switches for VTC to manage {switch_a_hostname: ethx/y, switch_b_hostname: ethx/y}	Need minimum switch details to access it.
SERVICES: <SERVER_NAME>: tor_info:		For each server, list the tor_info associated to the server, so that VTC can manage the switch ports. Note that the storage nodes do not have VTF and hence switch ports hanging off the storage nodes are configured statically. To maintain consistency, add the tor_info to the storage nodes in the setup_data of the pod.

From an architecture point of view, the following are configured automatically in VTC Node when Managed TOR mode is selected in setup_data.yaml:

- VTS System Settings and Route reflector are configured in VTC.
- Openstack Virtual Machine Manager is configured.
- Global VNI POOL is configured.
- Multicast pools are created to allocate multicast IP address for Tenant VLAN ID.
- Authentication Group is created for device.
- TOR switches are configured under Network Inventory.
- Admin domain is created with BGP EVPN multicast replication mode for L2 and L3 Gateway.
- TOR switches and VTSR are added to L2 and L3 Gateway in admin domain.
- Controller and Compute Node are added under host inventory with corresponding TOR interfaces.
- All VTFs are registered with VTSRs and appear under Virtual Forwarding Groups.

System Requirements for VTC VM

The following table provides information about the minimum system requirements for the VTC virtual machine:

Requirement	Details
Disk space	48 GB

Requirement	Details
CPU	8
Memory	32 GB
Computing host	Certified with Cisco UCS B-series, Cisco UCS C-series Rack Servers

System Requirements for VTSR VM

The following table gives details about the minimum system requirements for the VTSR virtual machine:



Note

The VTSR VM serves two purposes. It is required to enable VTS High Availability. It also acts as the control plane for the VTF. You need to install VTSR only if you consider enabling High Availability or if you plan to have a VTF in your set up.

Requirement	Details
Disk Space	Primary disk must be 77 GB.
CPUs	14
Memory	48 GB RAM
Computing Host	Certified with Cisco UCS B-series, Cisco UCS C-series Rack Servers

Supported Virtual Machine Managers

You can install Cisco VTS on the following supported versions of Virtual Machine manager (VMM):

Table 21: Openstack Versions

	OpenStack Liberty	OpenStack Newton
On RHEL	12.0.0; 12.0.1; 12.0.2; 12.0.3; 12.0.4; 12.0.5; 12.0.6	14.0.3 On CentOS
On CentOS	12.0.0; 12.0.1; 12.0.2	N/A

Supported Platforms

The following tables provide information about the platforms that Cisco VTS support, and their roles.



Note VTS supports VXLAN overlays using the BGP EVPN control plane.

Role	Platform Supported
Top-of-rack (ToR) leaf switch	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cisco Nexus 9300TX and 9300PX platform switches • Cisco Nexus 9332PQ and 93128TX switches • Cisco Nexus 9200 platform switches • Cisco Nexus 9500 platform switches
Data center spine	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cisco Nexus 9300TX and 9300PX platform switches • Cisco Nexus 9500 platform switches • Cisco Nexus 9200 platform switches
Border leaf	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cisco Nexus 9300TX and 9300PX platform switches • Cisco Nexus 9500 platform switches • Cisco Nexus 9200 platform switches
Data center interconnect (DCI)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services routers • Cisco Nexus 9300 platform switches
Virtual machine manager (VMM)	OpenStack Newton on RHEL versions
Hypervisor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.3 with KVM • Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.5 • CentOS
Virtual forwarders	Cisco Virtual Topology Forwarder (VTF)

The following table lists the software images supported for the different devices.

Table 22: Software Images Supported

Cisco Nexus 93xx	NX OS Release 7.0.3.I7.2 or 9.2(1)
Cisco Nexus 95xx	NX OS Release 7.0.3.I7.2 or 9.2(1)
Cisco ASR 9000	Cisco IOS XR Software Release 6.5.1.

The following table lists the VPC modes supported for the different devices.

Note If Cisco Nexus 9000 series ToR is not configured with vPC related configuration, including peer-link, also known as a multichassis etherChannel trunk (MCT), you must not configure feature vpc on the ToR. This may bring loopback interface used for NVE to admin down state.

Table 23: VPC Modes Supported

Cisco Nexus 93xx	Server VPC
Cisco Nexus 95xx	Server VPC

Installing Cisco VTS in Cisco NFVI Environment

Installing Cisco VTS within Cisco NFVI involves installing the Virtual Topology Controller (VTC) VM. You can install the VTC VM using either the automatic or manual configuration options.

- To install the VTC VM using an ISO file (auto configuration), see [Installing VTC VM - Automatic Configuration Using ISO File, on page 111](#).
- To install the VTC VM using the virt-manager application (manual configuration), see [Installing VTC VM - Manual Configuration Using Virt-Manager, on page 112](#).
- To install the VTC VM using VNC (manual configuration), see [Installing VTC VM - Manual Configuration using VNC, on page 114](#)

Installing VTC VM - Automatic Configuration Using ISO File

To install a VTC VM and enable configuration using an ISO file, create a text file with the VM settings, wrap the text file in an ISO file, and then attach the ISO file to the VM CD drive.

-
- Step 1** Connect to the controller node via SSH, and copy the vtc.qcow2 file to /var/lib/libvirt/images/ folder.
- Step 2** Copy the vtc.sample.xml file to your controller. The [Installing Cisco VTS in Cisco NFVI Environment, on page 111](#) topic provides the file contents.
- Step 3** Create a **config.txt** file containing the following parameters:

```

Hostname=vtc
ManagementIPv4Method=Static
ManagementIPv4Address= <VM's a-net IP address in a.b.c.d form>
ManagementIPv4Netmask= <a-net IP mask in a.b.c.d form>
ManagementIPv4Gateway= <a-net gateway IP address in a.b.c.d form>
UnderlayIPv4Method=Static
UnderlayIPv4Address= <VM's mx-net IP address in a.b.c.d form>
UnderlayIPv4Netmask=<mx-net IP mask in a.b.c.d form>
DNSv4=<DNS server--ie. setup_data.yaml::NETWORKING['domain_name_servers'][0]>
Domain=<domain name--ie. setup_data.yaml::NETWORKING['domain_name']>
NTP=<NTP server--ie. setup_data.yaml::NETWORKING['ntp_servers'][0]>
vts-adminPassword=<password for user 'admin'--setup_data.yaml::VTS_PARAMETERS['VTC_SSH_PASSWORD']>
AdministrativeUser=<VM ssh login user--can be setup_data.yaml::VTS_PARAMETERS['VTC_SSH_USERNAME']>
AdministrativePassword=<VM ssh login user--can be setup_data.yaml::VTS_PARAMETERS['VTC_SSH_PASSWORD']>
ManagementIPv6Method: Unused by NFVI

```

UnderlayIPv6Method: Unused by NFVI

Note *config.txt* file must have a blank line at the end.

Note Before entering the VTS_PASSWORD, review [Cisco VTS Usernames and Passwords in Cisco NFVI](#), on page 105.

Parameter descriptions:

- Hostname—The VM hostname.
- ManagementPv4Method—Whether to use DHCP or static addressing for the Cisco NFVI API network (a-net) interface (eth0).
- ManagementIPv4Address—The api (a) network IPv4 address of the VM (required only for static addressing).
- ManagementIPv4Netmask—The a network IPv4 net mask of the VM (required only for static addressing).
- ManagementIPv4Gateway—The a network API IPv4 gateway of the VM (required only for static addressing).
- UnderlayIPv4Method—Whether to use DHCP or static addressing for the Cisco NFVI management/provisioning (mx) network interface (eth1).
- UnderlayIPv4Address—The mx network IPv4 address of the VM (required only for static addressing).
- UnderlayIPv4Netmask—The mx network IPv4 net mask of the VM (required only for static addressing).
- DNSv4—DNS IPv4 address (required only for static addressing).
- Domain—DNS search domain (required only for static addressing).
- NTPv4—NTP IPv4 address or FQDN (required only for static addressing).
- vts-admin Password—Password for the vts-admin user. This should match the value in `setup_data.yaml::VTS_PARAMETERS['VTS_PASSWORD']` or subsequently changed through the VTC UI to match the value in `setup_data.yaml::VTS_PARAMETERS['VTS_PASSWORD']`
- Administrative User—New administrative user for login using SSH.
- Administrative Password—Sudo password for the administrative user.

Step 4 Use mkisofs to create an ISO file, for example:

```
mkisofs -o config.iso config.txt
```

Step 5 Create the VTC VM using following command:

```
virsh create vtc.sample.xml
```

Installing VTC VM - Manual Configuration Using Virt-Manager

To install the VTC VM configuring it manually using the virt-manager application:

Step 1 Connect to the controller node via SSH, and copy the vtc.qcow2 file to /var/lib/libvirt/images/ folder.

Step 2 Copy the Cisco NFVI vtc.sample.xml file to your controller. Modify it as per your setup. See [Sample Cisco VTS Configurations for Cisco NFVI, on page 125](#) for examples.

Step 3 Create the VTC VM using following command:

```
virsh create vtc.sample.xml
```

Step 4 Run the command:

```
virsh list --all
```

It should display:

```
Id      Name      State
-----
2 VTC running
```

Step 5 Start virt-manager. Run:

```
virt-manager
```

Step 6 After the virt-manager window opens, click the VTC VM to open up the VTC VM console. The console displays an installation wizard that takes you through the initial VTC VM configuration.

Step 7 Enter the following:

Note For items that take multiple values, such as DNS and NTP, each value must be separated by a space.

- VTS Hostname
 - DHCP / Static IP configuration for static IP
 - Management IP address for VTC—This is the Cisco NFVI api (a) network IP address.
 - Management IP Netmask (api network)
 - Management Gateway address (api network)
 - DNS Address—One of the DNS servers in setup_data.yaml::NETWORKING['domain_name_servers']
 - DNS Search domain— setup_data.yaml::NETWORKING['domain_name']
 - Underlay IP address—This is the IP address for Cisco NFVI management/provisioning (mx) network.
 - Underlay IP Netmask (mx network)
 - NTP address—One of the setup_data.yaml::NETWORKING['ntp_servers'] addresses
 - Password change for user vts-admin—Enter the default user vts-admin password. The vts-admin user is used for password recovery and to revisit a configuration screen if you make a mistake or need to change the information. If you log in to the VTC VM using vts-admin username and password again, you get the same dialog to go through the VTC VM setup again. The password must match the value in setup_data.yaml::VTS_PARAMETERS['VTS_PASSWORD'] or subsequently changed through the VTC UI to match the value in setup_data.yaml::VTS_PARAMETERS['VTS_PASSWORD']
- Before entering the VTS_PASSWORD, reviewing [Cisco VTS Usernames and Passwords in Cisco NFVI, on page 105](#) is recommended.
- Administrator User—Enter administrative username and password. This username and password are used to login to the VM via SSH.

- Password for administrator user

VTC VM reboots at this time. Wait for two minutes for the VTC VM to be up. You can ping the IP address given for VTC VM in the setup process to verify whether the VTC VM is up.

Step 8 SSH into VTC VM using the IP address, administrative username/password given in the setup process (not vts-admin user).

Installing VTC VM - Manual Configuration using VNC

If the server where you install VTC is in a remote location with network latency or low bandwidth, you can use VNC to access the VTC VM and manually configure it using the CTC VM graphic console. To do this:

Step 1 Connect to the controller node via SSH, and copy the vtc.qcow2 file to /var/lib/libvirt/images/ folder.

Step 2 Copy the vtc.sample.xml file to your controller. Modify it as per your setup. The sample VTC XML file output is provided in [Sample Cisco VTS Configurations for Cisco NFVI, on page 125](#).

Step 3 Replace the following sections of the vtc.sample.xml file:

```
<graphics type='spice' port='5900' autoport='yes' listen='127.0.0.1'>
  <listen type='address' address='127.0.0.1' />
</graphics>
```

with the following:

```
<graphics type='vnc' port='5900' autoport='yes' listen='0.0.0.0'>
  <listen type='address' address='0.0.0.0' />
</graphics>
```

Note Setting the listen address to 0.0.0.0 allows external clients to connect to the VNC port (5900). You have to make sure that iptables configuration (if any) allows inbound TCP port 5900 connections.

Step 4 Create the VTC VM using following command:

```
virsh create vtc.sample.xml
```

You should now be able to use a VNC client to connect to the VTC VM graphic console and continue the setup.

Step 5 Enter the following:

Note For items that take multiple values, such as DNS and NTP, use a space to separate each value.

- VTS Hostname
- DHCP/Static IP configuration for static IP
- Management IP address for VTC—This is the Cisco NFVI api (a) network IP address.
- Management IP Netmask (api network)
- Management Gateway address (api network)
- DNS Address—One of the DNS servers in setup_data.yaml::NETWORKING['domain_name_servers']
- DNS Search domain--- setup_data.yaml::NETWORKING['domain_name']
- Underlay IP address—This is the IP address for Cisco NFVI management/provisioning (mx) network.

- Underlay IP Netmask (mx network)
- NTP address—One of the `setup_data.yaml::NETWORKING['ntp_servers']` addresses
- Password change for user `vts-admin`—Enter the default user `vts-admin` password. The `vts-admin` user is used for password recovery and to revisit a configuration screen if you make a mistake or need to change the information. If you log into the VTC VM using `vts-admin` username and password again, you get the same dialog to go through the VTC VM setup again. This should match the value in `setup_data.yaml::VTS_PARAMETERS['VTS_PASSWORD']` or subsequently changed through the VTC UI to match the value in `setup_data.yaml::VTS_PARAMETERS['VTS_PASSWORD']`
- Administrator User—Enter administrative username and password. This username and password are used to login to the VM via SSH.
- Password for administrator user.

VTC VM reboots at this time. Wait for two minutes for the VTC VM to come up. You can ping the IP address given for VTC VM in the setup process to verify whether the VTC VM is up.

Step 6 SSH into VTC VM using the IP address, administrative username/password given in the setup process (not `vts-admin` user).

Installing the VTSR VMs

Before you can install Cisco VTS for Cisco NFVI, you must install the VTSR VM and register it to VTS. VTSR VM is the control plane VM. Installing and registering the VTSR VM requires you to complete the following procedures:

- [Creating VTSR VM , on page 115](#)
- [Creating an ISO for IOS VTSR, on page 116](#)

Creating VTSR VM

The VTSR VM is essential to the Virtual VTEP topology. The VTSR VM contains a nested VM so VTSR must enable nesting.

Before you begin

You must complete a VTS VM installation, and the VTC UI initial password must be changed to the password that you enter for Cisco VIM when you install Cisco VIM. This password is set in `setup_data.yaml` or the Cisco VIM Insight. Login to VTC UI and create a site with Unique UUID and EVPN VxLAN Type. Then, update the site UUID in `setup_data.yaml` as `VTS_SITE_UUID`.

Bringing up the KVM-based VTSR VM

-
- Step 1** Create the VTSR VM XML referring the Cisco NFVI sample (VTSR.XML).
- Step 2** Generate an ISO file for the VTSR. See [Creating an ISO for IOS VTSR, on page 116](#) .

Step 3 Create the VM using the XML.

```
virsh create VTSR.xml
```

Creating an ISO for IOS VTSR

To create an ISO file for VTSR:

Step 1 Create the system.cfg file based on the sample below.

Note Verify that the configuration file has no spaces or extra characters.

Note Before you enter the VTS_USERNAME and VTS_PASSWORD, review [Cisco VTS Usernames and Passwords in Cisco NFVI](#), on page 105.

```
# This is a sample VTSR configuration file
# Copyright (c) 2015 cisco Systems

# Protect the generated ISO, as it contains authentication data
# in plain text.

# The following are the common configurations for VTSR
# VTS Registration Information:
# VTS_ADDRESS should be the VTS IP. The value must be either an IP or a mask.
# VTS_ADDRESS is mandatory. If only the V4 version is specified,
# the V4 management interface for the VTSR (NODE1_MGMT_NETWORK_IP_ADDRESS)
# will be used. If the V6 version is specified, the V6 management interface
# for the VTSR (NODE1_MGMT_NETWORK_IPV6_ADDRESS) must be specified and will be used.
VTS_ADDRESS="10.85.88.152"
#VTS_IPV6_ADDRESS="a1::10"
# VTS_REGISTRATION_USERNAME used to login to VTS.
VTS_REGISTRATION_USERNAME="admin"
# VTS_REGISTRATION_PASSWORD is in plaintext.
VTS_REGISTRATION_PASSWORD="Cisco123!"
# VTSR VM Admin user/password
USERNAME="cisco"
PASSWORD="cisco123"

# Mandatory Management-VRF name for VTSR.
VTS_MANAGEMENT_VRF="vtsr-mgmt-vrf"

# VTSR VM Network Configuration for Node 1:
# NETWORK_IP_ADDRESS, NETWORK_IP_NETMASK, and NETWORK_IP_GATEWAY
# are required to complete the setup. Netmask can be in the form of
# "24" or "255.255.255.0"
# The first network interface configured with the VTC VM is used for
# underlay connectivity, while the second interface is used for the management network.
# For both MGMT and UNDERLAY networks, a <net-name>_NETWORK_IP_GATEWAY
# variable is mandatory and used for monitoring purposes.
#
# V6 is only supported on the mgmt network and dual stack is
# not supported. If both are specified, V6 will take priority (and
# requires VTS_IPV6_ADDRESS to be set).
# The *V6* parameters for the mgmt network are optional. Note that if V6 is used for mgmt
# it must be V6 on both nodes. Netmask must be the prefix length for V6.
NODE1_MGMT_NETWORK_IP_ADDRESS="19.1.0.20"
NODE1_MGMT_NETWORK_IP_NETMASK="255.255.255.0"
NODE1_MGMT_NETWORK_IP_GATEWAY="19.1.0.1"
```



```

#NODE1_MGMT_NETWORK_IPV6_ADDRESS="a1::20"
#NODE1_MGMT_NETWORK_IPV6_NETMASK="64"
#NODE1_MGMT_NETWORK_IPV6_GATEWAY="a1::1"
NODE1_UNDERLAY_NETWORK_IP_ADDRESS="19.0.128.20"
NODE1_UNDERLAY_NETWORK_IP_NETMASK="255.255.255.0"
NODE1_UNDERLAY_NETWORK_IP_GATEWAY="19.0.128.1"
# AUX network is optional
#NODE1_AUX_NETWORK_IP_ADDRESS="169.254.20.100"
#NODE1_AUX_NETWORK_IP_NETMASK="255.255.255.0"
#NODE1_AUX_NETWORK_IP_GATEWAY="169.254.20.1"
# XR Hostname
NODE1_XR_HOSTNAME="vtsr01"
# Loopback IP and netmask
NODE1_LOOPBACK_IP_ADDRESS="128.0.0.10"
NODE1_LOOPBACK_IP_NETMASK="255.255.255.255"

# Operational username and password - optional
# These need to be configured to start monit on VTSR

#VTSR_OPER_USERNAME="monit-ro-oper"
# Password needs an encrypted value
# Example : "openssl passwd -1 -salt <salt-string> <password>"
#VTSR_OPER_PASSWORD="$1$cisco$b88M8bkCN2ZpXgEEc2sG9/"

# VTSR monit interval - optional - default is 30 seconds
#VTSR_MONIT_INTERVAL="30"

# VTSR VM Network Configuration for Node 2:
# If there is no HA, the following Node 2 configurations will remain commented and
# will not be used and Node 1 configurations alone will be applied.

# For HA , the following Node 2 configurations has to be uncommented
# VTSR VM Network Configuration for Node 2
# NETWORK_IP_ADDRESS, NETWORK_IP_NETMASK, and NETWORK_IP_GATEWAY
# are required to complete the setup. Netmask can be in the form of
# "24" or "255.255.255.0"
#
# The first network interface configured with the VTC VM is used for
# underlay connectivity, while the second interface is used for the management network.

# For both MGMT and UNDERLAY networks, a <net-name>_NETWORK_IP_GATEWAY
# variable is mandatory and used for monitoring purposes.
#
# V6 is only supported on the mgmt network and dual stack is
# not supported.If both are specified, V6 will take priority (and
# requires VTS_IPV6_ADDRESS to be set).
# The *V6* parameters for the mgmt network are optional. Note that if V6 is used for mgmt
# it must be V6 on both nodes. Netmask must be the prefix length for V6.
#NODE2_MGMT_NETWORK_IP_ADDRESS="19.1.0.21"
#NODE2_MGMT_NETWORK_IP_NETMASK="255.255.255.0"
#NODE2_MGMT_NETWORK_IP_GATEWAY="19.1.0.1"
##NODE2_MGMT_NETWORK_IPV6_ADDRESS="a1::21"
##NODE2_MGMT_NETWORK_IPV6_NETMASK="64"
##NODE2_MGMT_NETWORK_IPV6_GATEWAY="a1::1"
#NODE2_UNDERLAY_NETWORK_IP_ADDRESS="19.0.128.21"
#NODE2_UNDERLAY_NETWORK_IP_NETMASK="255.255.255.0"
#NODE2_UNDERLAY_NETWORK_IP_GATEWAY="19.0.128.1"
# AUX network is optional
# Although Aux network is optional it should be either present in both nodes
# or not present in both nodes.
# It cannot be present on Node1 and not present on Node2 and vice versa
#NODE2_AUX_NETWORK_IP_ADDRESS="179.254.20.200"
#NODE2_AUX_NETWORK_IP_NETMASK="255.255.255.0"
#NODE2_AUX_NETWORK_IP_GATEWAY="179.254.20.1"

```

```
# XR Hostname
#NODE2_XR_HOSTNAME="vtsr02"
# Loopback IP and netmask
#NODE2_LOOPBACK_IP_ADDRESS="130.0.0.1"
#NODE2_LOOPBACK_IP_NETMASK="255.255.255.255"

# VTS site uuid
VTS_SITE_UUID="abcdefab-abcd-abcd-abcd-abcdefabcdef"
```

Step 2 Copy your VTSR system.cfg files to the same path where the script resides. For example:

```
admin:/opt/cisco/package/vts/bin$ ls -l
total 1432
-rwxr-xr-x 1 vts-admin vts-admin 4767 Sep 29 16:40 build_vts_config_iso.sh
-rw-r--r-- 1 root      root      1242 Sep 29 23:54 system.cfg
```

Step 3 Create the ISO file as shown below (you need to log in as root):

```
root:/opt/cisco/package/vts/bin# ./build_vts_config_iso.sh vtsr system.cfg.
Validating input.
Generating ISO File. Done!
```

Step 4 Spawn the VTSR VM with the ISO connected to it.

Step 5 Power on the VM.

In case you spawn a new VTSR VM later, it comes up with VTSR Day Zero configuration and get re-registered with the VTC. Use the **sync-to** option available in the Config Sync feature to synchronize the configuration with the latest VTC configuration. See the *Synchronizing Configuration* section for more information on this feature.

Verifying Cisco VTS Installation in Cisco NFVI

The following procedures provide information about how to verify the Cisco VTS installation in Cisco NFVI.

Verifying VTSR VM Installation

To verify VTSR VM installation:

Before you begin

Ensure the tenant network (t) gateway and management network (mx) gateway are reachable from the VTSR server.

Step 1 Log into the VTSR VM using the VTC VM console.

- If you installed the VTC VM in an RedHat KVM based-OpenStack environment, use virt-manager or VNC console to log into the VM. See [Installing VTC VM - Manual Configuration using VNC, on page 114](#)

Step 2 Ping the Cisco NFVI tenant (t) network gateway IP address.

In case ping fails, verify Cisco NFVI tenant network.

Step 3 Ping the VTC Cisco NFVI management/provisioning (mx) network IP address.

In case ping fails, verify the mx network.

Note You should be able to ping the gateway IP address for both Cisco NFVI mx and t networks, as VTSR registers to the VTC using the VTC mx network IP address.

Verifying VTC VM Installation

To verify VTC VM installation:

-
- Step 1** Log into the VTC VM just created using the VTC VM console.
- If you installed the VTC VM in an RedHat KVM based-OpenStack environment, - telnet 0 <console-port> (The console port is the Telnet port in the VTC.xml file.)
- Step 2** Ping the Cisco NFVI api network gateway.
- If ping fails, verify the VM networking to the Cisco NFVI api network.
- Step 3** For the VTC VM CLI, ping the Cisco NFVI management/provisioning (mx) network gateway.
- If ping fails, verify VM networking to the mx network.
- Note** Underlay network gateway is the switched virtual interface (SVI) created for IOSXRv and VTF on the leaf where the controller is connected.
- Step 4** After a few minutes, verify whether the VTS UI is reachable by typing in the VTS api network IP in the browser.
-

Troubleshooting VTF Registration

If VTF registration issues arise, you can use the following commands to find the VTF registration logs on each Cisco NFVI compute node:

```
[root@devstack-71 neutron]# docker exec -it neutron_vtf_4269 bash
[root@devstack-71 /]# cd /var/log/vpfa
[root@devstack-71 vpfa]# ls
vpfa_err.log  vpfa_med.log  vpfa_server.log          vpfa_server_frequent.log  vpfa_stdout.log

vpfa_freq.log  vpfa_reg.log  vpfa_server_errors.log  vpfa_server_slow.log
[root@devstack-71 vpfa]# tail vpfa_reg.log
2016-06-23 02:47:22,860:INFO:VTF-REG: Sent PATCH {"vtf": {"username": "admin",
"vpp-client-name": "devstack-71", "ip": "34.34.34.5", "binding-host-name": "devstack-71",
"gateway-ip": "34.34.34.1", "local-mac": "00:3a:7d:6a:13:c9"}} to
https://172.18.96.15:8888/api/running/cisco-vts/vtfs/vtf
2016-06-23 02:47:23,050:INFO:VTF-REG-ERR: Failure:400!!!
```

A successful log example is shown below:

```
[root@devstack-71 vpfa]# tail vpfa_reg.log
2016-06-23 15:27:57,338:INFO:AUTH: Successful Login - User: admin
URI:/yang-api/datastore/interfaces Host:IPv4Address(TCP, '34.34.34.5', 21345) Method:GET
2016-06-23 15:28:07,340:INFO:AUTH: Successful Login - User: admin
URI:/yang-api/datastore/interfaces Host:IPv4Address(TCP, '34.34.34.5', 21345) Method:GET
```

If a VTF registration fails, check the following:

- IP network connectivity between the compute nodes and the VTC and VTSR VMs (Cisco NFVI tenant and management/provisioning networks)
- VTS_PARAMETERS—The VTS_USERNAME must be admin.
- The VTC and VTSR must be up and the VTS configurations must be applied. The VTSR must be registered with VTC.
- Check that the VTS UI shows "vtsgroup3" in Inventory->Authorization Groups.
- Check that the VTC Admin Username is admin and Device Username is what was set for XRVR_USERNAME in the VTSR config ISO.

Configuring Cisco VTS and VTSR After Installation

The following steps cover the Cisco VTS configurations you need to provision after installation.

Step 1 If you changed the Cisco VTS username/password when you configured the VTS HA configuration, continue with Step 3. If not, log into the Cisco VTS GUI using the default username/password admin/admin.

Step 2 Change the Cisco VTS password using the UI Change Password tab.

Note Before you enter the Cisco VTS password, review [Cisco VTS Usernames and Passwords in Cisco NFVI](#), on page 105.

Step 3 Log into the VTC VM by running the following command:

```
cd /opt/vts/bin
sudo ./vts-cli.sh -applyTemplate vtsr-underlay-loopback-template

./vts-cli.sh -applyTemplate vtsr-underlay-loopback-template command is applyTemplate and template
name is vtsr-underlay-loopback-template
Enter device name: <hostname of vtsr>
Enter loopback-interface: <loopback interface name>
Enter ipaddress: <loopback interface ip>
Enter netmask: <loopback interface netmask>
```

Similarly configure IGP config in VTSR

Step 4 Log into the VTC VM by running the following command:

```
cd /opt/vts/bin
sudo ./vts-cli.sh -applyTemplate vtsr-underlay-ospf-template

./vts-cli.sh -applyTemplate vtsr-underlay-ospf-template command is applyTemplate and template name
is vtsr-underlay-ospf-template
Enter device name: <hostname of vtsr>
Enter process-name: <ospf process id >
Enter router-id: <ospf router id>
Enter area-address: <ospf area address>
Enter physical-interface: <VTSR interface connected to NFVI t-network>
Enter loopback-interface: <vtsr loopback interface>
Enter default-cost: <ospf default >
```

Installing VTS in an HA Configuration

Complete the following steps to install Cisco VTS in a Layer 2 HA configuration.

- Step 1** Create two VTC VMs. (In the following steps, these are referred to as VTC1 and VTC2.) When you create the VMs, reserve three IP addresses for each Cisco VIM network to which the VTC VM are connected as described in [Overview to Cisco VTS Installation in Cisco NFVI, on page 103](#).
- Step 2** If you changed the initial VTC password in a previous installation step, proceed to Step 4. If not, log into the VTC GUI using the default username/password admin/admin.
- Step 3** Change the VTC password using the UI Change Password tab. See [Cisco VTS Usernames and Passwords in Cisco NFVI, on page 105](#) for information about Cisco VTS usernames and passwords.
- Step 4** Edit the cluster.conf file on VTC1 and VTC2 located in /opt/vts/etc/. Both VTCs must have identical information in the cluster.conf file. Parameters includes:
- vip_public—VIP address used for the Cisco VIM API (a) network.
 - vip_private—VIP address used for VTS on the Cisco VIM management/provisioning (mx) network. Cisco VIM uses VTFs, so this field must be entered. The vip_private field is the VIP for the VTS master private interface
 - master_name—Enter the name of the VTC you want to be the primary one in the HA configuration.
 - master_ip—The master VTC IP address used for the Cisco NFVI API network.
 - slave_name—Enter the name of the VTC you want to be the secondary one in the HA configuration.
 - slave_ip—The secondary VTC IP address used for the Cisco NFVI API network.
 - external_ip—The external IP address. This comes from the Cisco VIM setup_data.yaml file after you complete the Cisco VIM installation and the [Cisco VIM Configurations for Cisco VTS Installation , on page 164](#) procedure.

```
###Virtual Ip of VTC Master on the public interface. Must fill in at least 1
vip_public=
vip_public_ipv6=

###VTC1 Information. Must fill in at least 1 ip address
master_name=
master_ip=
master_ipv6=

###VTC2 Information. Must fill in at least 1 ip address
slave_name=
slave_ip=
slave_ipv6=

###In the event that a network failure occurs evenly between the two routers, the cluster needs an
outside ip to determine where the failure lies
###This can be any external ip such as your vmm ip or a dns but it is recommended to be a stable ip
within your environment
###Must fill in at least 1 ip address
external_ip=
external_ipv6=

#####
### Non-mandatory fields ###
#####
```

```

###If you intend to use a virtual topology forwarder (VTF) in your environment, please fill in the
vip for the underlay as well as the underlay gateway. Otherwise leave blank.
###Virtual Ip of VTC Master on the private interface. You can fill in ipv4 configuration, ipv6, or
both if you use both
vip_private=
private_gateway=

vip_private_ipv6=
private_gateway_ipv6=

###If you have your vtc's in different subnets, xrvr needs to be configured to route traffic and the
below section needs to be filled in
###If you have your vtc's on the same subnet, the below section has be skipped

###Name of your vrf. Example: VTS_VIP
vrf_name=

###Ip of your first Xrvr. Example: 11.1.1.5
xrvr1_mgmt_ip=

###List of neighbors for xrvr1, separated by comma. Example: 11.1.1.1,11.1.1.2
xrvr1_bgp_neighbors=
xrvr1_bgp_neighbors_ipv6=

###Ip of your second Xrvr. Example: 12.1.1.5
xrvr2_mgmt_ip=

###List of neighbors for xrvr2, separated by comma. Example: 12.1.1.1,12.1.1.2
xrvr2_bgp_neighbors=
xrvr2_bgp_neighbors_ipv6=

###Username for Xrvr
xrvr_user=

###Xrvr ASN information
remote_ASN=
local_ASN=

###Xrvr BGP information
bgp_keepalive=
bgp_hold=

###Update source for Xrvr1 (i.e. loopback)
xrvr1_update_source=

###Update source for Xrvr2 (i.e. loopback)
xrvr2_update_source=

###Router BGP Id for Xrvr1
xrvr1_router_id=

###Router BGP Id for Xrvr2
xrvr2_router_id=

###XRVR1 name
xrvr1_name=

###XRVR2 name
xrvr2_name=

###If you plan on having your VTC's on different subnets and intend to use a virtual topology forwarder
(VTF) in your environment,
### please fill out the following fields. Otherwise, leave blank

```

```

###List of neighbors for xrvr1, separated by comma. Example: 2.2.2.2,2.2.2.3
xrvr1_underlay_neighbors=
xrvr1_underlay_neighbors_ipv6=

###List of neighbors for xrvr2, separated by comma. Example: 3.3.3.2,3.3.3.3
xrvr2_underlay_neighbors=
xrvr2_underlay_neighbors_ipv6=

###Directly connected Tor information for Xrvr1
xrvr1_directly_connected_device_ip=
xrvr1_directly_connected_device_ipv6=
xrvr1_directly_connected_device_user=
xrvr1_directly_connected_device_neighbors=
xrvr1_directly_connected_device_neighbors_ipv6=
xrvr1_directly_connected_ospf=
xrvr1_directly_connected_router_id=
xrvr1_directly_connected_update_source=

###Directly connected Tor information for Xrvr2
xrvr2_directly_connected_device_ip=
xrvr2_directly_connected_device_user=
xrvr2_directly_connected_device_neighbors=
xrvr2_directly_connected_device_neighbors_ipv6=
xrvr2_directly_connected_ospf=
xrvr2_directly_connected_router_id=
xrvr2_directly_connected_update_source=

###VPC Peer information if any. Otherwise leave blank
xrvr1_vpc_peer_ip=
xrvr1_vpc_peer_user=
xrvr1_vpc_peer_ospf=
xrvr1_vpc_peer_router_id=
xrvr1_vpc_peer_update_source=

xrvr2_vpc_peer_ip=
xrvr2_vpc_peer_user=
xrvr2_vpc_peer_ospf=
xrvr2_vpc_peer_router_id=
xrvr2_vpc_peer_update_source=

###VTC Underlay Addresses
vtc1_underlay=
vtc2_underlay=
vtc1_underlay_ipv6=
vtc2_underlay_ipv6=

##Gateway of secondary L3 underlay
vtc2_private_gateway=
vtc2_private_gateway_ipv6=

```

Step 5

Execute the cluster installer script, `cluster_install.sh`, located in `/opt/vts/bin/` on VTC1 and VTC2. Do not run the script until have completed Steps 1-5.

```

admin@vtc1:/opt/vts/bin$ sudo ./cluster_install.sh
[sudo] password for admin:
Change made to ncs.conf file.
Need to restart ncs
Created symlink from /etc/systemd/system/multi-user.target.wants/pacemaker.service to
/lib/systemd/system/pacemaker.service.
Created symlink from /etc/systemd/system/multi-user.target.wants/corosync.service to
/lib/systemd/system/corosync.service.
Please run cluster_install.sh on vtc2.waits until finished Both nodes are online.

```

```
Configuring master Configuring Pacemaker resources
Master node configuration finished
HA cluster is installed
```

Note In order for HA to run, the `cluster_install.sh` script updates `/etc/hosts` with the VTC information. If run on the node you specified as master, it completes the basic cluster setup, then wait for the slave to complete. Once the slave is finished, the master completes the remainder of the setup.

When the `cluster_install` script is finished on the master, you can see both the public and private vip using 'ip addr'. If you use VTFs, now that the VIP is up, both VTSRs completes their auto-registration.

Step 6 Verify the HA Status:

```
admin@vtc1:/opt/cisco/package/vtc/bin$ sudo crm status
Last updated: Wed May 4 00:00:28 2016
Last change: Wed May 4 00:00:10 2016 via crm_attribute on vtc2
Stack: corosync
Current DC: vtc2 (739533872) - partition with quorum
Version: 1.1.10-42f2063
2 Nodes configured
4 Resources configured

Online: [ vtc1 vtc2 ]

ClusterIP (ocf::heartbeat:IPaddr2): Started vtc1
Master/Slave Set: ms_vtc_ha [vtc_ha]
Masters: [ vtc1 ]
Slaves: [ vtc2 ]
ClusterIP2 (ocf::heartbeat:IPaddr2): Started vtc1

admin@vtc1:/opt/cisco/package/vtc/bin$ sudo ip addr
1: lo: <LOOPBACK,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 65536 qdisc noqueue state UNKNOWN group default
    link/loopback 00:00:00:00:00:00 brd 00:00:00:00:00:00
    inet 127.0.0.1/8 scope host lo
        valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
    inet6 ::1/128 scope host
        valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
2: eth0: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast state UP group default qlen 1000
    link/ether 52:54:00:00:bd:0f brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
    inet 11.1.1.4/24 brd 11.1.1.255 scope global eth0
        valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
    inet 11.1.1.2/32 brd 11.1.1.2 scope global eth0
        valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
    inet6 2001:420:10e:2010:5054:ff:fe00:bd0f/64 scope global dynamic
        valid_lft 2591955sec preferred_lft 604755sec
    inet6 fe80::5054:ff:fe00:bd0f/64 scope link
        valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
3: eth1: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast state UP group default qlen 1000
    link/ether 52:54:00:4c:11:13 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
    inet 15.15.15.4/24 brd 11.1.1.255 scope global eth1
        valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
    inet 15.15.15.20/32 brd 11.1.1.20 scope global eth1
```

Completing VTSR HA Configuration

Complete the following steps to set up the VTSR HA configuration:

Before you begin

You must complete a VTS VM installation and change the VTC UI initial password to the password that you enter for Cisco VIM when you install Cisco VIM. This password is set in `setup_data.yaml` or the Cisco VIM Insight.

Login to VTC UI and create a site with Unique UUID and EVPN VxLAN Type. Update this UUID as `VTS_SITE_UUID` in `setup_data.yaml`.

Ensure the tenant network (t) gateway and management network (mx) gateway are reachable from the VTSR server.

Power on the 2 VTSR VM 's as per the VTSR install step. The VTSR VM comes up in active/active HA mode.

Uninstalling VTC HA

To move VTC back to it's original pre-HA state, run the following script on both the active and standby nodes.

```
sudo /opt/vts/bin/cluster_uninstall.sh
```

Sample Cisco VTS Configurations for Cisco NFVI

Sample VTC VM libvirt Domain Configuration

```
<domain type='kvm' id='1332'>
  <name>VTC-release2.1</name>
  <uuid>5789b2bb-df35-4154-ald3-e38cefc856a3</uuid>
  <memory unit='KiB'>32389120</memory>
  <currentMemory unit='KiB'>32388608</currentMemory>
  <vcpu placement='static'>8</vcpu>
  <resource>
    <partition>/machine</partition>
  </resource>
  <os>
    <type arch='x86_64' machine='pc-i440fx-rhel7.0.0'>hvm</type>
    <boot dev='hd'>/>
  </os>
  <features>
    <acpi/>
    <apic/>
    <pae/>
  </features>
  <cpu mode='custom' match='exact'>
    <model fallback='allow'>Westmere</model>
    <feature policy='require' name='vmx'>/>
  </cpu>
  <clock offset='utc'>/>
  <on_poweroff>destroy</on_poweroff>
  <on_reboot>restart</on_reboot>
  <on_crash>restart</on_crash>
  <devices>
    <emulator>/usr/libexec/qemu-kvm</emulator>
    <disk type='file' device='disk'>
      <driver name='qemu' type='qcow2' cache='none'>/>
      <source file='/home/cisco/VTS2.1/vtc.qcow2'>/>
      <target dev='vda' bus='virtio'>/>
    </disk>
  </devices>
</domain>
```

```

    <alias name='virtio-disk0'>
    <address type='pci' domain='0x0000' bus='0x00' slot='0x06' function='0x0'>
</disk>
<controller type='usb' index='0'>
    <alias name='usb0'>
    <address type='pci' domain='0x0000' bus='0x00' slot='0x01' function='0x2'>
</controller>
<controller type='pci' index='0' model='pci-root'>
    <alias name='pci.0'>
</controller>
<controller type='virtio-serial' index='0'>
    <alias name='virtio-serial0'>
    <address type='pci' domain='0x0000' bus='0x00' slot='0x05' function='0x0'>
</controller>
<interface type='bridge'>
    <mac address='52:54:00:5b:12:3a'>
    <source bridge='br-ex'>
    <virtualport type='openvswitch'>
        <parameters interfaceid='263c1aa6-8f7d-46f0-b0a3-bdbdad40fe41'>
    </virtualport>
    <target dev='vnet0'>
    <model type='virtio'>
    <alias name='net0'>
    <address type='pci' domain='0x0000' bus='0x00' slot='0x03' function='0x0'>
</interface>
<interface type='bridge'>
    <mac address='52:54:00:8d:75:75'>
    <source bridge='br-control'>
    <virtualport type='openvswitch'>
        <parameters interfaceid='d0b0020d-7898-419e-93c8-15dd7a08eebd'>
    </virtualport>
    <target dev='vnet1'>
    <model type='virtio'>
    <alias name='net1'>
    <address type='pci' domain='0x0000' bus='0x00' slot='0x0b' function='0x0'>
</interface>
<serial type='tcp'>
    <source mode='bind' host='127.0.0.1' service='4888'>
    <protocol type='telnet'>
    <target port='0'>
    <alias name='serial0'>
</serial>
<console type='tcp'>
    <source mode='bind' host='127.0.0.1' service='4888'>
    <protocol type='telnet'>
    <target type='serial' port='0'>
    <alias name='serial0'>
</console>
<channel type='spicevmc'>
    <target type='virtio' name='com.redhat.spice.0'>
    <alias name='channel0'>
    <address type='virtio-serial' controller='0' bus='0' port='1'>
</channel>
<input type='mouse' bus='ps2'>
<graphics type='spice' port='5900' autoport='yes' listen='127.0.0.1'>
    <listen type='address' address='127.0.0.1'>
</graphics>
<sound model='ich6'>
    <alias name='sound0'>
    <address type='pci' domain='0x0000' bus='0x00' slot='0x04' function='0x0'>
</sound>
<video>
    <model type='qxl' ram='65536' vram='65536' heads='1'>
    <alias name='video0'>

```

```

        <address type='pci' domain='0x0000' bus='0x00' slot='0x02' function='0x0' />
    </video>
    <memballoon model='virtio'>
        <alias name='balloon0' />
        <address type='pci' domain='0x0000' bus='0x00' slot='0x07' function='0x0' />
    </memballoon>
</devices>
<seclabel type='dynamic' model='selinux' relabel='yes'>
    <label>system_u:system_r:svirt_t:s0:c26,c784</label>
    <imagelabel>system_u:object_r:svirt_image_t:s0:c26,c784</imagelabel>
</seclabel>
</domain>

```

Sample VTSR VM libvirt Domain Configuration

```

<domain type='kvm' id='20'>
    <name>SAMPLE-VTSR-1</name>
    <memory unit='GiB'>48</memory>
    <cpu mode='host-passthrough' />
    <vcpu placement='static'>14</vcpu>
    <resource>
        <partition>/machine</partition>
    </resource>

    <os>
        <type arch='x86_64' machine='pc-i440fx-rhel7.0.0'>hvm</type>
        <boot dev='hd' />
        <boot dev='cdrom' />
    </os>
    <features>
        <acpi />
        <apic />
        <pae />
    </features>
    <clock offset='localtime' />
    <on_poweroff>destroy</on_poweroff>
    <on_reboot>restart</on_reboot>
    <on_crash>restart</on_crash>
    <devices>
        <emulator>/usr/libexec/qemu-kvm</emulator>

        <disk type='file' device='cdrom'>
            <driver name='qemu' />
            <source file='/home/admin/VTS20/images/vtsr_node1_cfg.iso' />
            <target dev='hda' bus='ide' />
            <readonly />
        </disk>

        <disk type='file' device='disk'>
            <driver name='qemu' type='qcow2' />
            <source file='/home/admin/VTS20/images/vtsr.qcow2' />
            <target dev='vda' bus='virtio' />
            <alias name='virtio-disk0' />
            <address type='pci' domain='0x0000' bus='0x00' slot='0x09' function='0x0' />
        </disk>

        <controller type='usb' index='0'>
            <alias name='usb0' />
            <address type='pci' domain='0x0000' bus='0x00' slot='0x01' function='0x2' />
        </controller>
        <controller type='ide' index='0'>
            <alias name='ide0' />
            <address type='pci' domain='0x0000' bus='0x00' slot='0x01' function='0x1' />
        </controller>
        <controller type='pci' index='0' model='pci-root'>

```

```

    <alias name='pci.0' />
  </controller>

  <interface type='bridge'>
    <source bridge='br-ex' />
    <virtualport type='openvswitch'>
      <parameters interfaceid='4ffa64df-0d57-4d63-b85c-78b17fcac60a' />
    </virtualport>
    <target dev='vtsr-dummy-mgmt' />
    <model type='virtio' />
    <alias name='vnet1' />
    <address type='pci' domain='0x0000' bus='0x00' slot='0x02' function='0x0' />
  </interface>

  <interface type='bridge'>
    <source bridge='br-inst' />
    <virtualport type='openvswitch'>
      <parameters interfaceid='4ffa64df-0d67-4d63-b85c-68b17fcac60a' />
    </virtualport>
    <target dev='vtsr-dummy-2' />
    <model type='virtio' />
    <alias name='vnet1' />
    <address type='pci' domain='0x0000' bus='0x00' slot='0x03' function='0x0' />
  </interface>

  <interface type='bridge'>
    <source bridge='br-inst' />
    <virtualport type='openvswitch'>
      <parameters interfaceid='4ffa64df-0f47-4d63-b85c-68b17fcac70a' />
    </virtualport>
    <target dev='vtsr-dummy-3' />
    <model type='virtio' />
    <alias name='vnet1' />
    <address type='pci' domain='0x0000' bus='0x00' slot='0x04' function='0x0' />
  </interface>

  <interface type='bridge'>
    <source bridge='br-inst' />
    <virtualport type='openvswitch'>
      <parameters interfaceid='4ffa64df-0d47-4d63-b85c-58b17fcac60a' />
    </virtualport>
    <vlan>
      <tag id='800' />
    </vlan>
    <target dev='vtsr-gig-0' />
    <model type='virtio' />
    <alias name='vnet1' />
    <address type='pci' domain='0x0000' bus='0x00' slot='0x05' function='0x0' />
  </interface>

  <interface type='bridge'>
    <source bridge='br-ex' />
    <virtualport type='openvswitch'>
      <parameters interfaceid='3ffa64df-0d47-4d63-b85c-58b17fcac60a' />
    </virtualport>
    <target dev='vtsr-gig-1' />
    <model type='virtio' />
    <alias name='vnet1' />
    <address type='pci' domain='0x0000' bus='0x00' slot='0x06' function='0x0' />
  </interface>

  <interface type='bridge'>

```

```
<source bridge='br-inst'/>
<virtualport type='openvswitch'>
  <parameters interfaceid='a2f3e85a-4de3-4ca9-b3df-3277136c4054'/>
</virtualport>
<vlan>
  <tag id='800'/>
</vlan>
<target dev='vtsr-gig-2'/>
<model type='virtio'/>
<alias name='vnet3'/>
<address type='pci' domain='0x0000' bus='0x00' slot='0x07' function='0x0'/>
</interface>

<serial type='pty'>
  <source path='/dev/pts/0'/>
  <target port='0'/>
  <alias name='serial0'/>
</serial>
<console type='pty' tty='/dev/pts/0'>
  <source path='/dev/pts/0'/>
  <target type='serial' port='0'/>
  <alias name='serial0'/>
</console>
<input type='tablet' bus='usb'>
  <alias name='input0'/>
</input>
<input type='mouse' bus='ps2'/>
<graphics type='vnc' port='5900' autoport='yes' listen='0.0.0.0' keymap='en-us'>
  <listen type='address' address='0.0.0.0'/>
</graphics>
<video>
  <model type='cirrus' vram='9216' heads='1'/>
  <alias name='video0'/>
  <address type='pci' domain='0x0000' bus='0x00' slot='0x08' function='0x0'/>
</video>
<memballoon model='virtio'>
  <alias name='balloon0'/>
  <address type='pci' domain='0x0000' bus='0x00' slot='0x0a' function='0x0'/>
</memballoon>
</devices>
</domain>
```




CHAPTER 6

Installing Cisco VIM

The following topics tell you how to configure and install Cisco VIM:

- [Cisco VIM Installation Overview, on page 131](#)
- [Installing Cisco VIM, on page 132](#)
- [Cisco VIM Client Details, on page 134](#)
- [Cisco VIM Configuration Overview, on page 137](#)

Cisco VIM Installation Overview

Before you can install Cisco Virtual Infrastructure Manager, complete the procedures in *Preparing for Cisco NFVI Installation*. If your management node does not have Internet access, complete the *Preparing to Install Cisco NFVI on Management Nodes Without Internet Access* procedure. The Cisco VIM installation procedure provides two methods for downloading and installing the Cisco VIM installation files, from USB stick prepared for installation, or from the Internet.

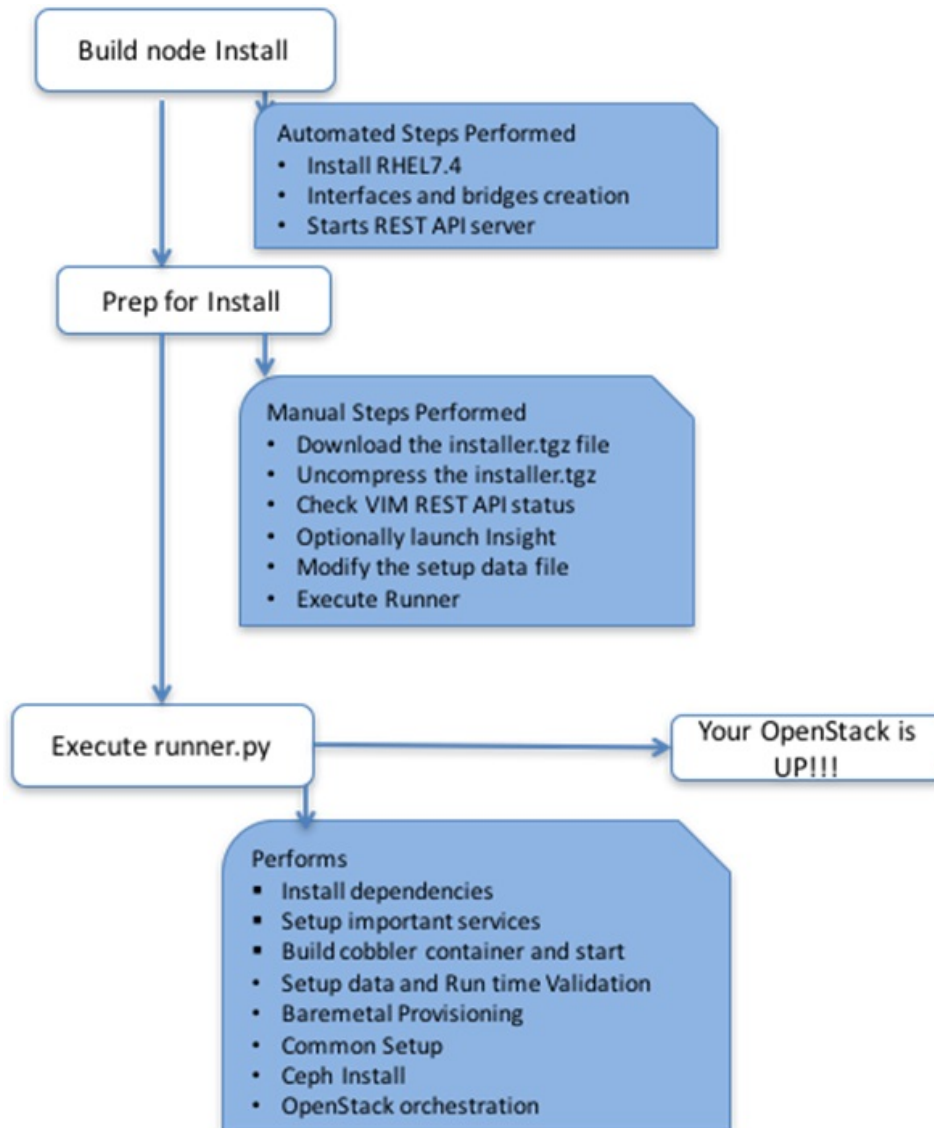
Completing these procedures ensures the Cisco NFVI network infrastructure is set up before the Cisco VIM installation. The bootstrap script is then kicked off, which downloads installer repository, installs Docker and dependencies and starts installer web service,

The Cisco VIM installer can then be launched. It validates the testbed configuration file (`setup_data.yaml`), creates new vNICs on the controller, compute, and dedicated storage nodes based on the configuration provided in the `setup_data.yaml` file. This is followed by the PXeboot Execution Environment (PXE) boot of RHEL onto the target nodes (control, compute and storage) through the Cobbler server set up on the management node. After the installation, the Cisco VIM installer performs common steps across all the Cisco NFVI nodes.

Next, Ceph related packages required for managing the cluster and creating OSD and monitor nodes are installed on the control and storage nodes. By default, the minimum three Ceph monitor nodes are installed at the host level on the control nodes. These serve as management nodes and have the administration keyring. Ceph configurations, such as `ceph.conf` and Ceph client keyrings files, are stored under `/etc/ceph` on each controller. Each Ceph storage node associates an Object Storage Daemon (OSD) to a physical hard drive with a write journal on a separate SSD to support small block random I/O.

The following illustration provides an overview to the Cisco VIM installation.

Figure 38: Cisco VIM Installation Flow



If you have Cisco Unified Management, complete only part of the Cisco VIM installation procedure and proceed to the [Installing Cisco VIM Insight](#) on page procedure followed by [Installing Cisco VIM through Cisco VIM Unified Management](#) to complete the configuration and setup of Cisco VIM using the Cisco VIM Insight. If you do not have Cisco VIM UM, configure Cisco VIM by editing the `data_setup.yaml` as described in the Cisco VIM installation.

Installing Cisco VIM

This procedure allows you to install the Cisco VIM on a Cisco NFVI management node:

Before you begin

- You need to get Cisco NFVI installation file download site credentials from your Cisco account representative.
- For management nodes with no Internet access, you need a USB stick containing the Cisco NFVI installation files. To prepare the USB stick, see [Preparing to Install Cisco NFVI on Management Nodes Without Internet Access, on page 71](#)
- The private networks 192.168.1.0/24 and 192.168.2.0/24 are internally reserved for testing the cloud from a control and data plane point of view. Cisco recommends that you do not use these reserved networks while preparing network layouts.
- You need to provide a valid certificate signed by a trusted certificate authority, for the Cisco VIM deployment. It needs to be a server certificate with a common name matching the IP address and DNS name specified in the setup data file under "external_lb_vip_address" and "external_lb_vip_fqdn". To ensure security, use only the valid certificate signed by a trusted certificate authority in a production environment. For details on generating self-signed certificate, see [Setting Up Cisco VIM OpenStack Configurations, on page 155](#)

- Step 1** If your management node does not have Internet access, use the prepared USB stick and complete the following steps:
- a) Insert the USB stick into the management node drive.
 - b) Run the import_artifacts.sh script to copy all artifacts onto the management node, for example:

```
cd ~/installer-<tag_id>/tools
```

```
./import_artifacts.sh
```

All the installation artifacts are copied to /var/cisco/artifacts/ on the management node

- Step 2** If you are installing Cisco VIM Insight, navigate to [Installing Cisco VIM Unified Management](#) and complete the Cisco VIM Insight installation.

If you are not installing Cisco VIM Insight, complete the following steps.

- Step 3** Change to the installer directory by running the following command:

```
cd ~/installer-<tag_id>
```

- Step 4** Create a dir (for example, ~/Save/) to contain a copy of the setup_data.yaml file, the file that configures the Cisco NFVI for your particular implementation.

- Step 5** Change to the openstack-configs directory and copy the example Cisco VIM setup_data.yaml file into the directory you just created:

```
cd openstack-configs/
cp setup_data.yaml.<C_or_B>_Series_EXAMPLE setup_data.yaml
~/Save/setup_data.yaml
```

Note Only the CPU and MEM allocation ratio needs to be changed for the target pod. Update the following to your target value:

NOVA_RAM_ALLOCATION_RATIO: 1.5 # range of 1.0 to 4.0

NOVA_CPU_ALLOCATION_RATIO: 16.0 # range of 1.0 to 16.0

Step 6 With a yaml editor, modify the copied example setup_data.yaml file as the data setup file for your implementation. This includes both Cisco NFVI data and OpenStack parameters.

Step 7 If you intend to run the cloud over TLS, see [Setting Up Cisco VIM OpenStack Configurations, on page 155](#) for TLS certificate generation.

Step 8 Run the installation:

```
ciscovim --setupfile ~/Save/setup_data.yaml run
```

After the installation is complete, you can view the installation logs at /var/log/mercury.

Cisco VIM Client Details

Cisco VIM combines the CLI and API so that you can use the CLI or API installer transparently.



Note

For a complete list of Cisco VIM REST API commands, see the *Cisco NFVI Administrator Guide*.

Before you use the Cisco VIM CLI, check that the API server is up and pointing to the right installer directory. You can execute the following command to validate the state of the API server and the installer directory it is referencing:

```
# cd installer-<tagid>/tools
#./restapi.py -a status
Status of the REST API Server: active (running) since Thu 2016-08-18 09:15:39 UTC; 9h ago
REST API launch directory: /root/installer-<tagid>/
```

Verify the server status is active and the restapi launch directory is the same the directory from where the installation is launched. If the installer directory, or the REST API state is not correct, go to the target installer directory and execute the following:

```
# cd new-installer-<tagid>/tools
#./restapi.py -a setup
```

```
Check if the REST API server is running from the correct target directory
#./restapi.py -a status
Status of the REST API Server: active (running) since Thu 2016-08-18 09:15:39 UTC; 9h ago
REST API launch directory: /root/new-installer-<tagid>/
```

The REST API tool also provides the options to restart, tear down and reset password for the REST API server as listed:

```
# ./restapi.py --h
```

```
usage: restapi.py [-h] --action ACTION [--yes] [--verbose]
```

REST API setup helper

optional arguments:

```
-h, --help            show this help message and exit
--action ACTION, -a ACTION
                        setup - Install and Start the REST API server.
                        teardown - Stop and Uninstall the REST API server.
                        restart - Restart the REST API server.
                        regenerate-password - Regenerate the password for REST API server.
```

```

reconfigure-tls - Reconfigure SSL certificates and key.
upgrade - Upgrade to new workspace.
reset-password - Reset the REST API password with user given
password.
status - Check the status of the REST API server.
--yes, -y      Skip the dialog. Yes to the action.
--verbose, -v  Perform the action in verbose mode.

```

If the REST API server is not running, executing **ciscovim** shows the following error message:

```
# ciscovim --setupfile ~/Save/<setup_data.yaml> run
```

If the installer directory, or the REST API state is not correct or it is pointing to an incorrect REST API launch directory, go to the installer-<tagid>/tools dir and execute:

```
# ./restapi.py --action setup
```

To confirm that the Rest API server state and launch directory is correct, execute:

```
# ./restapi.py --action status
```

If you ran the REST API recovery step on an existing pod, run the following command to ensure that the REST API server continues to manage the existing pod:

```
# ciscovim --setup_file <setup_data_file_path> --perform 7 -y
```

For an overview to the commands you can execute from the CLI, enter the following command:

```

ciscovim --help
usage: ciscovim [--setupfile <setupdata_file>] <subcommand> ...

Command-line interface to the Cisco Virtualized manager

Positional arguments:
  <subcommand>
    run                                Perform/terminate an install operation
    install-status                     Status of installation of the Openstack cloud
    list-steps                         List steps
    add-computes                       Add compute-nodes to the Openstack cloud
    add-storage                        Add a storage-node to the Openstack cloud
    list-nodes                         List the nodes in the Openstack cloud
    remove-computes                    Remove compute-nodes from the Openstack cloud
    remove-storage                     Remove a storage-node from the Openstack cloud
    replace-controller                 Replace a controller in the Openstack cloud
    list-openstack-configs             List of Openstack configs that can be changed
                                       using reconfigure
    list-password-keys                 List of password keys that can be changed
                                       using reconfigure
    reconfigure                        Reconfigure the Openstack cloud
    cluster-recovery                   Recover the Openstack cluster after a network
                                       partition or power outage
    mgmtnode-health                    Show health of the Management node
    commit                             Commit an update
    rollback                           Rollback an update
    update                             Update the Openstack cloud
    update-status                       Status of the update operation
    upgrade                            Upgrade the Openstack cloud
    check-fernet-keys                  Check whether the fernet keys are successfully
                                       synchronized across keystone nodes
    nfvbench                           Launch NFVBench Flows
    nfvimon                            NFVI Monitoring / Zenoss management operations

```

```

period-rotate-fernet-keys  Set the frequency of fernet keys rotation on
                           keystone
resync-fernet-keys         Resynchronize the fernet keys across all the
                           keystone nodes
rotate-fernet-keys         Trigger rotation of the fernet keys on
                           keystone
client-version             Show Virtualized Infrastructure Manager
                           Version
version                   Show Virtualized Infrastructure Manager
                           Version
help                      Display help about this program or one of its
                           subcommands.

```

Optional arguments:
 --setupfile <setupdata_file>

See "ciscovim help COMMAND" for help on a specific command.

To look at the help for a sub-command (e.g. run) execute the following:

```

# ciscovim help run
usage: ciscovim run [--join] [--perform <perform>] [--skip <skip>] [-y] Perform a install
operation
Optional arguments:
--join Join the installation process
--perform <perform> Perform the following steps.
--skip <skip> Skip the following steps.
-y, --yes Yes option to skip steps without prompt [root@MercRegTB1 installer]#
You can also run the installer in multiple smaller steps. To understand the steps involved
during installation
execute the following command:
# ciscovim list-steps
Virtualized Infrastructure Manager:
=====
+-----+-----+
| Operations          | Operation ID |
+-----+-----+
| INPUT_VALIDATION    | 1            |
| MGMTNODE_ORCHESTRATION | 2            |
| VALIDATION          | 3            |
| BAREMETAL           | 4            |
| COMMONSETUP         | 5            |
| CEPH                | 6            |
| ORCHESTRATION        | 7            |
| VMTP                | 8            |
+-----+-----+

```

To execute the installer in steps, include specific steps from above. For example:

```
$ ciscovim run --perform 1,3 -y
```

Similarly, you can execute the installation using the skip option, where you explicitly indicate which options to skip. For example

```
$ ciscovim run --skip 1,3 -y
```



Note

When using the step-by-step installation, keep a track of what steps are already completed, or unpredictable results might occur.

While the install time varies from pod to pod, typical installation times through the Internet for a UCS C-series with three controller, nine compute, and three storage are listed in the following table.

Table 24:

Operation ID	Operation	Estimated Time
1	Input validation	6 minutes
2	Management node orchestration	40 minutes
3	Run time Validation	30 seconds
4	Bare metal	60 minutes
5	Host setup	10 minutes
6	Ceph	5 minutes
7	Orchestration	25 minutes
8	VMTP (external and provider networks)	14 minutes

Cisco VIM Configuration Overview

The following topics provide a list of Cisco NFVI configurations you must enter in `setup_data.yaml` with a yaml editor. These configurations has to be performed prior to running the Cisco VIM installation. If you are installing Cisco Insight, you have to complete the Cisco VIM data and OpenStack configurations using VIM Insight as described in [Installing Cisco VIM through Cisco VIM Unified Management](#) .

Configuring ToR Automatically

Cisco VIM, provides a complete automation of the cloud deployment. Cisco VIM, of this feature is to automate day-0 configuration of N9xxx series Top of Rack(ToR) switches. The feature is optional and only applies to Pods that are running without ACI. For ToR switch details related to ACI, refer to the section, *Enabling ACI in Cisco VIM* . Purpose is to automate Power-On Auto Provisioning (post-POAP) configuration on ToR offering of Cisco VIM, constitutes of one or more pair of identical Cisco N9300 series switches. The day-0 ToR automation configures the interfaces that are connected to the management (br_mgmt), control, compute, and storage nodes of the pod. In addition, it configures the VPC peer link interfaces for ToR pairs. The automation handles both B and C-series pods. The automation includes configuration of the edge ports in the leaf switches off which the hosts hang-out and the VPC peer link between the switches. Auto-Configuration feature does not include the configuration of the spine switches, and the connectivity between the leaf and the spine; that is the upstream link of the spine switches that carry the external VLAN connectivity.

As the feature is a post-POAP automation provisioning, the management interface, vrf, and admin user have to be pre-provisioned on each of the ToR switch. Also, ssh has to be enabled in each ToRs. The recommended N9K switch software versions are 7.0(3)I4(6) and 7.0(3)I6(1). Bootstrapping the ToR image is still a manual process. Installer API interface (br_api) on the management node have to be up and running, and the ssh to the management node through SSH must be working. You can access each of the ToRs through its management interface from the Cisco VIM management node using SSH.

Setting Up the Cisco VIM Data Configurations

The Cisco VIM configuration file, `setup_data.yaml`, installs and configures the VIM deployment. When creating this file, take extreme care. Any change to this configuration after deployment, with the exception (example: NFVIMON, of adding and removing nodes and so on) causes a stack redeployment. Pay particular attention to the pod networking layout plan configured in `setup_data.yaml` because any future changes to it requires the pod to be reinstalled.

If your configurations are correct, the installation goes smoothly. Cisco recommends using a YAML editor on Linux (PyCharm, Komodo or vi/vim with YAML plugin) to edit this file. Items shown in brown must be changed to your specific testbed. Do not copy the examples shown below into your YAML file, because your browser might render the characters differently. If you are using the Cisco VIM installer, you cannot update the OpenStack config files (for example, `ml2_conf.ini`, and other files) directly. All OpenStack configurations must be in the `setup_data.yaml` file. This ensures that the installer has a view of the OpenStack deployment, so that it can reliably perform later software updates and upgrades. This ensures a consistent and repeatable installation, which is important. Key setup file parts are shown in the following sections.

Setting Up the ToR Configurations for B-series and C-series

The ToR configuration is driven through the mercury `setup_data.yaml` configuration. The information for automated TOR configuration is provided in two parts in the `setup_data.yaml` file. The common information is in the `TORSWITCHINFO` section, whereas the information on individual switch ports connected to specific nodes are under `SERVERS` section for C-series, and `UCSM-COMMON` section for B-series. If the `TORSWITCHINFO` section is not provided or `CONFIGURE_TORS` attribute under `TORSWITCHINFO` then all the ToR provisioning related steps are skipped. The ToR section contains attributes related to ToR connection, configuration for the management interface for the management node, and vPC peer details in case of ToR pairs.



Note

The port-channel number for the vPC peer link interfaces, is derived from the Vpc domain. The ToRs are paired with each other based on their corresponding `vpc_peer_link` addresses.

```
TORSWITCHINFO:
  CONFIGURE_TORS: True
  SWITCHDETAILS:
  -
    hostname: K09-n9k-a # mandatory for NFVbench
    username: admin # mandatory for NFVbench
    password: <redacted> # mandatory for NFVbench
    ssh_ip: <a.b.c.d> # mandatory for NFVbench
    ssn_num: <xyz>
    vpc_peer_keepalive: <f.g.h.i>
    vpc_domain: <int>
    vpc_peer_port_info: <'eth1/45,eth1/46,eth1/47'>
    vpc_peer_vlan_info: <'NNNN,NNNN-NNNN'>
    br_mgmt_port_info: 'eth1/19'
    br_mgmt_po_info: <'NN'>
  -
    hostname: K09-n9k-b # mandatory for NFVbench
    username: admin # mandatory for NFVbench
    password: <redacted> # mandatory for NFVbench
    ssh_ip: <f.g.h.i> # mandatory for NFVbench
    ssn_num: < xyz>
    vpc_peer_keepalive: < a.b.c.d>
    vpc_domain: <int>
    vpc_peer_port_info: <'eth1/45,eth1/46,eth1/47'>
```

```
vpc_peer_vlan_info: <'NNNN,NNNN-NNNN'>
br_mgmt_port_info: 'eth1/19'
br_mgmt_po_info: <'NN'>
```

The attributes for vpc peer vlan info, vpc domain and br_mgmt_po_info have to match across the ToRs, and should only be defined in only two of the TORs, where the management node is hanging off. The attribute for vpc_peer_vlan_info is optional. If it is not specified, it derives a list of VLAN ids from the host/FI facing interfaces and br_mgmt interface. Also, the attribute for ssn_num which represents the chassis serial number is optional.

The chassis serial number can be obtained by executing the following command on each of the ToRs:

```
show license host-id
```

In the case of B-series, Cisco VIM configures the UCSMCOMMON section to declare the interface configuration under **tor_info_fi** and **tor_info_fi_redundant** for the FI.



Note ToR names need to match with names provided in the TORSWITCHINFO section.

```
UCSMCOMMON:
  ENABLE_QOS_FOR_PORT_PROFILE: true,
  ENABLE_QOS_POLICY: true,
  ENABLE_UCSM_PLUGIN: true,
  ucsd_ip: <p.q.r.s>,
  ucsd_password: <redacted>,
  ucsd_resource_prefix: c43b,
  ucsd_username: admin,
  tor_info_fi: {po: 18, K09-n9k-a: eth1/17, K09-n9k-b: eth1/17}
  tor_info_fi_redundant: {po: 19, K09-n9k-a: eth1/19, K09-n9k-b: eth1/19}
```

In this example of B-Series, tor_info is not declared in the SERVERES section as all connectivity is through the FI (controller, compute, and storage) declared in the UCSMCOMMON section. VLANs for the FI facing interfaces are derived from the NETWORK segment ROLES for controller, compute, and storage nodes.

The SERVERS section declares the interface configurations for each of the controller, compute, and storage nodes under **tor_info**.

```
SERVERS:
  controller-1:
    rack_info: {rack_id: rack43X}
    cimc_info: {cimc_ip: <ip_addr>}
    tor_info: {po: 5, B9-TOR-9K-1: eth1/5, B9-TOR-9K-2: eth1/5}
  controller-2:
    rack_info: {rack_id: rack43Y}
    cimc_info: {cimc_ip: <ip_addr>}
    tor_info: {po: 7, B9-TOR-9K-1: eth1/7, B9-TOR-9K-2: eth1/7}
  controller-3:
    rack_info: {rack_id: rack43Z}
    cimc_info: {cimc_ip: <ip_addr>}
    tor_info: {po: 9, B9-TOR-9K-1: eth1/9, B9-TOR-9K-2: eth1/9}
  compute-1:
    rack_info: {rack_id: rack43}
    cimc_info: {cimc_ip: <ip_addr>}
    tor_info: {po: 11, B9-TOR-9K-1: eth1/11, B9-TOR-9K-2: eth1/11}
  compute-2:
    rack_info: {rack_id: rack43}
    cimc_info: {cimc_ip: <ip_addr>}
    tor_info: {po: 13, B9-TOR-9K-1: eth1/13, B9-TOR-9K-2: eth1/13}
  storage-1:
    rack_info: {rack_id: rack43}
```

```

    cimc_info: {cimc_ip: <ip_addr>}
    tor_info: {po: 14, B9-TOR-9K-1: eth1/14, B9-TOR-9K-2: eth1/14}
storage-2:
    rack_info: {rack_id: rack43}
    cimc_info: {cimc_ip: <ip_addr>}
    tor_info: {po: 15, B9-TOR-9K-1: eth1/15, B9-TOR-9K-2: eth1/15}
storage-3:
    rack_info: {rack_id: rack43}
    cimc_info: {cimc_ip: <ip_addr>}
    tor_info: {po: 16, B9-TOR-9K-1: eth1/16, B9-TOR-9K-2: eth1/16}

```

VLANS for host facing interfaces are derived from NETWORK section based on the server ROLES definition of each of the servers and their corresponding network profile roles assigned for each of the segments.

Server Level Setup_data info for C-series with Intel NIC

When the C-series pod is configured to run in a complete Intel NIC environment, the ToR have an additional configuration that is `dp_tor_info` section. Control plane and data plane traffic are broken out into two separate interfaces with VLAN limiting applied on each of the interfaces facing the controller and compute nodes.

```

c43b-control-1:
    rack_info: {rack_id: rack43}
    cimc_info: {cimc_ip: <ip_addr>}
    tor_info: {po: 9, K09-n9k-a: 'eth1/9, eth1/12'}
    dp_tor_info: {po: 12, K09-n9k-a: 'eth1/12, eth1/12'}
c43b-compute-1:
    rack_info: {rack_id: rack43}
    cimc_info: {cimc_ip: <ip_addr>}
    tor_info: {po: 10, K09-n9k-a: 'eth1/10, eth1/13'}
    dp_tor_info: {po: 13, K09-n9k-a: 'eth1/13, eth1/13'}

```

Server Level Setup_data info for C-series with Intel NIC with SRIOV

When the C-series pod is configured to support SRIOV with Intel NIC, a third interface is configured to allow SRIOV traffic for the compute nodes. Switchports configured for SRIOV are not placed in a port-channel. VLAN limiting is applied to this interface for all the data plane related VLAN IDs.

```

c43b-compute-1:
    rack_info: {rack_id: rack43}
    cimc_info: {cimc_ip: <ip_addr>}
    tor_info: {po: 10, K09-n9k-a: 'eth1/10, eth1/13'}
    dp_tor_info: {po: 13, K09-n9k-a: 'eth1/13, eth1/13'}
    sriov_tor_info: { K09-n9k-a: eth1/33, K09-n9k-b: eth1/33}

```

Support for Custom Configuration

Custom Configuration is an optional procedure. The `setup_data.yaml` file has a section called `CUSTOM_CONFIG` to support custom configuration. Under the `CUSTOM_CONFIG` section, raw CLI commands can be provided at the global, port channel, and switchport level. `CUSTOM_CONFIG` is applied at the time of bootstrap and add-interfaces workflow steps.

For example: `setup_data.yaml`

```

TORSWITCHINFO:
  CONFIGURE_TORS: true
  CUSTOM_CONFIG:
    GLOBAL:
      [<'cli line 1'>,
       <'cli line 2'>,<,<']
    PORTCHANNEL:
      [<'cli line 1'>]
    SWITCHPORT:

```



```
[<'cli line 1'>,
 <'cli line 2'>,]
```

Setting Up ToR Configurations for NCS-5500



Note In Cisco VIM 2.4, the following caveats apply to a Cisco VIM deployment with NCS:

- **BGP:** For a fresh install of Cisco VIM, assure no BGP configuration is present on the NCS, otherwise the peering between the two NCS does not come up properly. Un-configure any existing BGP configuration. If additional BGP complimentary configuration is needed, add it after a successful Cisco VIM install.
- **Segment-Routing:** The global block of Segment Routing IDs have to be pre-defined by the admin. Make sure that the prefix defined within the `setup_data.yaml` is within the Segment Routing global block range.
- **NCS Interface Naming:** There are a set of different Interface naming variations. We support the following: [Te0/0/0/0, TenGigE0/0/0/0, Gi0/0/0/0, Hu0/0/1/0, HundredGigE 0/0/1/0, FortyGigE0/0/0/0].
- Any manual adjustments to the ISIS, L2VPN sections (on top of the configuration provided by the CVIM automation) causes subsequent Cisco VIM installs to fail.

For a Cisco VIM with NCS-5500 Auto-ToR is a must-have. You can use the Auto-ToR configuration feature to setup NCS-5500. The mercury Cisco VIM `setup_data.yaml` configuration file is used as an input file for the configuration.

The `setup_data.yaml` file contains the following three sections:

- **TORSWITCHINFO:** This section provides the general information.
- **SERVERS section for C-series:** This section provides the information on the switch ports that are connected to the specific nodes. When the micro pod is configured to run in a complete Intel NIC environment with NCS-5500 as the ToR, the SERVER level configurations include `tor_info` (for control plane) and `dp_tor_info` (data plane) section. Control plane and data plane traffic are broken out into two separate interfaces with bridge domains applied on each of the control and data interfaces facing each for the controller and compute nodes.
- **MULTI_SEGMENT_ROUTING_INFO:** This section provides the information related to routing.

NCS-5500 supports a micro-pod with additional computes running on Intel 710 NICs with no SR-IOV with mechanism driver of VPP.



Note The current release supports the use of two NCS-5500 within a single pod.

The following snippet shows an example of the mercury `setup_data.yaml` configuration file for NCS-5500

```
TORSWITCHINFO:
  CONFIGURE_TORS: true # Mandatory
  TOR_TYPE: NCS-5500 # Mandatory

SWITCHDETAILS:
-
  hostname: <NCS-5500-1> # hostname of NCS-5500-1
  username: admin
```

```

        password: <ssh_password of NCS-5500-1>
        ssh_ip: <ssh_ip_address of NCS-5500-1>
        vpc_peer_keepalive: <ssh IP address of the peer NCS-5500-2>
        br_mgmt_port_info: <interface of which br_mgmt of management node is hanging of
NCS-5500-1>
        br_mgmt_po_info: <int; bundle Ethernet interface to pxe the management node>
        vpc_peer_port_info: <local interface to which peer NCS-5500 is connected, "," separated,
max of 2 entries>' >
        vpc_peer_port_address: <local address with mask for vpc_peer_port_info, "," separated,
max of 2 entries>' >
        isis_loopback_addr: <local isis loopback interface address without mask> # assumes
/32
        isis_net_entity_title: <isis network_entity_title>
        isis_prefix_sid: <int between 16000-1048575> # has to be unique in the ISIS domain
and depends on the
global segment routing block define by the admin
-
        hostname: <NCS-5500-2> # hostname of NCS-5500-2
        username: admin
        password: <ssh_password of NCS-5500-2>
        ssh_ip: <ssh_ip_address of NCS-5500-2>
        vpc_peer_keepalive: <ssh IP address of the peer NCS-5500-1>
        br_mgmt_port_info: <interface of which br_mgmt of management node is hanging of
NCS-5500-2>
        br_mgmt_po_info: <int; bundle Ethernet interface to pxe the management node>
        vpc_peer_port_info: <local interface to which peer NCS-5500 is connected>,"" seperated,
max of two entries
        vpc_peer_port_address: <local address with mask for vpc_peer_port_info>,"" seperated,
max of two entries
        isis_loopback_addr: <local isis loopback interface address without mask> # assumes
/32
        isis_net_entity_title: <isis network_entity_title>
        isis_prefix_sid: <int between 16000-1048575> has to be unique in the ISIS domain and
depends on the global segment routing block define by the admin. # has to be unique in the
ISIS domain
        splitter_opt_4_10: 'FortyGigE<C/D/X/Y>,HundredGigE<E/F/A/B>' # Optional for NCS-5500,
only when splitter is needed on per switch basis (that is, the peer switch may or maynot
have the entry)

SERVER SECTION FOR C SERIES:
a27-fretta-micro-1:
cimc_info: {cimc_ip: 172.28.121.172}
dp_tor_info: {NCS-5500-1: TenGigE0/0/0/1, NCS-5500-2: TenGigE0/0/0/1, po: 1}
hardware_info: {VIC_slot: MLOM}
rack_info: {rack_id: RackA}
tor_info: {NCS-5500-1: TenGigE0/0/0/0, NCS-5500-2: TenGigE0/0/0/0, po: 2}
# Optional
sriov_tor_info: {NCS-5500-1: TenGigE0/0/0/6, NCS-5500-2: TenGigE0/0/0/6} or
sriov_tor_info: {NCS-5500-1: 'TenGigE0/0/0/6, TenGigE0/0/0/7', NCS-5500-2: 'TenGigE0/0/0/6,
TenGigE0/0/0/7'}

a27-fretta-micro-2:
cimc_info: {cimc_ip: 172.28.121.174}
dp_tor_info: {NCS-5500-1: TenGigE0/0/0/3, NCS-5500-2: TenGigE0/0/0/3, po: 3}
hardware_info: {VIC_slot: MLOM}
rack_info: {rack_id: RackB}
tor_info: {NCS-5500-1: TenGigE0/0/0/2, NCS-5500-2: TenGigE0/0/0/2, po: 4}

a27-fretta-micro-3:
cimc_info: {cimc_ip: 172.28.121.175}
dp_tor_info: {NCS-5500-1: TenGigE0/0/0/5, NCS-5500-2: TenGigE0/0/0/5, po: 5}
hardware_info: {VIC_slot: MLOM}
rack_info: {rack_id: RackC}
# optional

```

```
sriov_tor_info: {NCS-5500-1: 'TenGigE0/0/0/8, TenGigE0/0/0/9', NCS-5500-2: 'TenGigE0/0/0/8,
TenGigE0/0/0/9'}
```

#Note: if sriov is defined, it need not be present on all servers; However, when present on a given server, the number of SRIOV port need to be 4 and consistent across the servers; Also, please set the INTEL_SRIOV_PHYS_PORTS to 4, when using SRIOV with NCS-5500 as ToR. Please set the value of INTEL_SRIOV_VFS as per the settings of your VNF (see details later for the default values, etc)

```
tor_info: {NCS-5500-1: TenGigE0/0/0/4, NCS-5500-2: TenGigE0/0/0/4, po: 6}
```

```
MULTI_SEGMENT_ROUTING_INFO:
  bgp_as_num: <1 to 65535>
  isis_area_tag: <string>
  loopback_name: <loopback<0-2147483647>>
  api_bundle_id: <1 to 65535>
  api_bridge_domain: <string> #Optional, only needed when br_api of mgmt node is also
going via NCS-5500; #this item and api_bundle_id are mutually exclusive
  ext_bridge_domain: <string> # user pre-provisions physical, bundle interface,
subinterface and external BD" for external uplink and provides
external BD info in the setup_data
```

NCS Day-0 Configuration (Prior to starting Cisco VIM install)

The following snippets have to be defined on the NCS before starting Cisco VIM installation:

```
SSH:
ssh server v2
ssh server vrf default
ssh server netconf port 831
ssh server netconf vrf default
ssh timeout 60
ssh server rate-limit 600
```

```
USERNAME:
username admin
group root-lr
group cisco-support
secret 0 <password>
```



Note For SSH to work generate a key using *crypto key generate rsa*.

Pre-requisites for Segment Routing Global Block and ISIS Prefix

The segment routing configuration has to be predefined by the admin.

The following snippet provides an example:

```
segment-routing
global-block 16000 20000
```

The prefix within the ISIS setup_data.yaml configuration has to be within the global-block IDs. Example:

```
TORSWITCHINFO:
  CONFIGURE_TORS: true
  SWITCHDETAILS:
  - {br_mgmt_po_info: 1, br_mgmt_port_info: TenGigE0/0/0/10, hostname: a25-ncs5500-1-ru30,
    isis_loopback_addr: 10.10.10.10, isis_net_entity_title: 49.0001.1720.1625.5011.00,
    isis_prefix_sid: 16001, password: CTO1234!, ssh_ip: 172.28.123.176, username: admin,
```

```

    vpc_peer_keepalive: 172.28.123.177, vpc_peer_port_address:
'100.100.100.2/29,100.100.101.2/29',
    vpc_peer_port_info: 'HundredGigE0/0/1/4,HundredGigE0/0/1/5'}
- {br_mgmt_po_info: 1, br_mgmt_port_info: TenGigE0/0/0/10, hostname: a25-ncs5500-2-ru29,
  isis_loopback_addr: 20.20.20.20, isis_net_entity_title: 49.0001.1720.1625.4022.00,
  isis_prefix_sid: 16002, password: CT01234!, ssh_ip: 172.28.123.177, username: admin,
  vpc_peer_keepalive: 172.28.123.176, vpc_peer_port_address:
'100.100.100.3/29,100.100.101.3/29',
  vpc_peer_port_info: 'HundredGigE0/0/1/2,HundredGigE0/0/1/3'}
TOR_TYPE: NCS-5500

```

Pre-requisites for API and External Network Segments with NCS-5500 as TOR

Pre- Provision the NCS-5500 with the Bridge domains for API and External network segments. The configured bridge domain names for api and external need to be the same as those defined in setup_data.yaml (api_bridge_domain and ext_bridge_domain) under the MULTI_SEGMENT_ROUTING_INFO section defined above.

A check on each of the NCS-5500 should show the following:

```

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:NCS-5500-2#sh run l2vpn bridge group cvim
l2vpn
bridge group cvim
    bridge-domain api
l2vpn
    bridge group cvim
        bridge-domain external

```

During the deployment of NCS-5500 as TOR, we also support the workloads off the provider network along with the tenant network.

Listed below are some of the assumptions under which this combination works.

- Provider network segment has to be in scope from day-0. Few of the PROVIDER_VLAN_RANGES has to be defined.
- You can always expand the PROVIDER_VLAN_RANGES with additional VLAN range (minimum starting VLAN range is 2)
- The maximum number of PROVIDER_VLAN_RANGES and TENANT_VLAN_RANGES should add up to 200.
- Bridge domain for provider starts with prefix: provider VLANId. They are created manually on the NCS-5500, before the VIM deployment begins; and upstream interfaces are stitched in.

Support and pre-requisites for Provider Network with NCS-Concept

In a deployment of NCS-5500 as TOR, along with the tenant network, we also support provider networks. The following points are key to use provider_networks with a NCS TOR:

- Provider network segment has to be defined on day-0; also, a handful of PROVIDER_VLAN_RANGES has to be defined in the setup_data.yaml.



Note

You cannot add it after a Cisco VIM deployment!

- The PROVIDER_VLAN_RANGES can be extended after a Cisco VIM install by running reconfigure with a updated setup_data.yaml (min starting VLAN range is 2, for example PROVIDER_VLAN_RANGES: 3200:3202 (existing range),3204:3206 (newly added range))
- The maximum number of PROVIDER_VLAN_RANGES and TENANT_VLAN_RANGES should not exceed 200.
- Bridge domain for provider starts with prefix: provider<VLANId> and are created manually on the NCS-5500 before VIM deployment begins with necessary upstream interfaces configured accordingly.

Pre-requisites for Provider Network with NCS-5500 as TOR

Provider network support requires the following pre-requisites:

Step 1 Define the network and provider vlan ranges sections in setup_data.yaml.

```
NETWORKING:
  - segments: [provider]
    vlan_id: None
PROVIDER_VLAN_RANGES: 127,3406:3409
```

Step 2 Pre-provisioning the NCS with bridge-domains for corresponding VLANs and plumbing the uplink configuration into these bridge-domains.

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:NCS-5500-2#sh run l2vpn bridge group cvim
l2vpn
  bridge group cvim
    bridge-domain provider127

l2vpn
  bridge group cvim
    bridge-domain provider3406

l2vpn
  bridge group cvim
    bridge-domain provider3407
```

Note The Cisco VIM Automation will then configure all the host facing subinterfaces for these provider vlans, EVIs and plumb them into each of the pre-provisioned provider bridge-domains.

Note When pre-provisioning bridge-domain, ensure that the BD names follow the naming convention of "provider<vlan-id>".

Installing Cisco VIM with Cisco NCS 5500 as ToR



Note Cisco VIM does not support Jumbo Frame with Cisco NCS 5500.



Note Currently there is an Intel X710 issue with the i40e driver version 1.6.27-k shipped with RHEL7.4, intermittent traffic drop/not forward on one of the bonding member interface. This problem becomes more apparent when the same traffic flow conversation is asymmetrically forwarded, that is the same traffic flow conversation transmitting on bond member 1 and receiving back on bond member 2.

To resolve this issue, upgrade the official Intel driver version to 2.4.6 using the file downloaded from <https://downloadmirror.intel.com/27869/eng/i40e-2.4.6.tar.gz>

The official Intel i40e version 2.4.6 is compiled at the time of the mercury's hotfix repo build. This takes care of the baremetal install of all the controller, storage, and compute nodes except management node. Ensure that you do stepwise installation to incorporate the changes done to the management node.

Following are the steps to install Cisco VIM:

Step 1 Deploy the management node with the corresponding matching 2.2.x ISO

Step 2 Run the following command:

```
ciscovim --setupfile <setup_data_path> run --perform step 1,2
```

Step 3 Install the updated i40e driver.

```
yum install i40e
```

Step 4 Activate the new i40e driver.

```
modprobe -r i40e && modprobe i40e
```

Step 5 Check if the driver is correctly loaded.

```
ethtool -i enpls0f0

driver: i40e
version: 2.4.6
firmware-version: 5.05 0x80002a3c 0.385.33
expansion-rom-version:
bus-info: 0000:01:00.0
supports-statistics: yes
supports-test: yes
supports-eeprom-access: yes
supports-register-dump: yes
supports-priv-flags: yes
```

Step 6 Bring the MGMT interfaces back up

```
ifup bond0
```

Step 7 Resume the install from step 3 onwards

```
ciscovim --setupfile <setup_data_path> run --perform 3,4,5...
```

Intel NIC Support

Cisco VIM supports C-series pod running with either all Intel 710X NICs or Cisco VICs for control and data plane. In the Intel NIC setup, M4 and M5 (Micropod) based pods need to have 2-4 port and 1 or 2 4 port X710 respectively, for control and data plane connectivity. The orchestrator identifies the NIC support based on the following INTEL_NIC_SUPPORT values:

- False-This is the default value. The orchestrator assumes that all the servers have Cisco VIC
- True-The orchestrator assumes that all the servers have Intel NIC.

To define the value, run the following command

```
# INTEL_NIC_SUPPORT: <True or False>
```

The X710 based NIC redundancy is enabled by default for M4-based Intel NIC system, but not for M5-based Intel NIC system. See *Figure 7: UCS C-Series Intel NIC Details* in [UCS C-Series Network Topologies, on page 22](#). To bring in NIC redundancy across the X710s for M5-based Intel NIC systems, define the following global parameter in the setup_data.

```
# NIC_LEVEL_REDUNDANCY: <True or False> # optional and only applies when INTEL_NIC_SUPPORT
is set to True
```

A C-series pod, running Intel NIC, also supports SRIOV as an option when defined in a setup_data. To enable SRIOV as an option, define a value in the range 1-32 (32 is maximum number of INTEL_SRIOV_VFS: <integer>).

By default, in the C-series pod running with 4 port Intel 710 card, 1 port (port #c) from each of the Intel NICs are used for SRIOV. However, some VNFs needs additional SRIOV ports to function. To meet the requirement, an additional variable has been introduced in the setup_data.yaml file by which you can include a second port (port d) of the Intel NIC for SRIOV.

To adjust the number of SRIOV ports, set the following option in the setup_data.yaml file:

```
#INTEL_SRIOV_PHYS_PORTS: <2 or 4>
```

The parameter, INTEL_SRIOV_PHYS_PORTS is optional, and if nothing is defined a value of 2 is used. The only values the parameter takes is 2 or 4. For NCS-5500, the only value supported for INTEL_SRIOV_PHYS_PORTS is 4, and has to be defined for SRIOV support on NCS-5500. As the M5 Micropod environment is based on X710 for control and data plane and an additional XL710 or 2 port X710 for SRIOV only INTEL_SRIOV_PHYS_PORTS of 2 is supported.

SRIOV support on a Cisco VIC POD

Cisco VIM supports M4 based C-series pod running with one 2-port Cisco VIC for control plane and two 2-port Intel 520s or two 2-port XL710 for SRIOV (called VIC/NIC deployment). We also support M5 based C-series pod running with one 2-port Cisco VIC for control plane and two 2-port XL710 for SRIOV.

The orchestrator identifies the VIC/NIC support based on the following CISCO_VIC_INTEL_SRIOV values:

- False-This is the default value. The orchestrator assumes that all the servers have Cisco VIC.
- True-The orchestrator assumes that all the servers have Intel NIC.

To define the value, run the following command:

```
# CISCO_VIC_INTEL_SRIOV: <True or False>
```

A C-series M4 pod, running Cisco VIC/Intel NIC (2x520 or 2xXL710), also supports SRIOV on the Intel NIC. To enable,SRIOV define a value in the range 1-63 (63 is maximum) (for X520) or 1-32 (32 is maximum for XL710) number of INTEL_SRIOV_VFS: <integer>

By default in the C-series M4 pod running with Cisco VIC and Intel 520/XL710, the control plane runs on the Cisco VIC ports, and all the 4 ports from the 2 Intel 520 NICs or 2 intel XL710 are used for SRIOV.

In C-Series M5 pods running with Cisco VIC and Intel XL710, the control plane runs on the Cisco VIC ports and all the 4 or 8 ports from the 2 intel XL710 are used for SRIOV.

In M5-based VIC/NIC pods, define INTEL_SRIOV_PHYS_PORTS: <4 or 8>, with default value as 4, to indicate the number of ports participating in SRIOV.

In the pods running with CISCO_VIC_INTEL_SRIOV option, some computes can run only with Cisco VIC without SRIOV option if they do not have Intel NIC cards.

Define the following parameter in the setup_data yaml to setup the card type, in SRIOV (only for M4 based pod).

```
#SRIOV_CARD_TYPE: <X520 or XL710>
```



Note

There are different card types present in the compute. If SRIOV_CARD_TYPE is not provided, Cisco VIM chooses the first 2 slots from all SRIOV compute nodes. If SRIOV_CARD_TYPE is provided, Cisco VIM chooses the first 2 slots matching the target card type from each of the SRIOV compute nodes, and ensures there is a match between intent and reality. From release Cisco VIM 2.4.4 onwards, some computes have XL710 while others have X520 for SRIOV in an M4 settings. This is achieved by defining the SRIOV_CARD_TYPE at a per compute level (see the SERVERS section of the setup_data in example file).

Support of Third Party Compute in Hybrid Mode (HP DL360 Gen9)

Cisco VIM 2.4 introduces the first third-party compute. The first SKU chosen is HPE ProLiant DL360 Gen9. With this support we were able to clearly demonstrate that the CVIM software is flexible enough to be enhanced to accommodate for other SKUs. In CVIM 2.4, the supported deployment is a full-on pod, with OVS as the mechanism driver, where the management, control, and storage nodes are based on existing Cisco UCS c220/240M4 BOM, and the compute nodes are on HPE ProLiant DL360 Gen9 hardware. From Cisco VIM 2.4.5 onwards, Cisco VIM supports the same HP SKU with the both “HP” and “HPE” brand.

To minimize the changes to the existing orchestration workflow and Insight UI, we adopted to reuse the existing Cisco VIC+NIC combo deployment scenario which minimize the changes needed for the hardware topology and the "setup_data.yaml" configuration file. Refer to the above section "Intel NIC Support for SRIOV only", on the NIC settings that need to be passed. to enable HPE ProLiant DL360 Gen9 third-party compute.

The following table shows the port type mapping between Cisco UCS C-Series compute and HPE ProLiant DL360 compute:

Port Type	Cisco UCS c220/c240M4 Compute	HPE ProLiant DL360 Gen9 Compute
Control and Data Plane	MLOM - Cisco UCS VIC 1227	FlexLOM - HP Ethernet 10Gb 2-port 560FLR-SFP+ Adapter
SRIOV	PCIe - Intel X520-DA2 10 Gbps 2 port NIC	PCIe - HP Ethernet 10Gb 2-port 560SFP+ Adapter
SRIOV	PCIe - Intel X520-DA2 10 Gbps 2 port NIC	PCIe - HP Ethernet 10Gb 2-port 560SFP+ Adapter

As this deployment do not support Auto-ToR configuration, the TOR switch needs to have Trunk configuration with native VLAN, jumbo MTU, and no LACP suspend-individual on the control and data plane switch ports.

Sample Nexus 9000 port-channel configuration is as follows:

```
interface port-channel30
  description compute-server-hp-1 control and data plane
  switchport mode trunk
  switchport trunk native vlan 201
  spanning-tree port type edge trunk
  mtu 9216
  no lacp suspend-individual
  vpc 30
!
interface Ethernet1/30
  description compute-server-hp-1 flexlom port 1
  switchport mode trunk
  switchport trunk native vlan 201
  mtu 9216
  channel-group 30 mode active
```

Once the physical connection to the top-of-rack switches and the switch ports' configuration have been completed, enable/add the following additional variables in the VIM's "setup_data.yaml" configuration file:

```
CISCO_VIC_INTEL_SRIOV: True
INTEL_SRIOV_VFS: 63
```

Remote Registry Credentials

```
REGISTRY_USERNAME: '<username>'
REGISTRY_PASSWORD: '<password>'
REGISTRY_EMAIL: '<email@address.com>'
```

Common CIMC Access Information for C-series POD

```
CIMC-COMMON:
cimc_username: "admin"
cimc_password: <"cisco123">
```

UCSM Common Access Information for B-series POD

```
UCSMCOMMON:
ucsm_username: "admin"
ucsm_password: <"cisco123">
ucsm_ip: <"a.b.c.d">
ucsm_resource_prefix: <"skull"> # max of 6 chars
ENABLE_UCSM_PLUGIN: <True> #optional; if True, Cisco-UCSM is used, if not defined, default
is False
MRAID_CARD: <True or False>
ENABLE_QOS_POLICY: True or False # only allowed if ENABLE_UCSM_PLUGIN is True
ENABLE_QOS_FOR_PORT_PROFILE: <True or False>
```



Note

When you use Cisco UCS Manager to enable QOS Policy, remember that in certain NFV solutions guest VM (SRIOV) traffic must have heartbeat messages moving across the VMs at a higher priority. In this case the UCS Manager plugin uses a predefined QOS policy name, created by the installer, to attach to the port profile. Cisco VIM does not change the QOS flags that UCS Manager provides by default. You can configure two types of QOS profiles: nfvi (default) or media. For NFV, VM heartbeat messages have a higher priority. For media, multicast traffic is prioritized on the tenant/provider network over other types of traffic such as SSH and HTTP. The QOS policy with UCS Manager is an optional feature. By default this feature is not enabled.

Configure Cobbler

```
## Cobbler specific information.
## kickstart:      static values as listed below
## cobbler_username: cobbler #username to access cobbler server; static value of Cobbler;
not user configurable
## admin_username: root # static value of root; not user configurable
## admin_ssh_keys: This is a generated key which is put on the hosts.
##
## This is needed for the next install step, using Ansible.
COBBLER:
  pxe_timeout: 45                                # Optional parameter (in minutes); min of 30
and max of 120, defaults to 45 mins
  cobbler_username: cobbler # cobbler UI user; currently statically mapped to cobbler;
not user configurable
  admin_username: root # cobbler admin user; currently statically mapped to root;
not user configurable
  #admin_password_hash has be the output from:
  # python -c "import crypt; print crypt.crypt('<plaintext password>')"
  admin_password_hash: <Please generate the admin pwd hash using the step above; verify the
output starts with $6>
  admin_ssh_keys:                                # Optional parameter
- ssh-rsa AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EAAAABIwAAAQEAoMrVHLwpDJX8j2DiE55WtJ5NWdiryP5+FjvPEZcjLdtdWaWA7W
dP6EBAeskmyyU9B8ZJrluClIN/sT6yD3gw6IkQ73Y6b1lkZxu/ZlcUUSNY4RVjSAz52/oLKs6n3wqKnn
7rQuLGEZDvXnyLbqMoxHdc4PDFWiGXdlg5DIVGigO9KUncPK cisco@cisco-server
  kickstart: # not user configurable
  control: ucs-b-and-c-series.ks
  compute: ucs-b-and-c-series.ks
  block_storage: ucs-b-and-c-series.ks
```

Configure Network

```
NETWORKING:
  domain_name: domain.example.com
#max of 4 NTP servers
  ntp_servers:
- <1.ntp.example.com>
- <2.ntp.example2.com >
or
ntp_servers: ['2001:c5c0:1234:5678:1002::1', 15.0.0.254] <== support for IPv6 address
#max of 3 DNS servers
  domain_name_servers:
- <a.b.c.d>
or
domain_name_servers: ['2001:c5c0:1234:5678:1002::5', 15.0.0.1] <== support for IPv6
address
  http_proxy_server: <a.b.c.d:port> # optional, needed if install is through internet, and
the pod is behind a proxy
  https_proxy_server: <a.b.c.d:port> # optional, needed if install is through internet, and
the pod is behind a proxy
  admin_source_networks: # optional, host based firewall to white list admin's source IP
- 10.0.0.0/8
- 172.16.0.0/12
```



Note

External access to the management node is made through the IP address configured on the `br_api` interface. To provide additional security for this connection, the optional **admin_source_networks** parameter is provided. When specified, access to administrator services is only allowed from the IP addresses specified on this list. Use this setting with care, since a misconfiguration can lock out an administrator from accessing the management node through the network. Recovery can be made by logging in through the console and reconfiguring this setting.

Define Network Segments

```

networks:
- # CIMC network section is applicable only for B-series
  vlan_id: <107>
  subnet: <10.30.115.192/28> # true routable network
  gateway: <10.30.115.193>
  pool:
    - 10.30.115.194 to 10.30.115.206
  segments:
    - cimc
vlan_id: <108>
  subnet: <10.30.116.192/28> # true routable network
  gateway: <10.30.116.193>

ipv6_gateway: 2001:c5c0:1234:5678:1003::1    <== require if IPv6 OpenStack public API is
enabled
ipv6_subnet: 2001:c5c0:1234:5678:1003::/80
  segments:
    - api
-
  vlan_id: 3000
  subnet: 13.13.1.0/24
  gateway: 13.13.1.1
  pool:
    # specify the pool range in form of <start_ip> to <end_ip>, IPs without the "to"
    # is treated as an individual IP and is used for configuring
    - 13.13.1.11 to 13.13.1.200

# optional, required if managemen_ipv6 is defined at server level
ipv6_gateway: 2001:c5c0:1234:5678:1002::1
ipv6_subnet: 2001:c5c0:1234:5678:1002::/80
ipv6_pool: ['2001:c5c0:1234:5678:1002::11 to 2001:c5c0:1234:5678:1002::20']

  segments: #management and provisioning is always be the same
    - management
    - provision

# OVS-VLAN requires VLAN-id as "None"
# LinuxBridge-VXLAN requires valid VLAN-id
-
  vlan_id: <vlan_id or None>
  subnet: 14.13.1.0/24
  gateway: 14.13.1.1
  pool:
    - 14.13.1.11 to 14.13.1.254
  segments:
    - tenant
-
  vlan_id: 3005
  subnet: 15.13.1.0/24
  gateway: 15.13.1.1
  pool:
    - 15.13.1.11 to 15.13.1.254
  segments:
    - storage

# optional network "external"
-
vlan_id: <108>
  segments:
    - external

# optional network "provider"; None for C-series, vlan range for B-series

```

```
-
vlan_id: "<None or 3200-3210>"
  segments:
    - provider
```

Define Server Roles

In the Roles section, add the hostname of the servers and their corresponding roles. In case of Micropod, specify the same server names under control, compute, and ceph. Also, the number of servers under each role has to be three for Micropod. One can optionally expand the Micropod, to include additional computes. In the case of HC (Hyperconverged deployment), all storage nodes acts as compute nodes, but not vice-versa.

```
ROLES:    -> for PODTYPE: fullon
control:
  - Your-Controller-Server-1-HostName
  - Your-Controller-Server-2-HostName
  - Your-Controller-Server-3-HostName
compute:
  - Your-Compute-Server-1-HostName
  - Your-Compute-Server-2-HostName
  - .....
  - Your-Compute-Server-n-HostName
block_storage:
  - Your-Ceph-Server-1-HostName
  - Your-Ceph-Server-2-HostName
  - Your-Ceph-Server-3-HostName
object_storage:
networker:
ROLES:    -> for PODTYPE: micro
control:
  - Your-Server-1-HostName
  - Your-Server-2-HostName
  - Your-Server-3-HostName
compute:
  - Your-Server-1-HostName
  - Your-Server-2-HostName
  - Your-Server-3-HostName
  - Your-Server-4-HostName (optional expansion of computes)
  - Your-Server-5-HostName (optional expansion of computes)

block_storage:
  - Your-Server-1-HostName
  - Your-Server-2-HostName
  - Your-Server-3-HostName
object_storage:
networker:

ROLES:    -> for PODTYPE: UMHC
control:
  - Your-Controller-Server-1-HostName
  - Your-Controller-Server-2-HostName
  - Your-Controller-Server-3-HostName
compute:
  - Your-Compute-Server-1-HostName
  - Your-Compute-Server-2-HostName
  - Your_HC_Server-1_HostName
  - Your_HC_Server-2_HostName
  - Your_HC_Server-3_HostName
block_storage:
  - Your_HC_Server-1_HostName
  - Your_HC_Server-2_HostName
  - Your_HC_Server-3_HostName
```

```

    object_storage:
networker:

# Server common
# Provide the username (default: root)
SERVER_COMMON:
    server_username: root

```



Note The maximum length of non-FQDN hostname is 32 characters. In this example, the length of Your-Controller-Server-1-HostName hostname is 33 characters. So, change the hostname length to 32 or less characters in both the ROLES and SERVERS section. The maximum length including the FQDN is 64 characters, where the hostname can only have characters that are in any combination of “A-Za-z0-9-.”, and the TLD is not all numeric. CVIM does not allow “_” in the hostnames.

Cisco VIM introduces a new topology type called Micropod to address solutions that have requirements of high availability, but with limited compute and storage needs. In this deployment model, the control, compute, and storage services reside on each of the three nodes that constitute the pod. Starting Cisco VIM 2.2, we support the expansion of the Micropod to accommodate more number of compute nodes. Each cloud application can decide the type of pod needed based on their resource (mem, storage consumption) requirements. In Cisco VIM Release 2.4, the Micropod option supports only OVS/VLAN or VPP/VLAN with Cisco-VIC or Intel 710 NIC on a specific BOM. Also, ACI/VLAN is supported on Micropod with Cisco-VIC.

To enable the Micropod option, update the setup_data as follows:

```
PODTYPE: micro
```

Cisco VIM supports the hyper-convergence (UMHC) option of UMHC and NGENAHC. The UMHC option supports only OVS/VLAN with a combination of Cisco-VIC and Intel 520 NIC on a specific BOM, while the NGENAHC option supports only VPP/VLAN with control plane over Cisco-VIC and data plane over 2-port Intel X-710.

To enable the hyper convergence with (UMHC) option, update the setup_data as follows:

```
PODTYPE: UMHC
```

To enable the hyper convergence with NGENAHC option, update the setup_data as follows: PODTYPE: NGENAHC

Define Servers - C-Series Pod Example



Note The UCS C-Series maximum host name length is 32 characters.

```

SERVERS:
Your_Controller_Server-1_HostName:
cimc_info: {'cimc_ip': '172.22.191.36'}
rack_info: {'rack_id': 'RackA'}
#hardware_info: {'VIC_slot': '7'} # optional; only needed if vNICs need to be created on a
specific slot, e.g. slot 7
#management_ip: <static_ip from management pool> #optional, if defined for one server, has
to be defined for all nodes
#management_ipv6: 2001:c5c0:1234:5678:1002::12 <== optional, allow manual static
IPv6 addressing
#cimc username, password at a server level is only needed if it is different from the one

```

```

defined in the CIMC-COMMON section
Your_Controller_Server-2_HostName:
cimc_info: {'cimc_ip': '172.22.191.37', 'cimc_username': 'admin', 'cimc_password': 'abc123'}
rack_info: {'rack_id': 'RackB'}

Your_Controller_Server-3_HostName:
cimc_info: {'cimc_ip': '172.22.191.38'}
rack_info: {'rack_id': 'RackC'}
hardware_info: {'VIC_slot': '7'} # optional only if the user wants a specific VNIC to be
chosen

Your_Storage_or_Compute-1_HostName:
cimc_info: {'cimc_ip': '172.22.191.40'}
rack_info: {'rack_id': 'RackA'}
hardware_info: {'VIC_slot': '3'} # optional only if the user wants a specific VNIC to be
chosen
VM_HUGHPAGE_PERCENTAGE: <0 - 100> # optional only for compute nodes and when NFV_HOSTS:
ALL and
MECHANISM_DRIVER: openvswitch or ACI
.. .. similarly add more computes and 3 storage info
hardware_info: {'VIC_slot': '<7>', SRIOV_CARD_TYPE: <XL710 or X520>} # VIC_Slot is optional,
defined for location of Cisco VIC

```



Note SRIOV_CARD_TYPE option is valid only when CISCO_VIC_INTEL_SRIOV is True; and can be defined at per compute level for M4 pod. If it is not defined at a per compute level, the global value is taken for that compute. If not defined at the compute nor at the global level, the default of X520 is set. The compute can be standalone or hyper-converged aio node.



Note Cisco VIM installation requires that controller node Rack IDs be unique. The intent it to indicates the physical rack location so that physical redundancy is provided within the controllers. If controller nodes are installed all in the same rack, you must assign a unique rack ID to prepare for future Cisco NFVI releases that include rack redundancy. However, compute and storage nodes does not have rack ID restrictions.

Define Servers - B-Series Pod Example



Note For UCS B-Series servers, the maximum host name length is 16 characters.

```

SERVERS:
Your_Controller_Server-1_HostName:
rack_info: {'rack_id': 'rack2'}
ucsm_info: {'server_type': 'blade',
'chassis_id': 1,
'blade_id' : 1}
Your_Controller_Server-2_HostName:
rack_info: {'rack_id': 'rack3'}
ucsm_info: {'server_type': 'blade',
'chassis_id': 2,
'blade_id' : 1}
Your_Controller_Server-3_HostName:
rack_info: {'rack_id': 'rack4'}
ucsm_info: {'server_type': 'blade',
'chassis_id': 2,

```

```
'blade_id' : 4}
#management_ip: <static_ip from management pool> #optional, if defined for one server,
has to be defined for all nodes
Your_Compute-1_HostName:
rack_info: {'rack_id': 'rack2'}
ucsm_info: {'server_type': 'blade',
'chassis_id': 2,
'blade_id' : 2}
.. add more computes as needed

Your_Storage-1_HostName:
rack_info: {'rack_id': 'rack2'}
ucsm_info: {'server_type': 'rack',
'rack-unit_id': 1}
Your_Storage-2_HostName:
rack_info: {'rack_id': 'rack3'}
ucsm_info: {'server_type': 'rack',
'rack-unit_id': 2}
Your_Storage-3_HostName:
rack_info: {'rack_id': 'rack4'}
ucsm_info: {'server_type': 'rack',
'rack-unit_id': 3}

# max # of chassis id: 24
# max # of blade id: 8
#max # of rack-unit_id: 96
```

**Note**

Cisco VIM requires that controller Rack IDs be unique to indicate the physical rack location and provide physical redundancy for controllers. If your controllers are all in the same rack, you must still assign a unique rack ID to controllers to provide for future rack redundancy. Compute and storage nodes have no Rack ID restrictions.

Multiple VLAN Trunking with SRIOV using UCSM for UCS B-Series Pods

Some NFV solutions require the guest VM single root I/O virtualization (SRIOV) to send and receive VLAN tagged packets. Because the UCSM plugin in Cisco VIM creates the SR-IOV ports and attaches them to the guest VM, the port must be brought up in trunk mode. To support this, special network names are provided to the UCSM plugin at initialization. Each network supports a different set of application VLANs, which are included in the Cisco VIM configuration. When the port profile is created in UCSM, it checks to see if the port is created on one of the special neutron networks. If so, it adds the VLANs provided in the `setup_data.yaml` to the UCSM port profile. In effect, this allows the VM-FEX port to trunk all of the VLANs. A typical configuration example in `setup_data` is shown below. This is an optional feature which, by default, is not enabled. If it is not enabled, the section shown below is absent. SRIOV with Multi-VLAN trunking is only available in the UCS B-Series pod enabled with UCSM plugin.

```
SRIOV_MULTIVLAN_TRUNK:
- network_name1: 124, 2:3,9:13
- network_name2: 4, 5:7, 8
#all the vlans listed are unique in the entire setup_data.yaml
```

Setting Up Cisco VIM OpenStack Configurations

The following sections provide examples of Cisco VIM OpenStack configurations in the `setup_data.yaml` file.

OpenStack Admin Credentials

```
ADMIN_USER: <admin>
ADMIN_TENANT_NAME: <admin tenant>
```

OpenStack HAProxy and Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol Configuration

```
external_lb_vip_address: An externally routable ip address in API network
VIRTUAL_ROUTER_ID: vrrp_router_id #eg: 49 (range of 1-255)
internal_lb_vip_address: <Internal IP address on mgmt network>
```

OpenStack DNS Name Configuration

For web and REST interfaces, names are commonly used instead of IP addresses. You can set the optional `external_lb_vip_fqdn` parameter to assign a name that resolves to the `external_lb_vip_address`. You must configure the services to ensure the name and address match. Resolution can be made through DNS and the Linux `/etc/hosts` files, or through other options supported on your hosts. The Cisco VIM installer adds an entry to `/etc/hosts` on the management and other Cisco NFVI nodes to ensure that this resolution can be made from within the pod. You must ensure the resolution can be made from any desired host outside the pod.

```
external_lb_vip_fqdn: host or DNS name matching external_lb_vip_address
```

OpenStack TLS and HTTPS Configuration

Enabling TLS is important to ensure the Cisco VIM network is secure. TLS encrypts and authenticates communication to the cloud endpoints. When TLS is enabled, two additional pieces of information must be provided to the installer: `haproxy.pem` and `haproxy-ca.crt`. These must be placed in the `~/installer-xxxx/openstack-configs` directory.

`haproxy.pem` is the server side certificate file in PEM format. It must include the server certificate, any intermediate certificates, and the private key for the server. The common name of the certificate must match the `external_lb_vip_address` and/or the `external_lb_vip_fqdn` as configured in the `setup_data.yaml` file. `haproxy-ca.crt` is the certificate of the trusted certificate authority that signed the server side.

For production clouds, these certificates is be provided by a trusted third party CA according to your company IT policy. For test or evaluation clouds, self-signed certificates can be used quickly enable TLS. For convenience, the installer includes a script that creates and install self-signed certificates



Note Do not use the certificates generated by this tool for production. They are for test purposes only.

To use this tool, make the following changes to the setup data file, then run the tool:

```
external_lb_vip_address: <IP address on external network>
external_lb_vip_tls: True
external_lb_vip_fqdn: host or DNS name matching external_lb_vip_address (if FQDN is needed)
```

To run the tool, from the `/working_dir/` directory, execute `./tools/tls_cert_gen.sh -f openstack-configs/setup_data.yaml`.

OpenStack Glance Configuration with Dedicated Ceph/Netapp

For OpenStack Glance, the OpenStack image service, the dedicated Ceph object storage configuration is show below. Do not change it. The Ceph and Glance keys are generated during the Ceph installation step, so you do not need to specify the keys in `setup_data.yaml` file.

```
STORE_BACKEND: ceph/netapp #supported as 'ceph' for ceph backend store;and netapp for netapp
backend
```

CPU Allocation for Ceph in Hyper-converged or Micropod systems

As the storage node is shared with other node types (e.g. compute for Hyper-converged and control and compute for micropod), there are deployments where the number of CPU cores allocated to the Ceph role

needs to be higher than the default value of 2. From the release Cisco VIM 2.4.2, the option CEPH_OSD_RESERVED_PCORES is available on fresh install only in the case of Micropod and hyperconverged pods.

This option is set using the following commands in `setup_data`, where the value can range between 2 and 12.

```
# Number of cores associated to CEPH-OSD in a micro, UMHC or NGNENAHC deployment,
# default value if not defined is 2
#CEPH_OSD_RESERVED_PCORES: <2 - 12>
```

CEPH Placement Group Info (Optional)

If you need to change the default percentages for placement group calculation use this section they indicate amount of data you expect in cinder/glance/nova. For NOVA_BOOT_FROM local give values for cinder and glance. For NOVA_BOOT_FROM ceph also fill nova_percentage_data for ephemeral data. All Percentages need to add up to 100. If no information is provided, the code defaults to 60% cinder and 40% glance for NOVA_BOOT_FROM local. Similarly, if no information is provided the code defaults to 40% cinder, 30% glance and 30% nova ephemeral for NOVA_BOOT_FROM ceph. One cannot be changed these values after deployment via update or reconfigure.

```
# For NOVA_BOOT_FROM local
# CEPH_PG_INFO: {cinder_percentage_data: x, glance_percentage_data: y}
# where x and y are integers and must add up to 100

# For NOVA_BOOT_FROM Ceph
# CEPH_PG_INFO: {cinder_percentage_data: x, glance_percentage_data: y,
# nova_percentage_data: z}
# where x, y and z are integers and must add up to 100
```

OpenStack Glance Configuration

```
STORE_BACKEND: <set to 'file' for local filesystem store>
```

OpenStack Cinder Configuration with Dedicated Ceph/Netapp

For OpenStack Cinder, the OpenStack storage service, the dedicated Ceph object storage configuration is show below. Do not change it. The Ceph and Cinder keys are generated during the Ceph installation step, so you do not need to specify the keys in `setup_data.yaml` file. Use the **vggs** command to check your volume groups available on your controller nodes. The controller nodes run the Cinder volume containers and hold the volume groups for use by Cinder. If you have available disks and want to create a new volume group for Cinder use the **vgcreate** command.

```
VOLUME_DRIVER: ceph/netapp
```

OpenStack Nova Configuration

To reduce the boot time, the NOVA_BOOT_FROM parameter is set to local for Cisco VIM in the OpenStack Newton release. While this reduces the boot time, it does not provide Ceph back end redundancy. To overwrite it, you can set NOVA_BOOT_FROM to **ceph**. This only applies to when the backend is ceph. For Netapp, no entry for this parameter is allowed..

```
# Nova boot from CEPH
NOVA_BOOT_FROM: <ceph> #optional
```

OpenStack Neutron Configuration

OpenStack Neutron configuration is shown below.

```
# ML2 Conf - choose from either option 1 or option 2
# option 1: LinuxBridge-VXLAN
MECHANISM_DRIVERS: linuxbridge
```

```
TENANT_NETWORK_TYPES: "VXLAN"
Or
## option 2: OVS VLAN
MECHANISM_DRIVERS: openvswitch
TENANT_NETWORK_TYPES: "VLAN"
# VLAN ranges can be one continuous range or comma separated discontinuous ranges
TENANT_VLAN_RANGES: 3001:3100,3350:3400
# Jumbo MTU functionality. Only in B series, OVS-VLAN
# more info here [Mercury] Jumbo MTU feature in Mercury (B Series)
# ENABLE_JUMBO_FRAMES: True

# for Provider networks, just specifying the provider in the segments under
# the NETWORKING section is enough.
# Note : use phys_prov as physical_network name when creating a provider network
```



Note When creating an external or provider network, use `physical_network=phys_ext` (need to be specified) or `physical_network=phys_prov` (need to be specified), respectively.

The JUMBO_MTU functionality is available only for OVS over VLAN in a UCS B-Series pod. In a VLAN setup, by default the MTU size is set to 1500 (1450 for VXLAN) and 8972 bytes. When JUMBO_MTU is enabled (with 28 bytes left for the header), the VLAN MTU is 9000 and VXLAN is 8950.

Cisco VIM also supports the installation of a handful of optional services, namely, Keystone v3 and Heat. OpenStack Heat, an orchestration service that allows you to spin up multiple instances, logical networks, and other cloud services in an automated fashion. To enable Heat, add the following in the `setup_data.yaml`.

```
# Optional Services:
OPTIONAL_SERVICE_LIST:
- heat
```

To disable Heat, remove the Optional Services section from the `setup_data.yaml` file. The Optional Services support provides an infrastructure to support additional services in the future.



Note Auto-scaling is not supported in Cisco VIM, release 2.2 and later releases.

To continue enhancing the security portfolio, and multi-tenancy with the use of domains, Keystone v3 support has been added in Cisco VIM from an authentication end-point. It is be noted that Keystone v2 and Keystone v3 are mutually exclusive; that is the administrator has to decide during installation: the authentication end-point version is be Keystone v2 or Keystone v3 . By default, VIM orchestrator picks keystone v2 as the authentication end-point.

To enable Keystone v3, you need to define the following under the optional services section.

```
# Optional Services:
OPTIONAL_SERVICE_LIST:
- keystonev3
```

LDAP support with Keystone v3

With the introduction of Keystone v3, the OpenStack service authentication can now be delegated to an external LDAP server. In Cisco VIM, this feature has been introduced optionally if the authorization is done by Keystone v3.

An important pre-requisite for enabling LDAP integration is that the LDAP endpoint has to be reachable from all the Controller nodes that run OpenStack Keystone Identity Service.

To benefit LDAP support with Keystone v3 feature, the `setup_data` needs to be augmented with the following information during the installation of the pod.

```
LDAP:
  domain: <Domain specific name>
  user_objectclass: <objectClass for Users> # e.g. organizationalPerson
  group_objectclass: <objectClass for Groups> # e.g. groupOfNames
  user_tree_dn: '<DN tree for Users>' # e.g. 'ou=Users,dc=cisco,dc=com'
  group_tree_dn: '<DN tree for Groups>' # e.g. 'ou=Groups,dc=cisco,dc=com'
  suffix: '<suffix for DN>' # e.g. 'dc=cisco,dc=com'
  url: '<ldap:// host:port>' # e.g. 'ldap://172.26.233.104:389'
  user: '<DN of bind user>' # e.g. 'dc=admin,dc=cisco,dc=com'
  password: <password> # e.g. password of bind user
```



Note The values for the parameters may differ based on the Directory Service provider. For Example: OpenLDAP or Microsoft Active Directory.

Integrating identity with LDAP over TLS: The automation supports keystone integration with LDAP over TLS. In order to enable TLS, the CA root certificate must be presented as part of the `/root/openstack-configs/haproxy-ca.crt` file. The url parameter within the LDAP stanza must be set to *ldaps*.

url parameter supports the following formats

```
url: '<ldaps | ldap>://<FQDN | IP-Address>:[port]'
```

The protocol can be `ldap` for non-ssl OR `ldaps` if TLS is to be enabled

The ldap host can be a fully-qualified domain name (FQDN) or an IP Address depending on how the SSL certificates are generated.

The port number is optional and if it is not provided it is assumed that the ldap services are running on the default ports For Example: 389 for non-ssl and 636 for ssl. However, if these ports are not the default ports, then the non-standard port numbers must be provided.

Support for Anonymous LDAP Bind

The automation provides support for anonymous simple bind where the LDAP configuration for a “user” representing the **bindDN** and **password** is optional and may not be provided.



Note Ensure that the LDAP server allows the clients to bind and search anonymously.

OpenStack Object Storage integration with Cisco VIM

Cisco VIM supports automated integration with a customer-managed object storage solution. The integration points reside primarily in the OpenStack Identity (Keystone) component of Cisco VIM. In the current release, this integration is restricted to Keystone v2 only. It currently integrates with SwiftStack as the choice of object storage solution. The deployment assumes a customer-managed SwiftStack solution. Installation of the SwiftStack Controller/PACO cluster is out of scope of this document and customer has to reach out to the SwiftStack team for license and installation details. While OpenStack can support multiple endpoints for a given object-store service, the current setup in the context of automation supports a single Keystone object-store service per SwiftStack PACO cluster endpoint.

The current automation uses the admin role for authentication and authorization of SwiftStack users between the Keystone SwiftStack tenant and SwiftStack account.

Pre-requisites

Since it is a customer-managed deployment model, the minimum pre-requisite is to have a SwiftStack controller, Cluster deployed with appropriate PAC (Proxy/Account/Container) and Object configured ahead of time. The swift endpoint of the PAC outward facing ip address, the corresponding admin user, password and service tenant information is known at the time of configuring Keystone integration. The networking has to be configured in such a way that the PAC outward facing ip address and the POD API network can talk to each other. Also the Keystone Auth and Keystone Auth Token middleware are pre-configure in SwiftStack (see the steps in subsequent section).

In order for Horizon and Cinder Backup Service to talk to the SwiftStack endpoints, it is necessary for the OpenStack controllers to have network reachability to the SwiftStack API endpoints.

Keystone Configuration Requirements in SwiftStack

Configuring Keystone Authorization: From the SwiftStack controller, select the **Cluster > Manage > Middleware > Keystone Auth** option.



Note

reseller_prefix enables the Keystone Auth middleware invocation at the time of authentication.

Figure 39: Configuring Keystone

Home / Clusters / Manage mercury-dev / Manage Middleware / Keystone Auth

Keystone Auth

Configuring Keystone Authorization

This middleware is required for Keystone Authentication/Authorization (along with the "Keystone Auth Token Support" middleware).

The "reseller_prefix" must match the value used in your Keystone endpoint's publicurl and privateurl and must not be `AUTH_` because that is used by SwiftStack's Authentication Middleware.

For example, if your Keystone endpoint's publicurl was `http://192.168.22.100:80/v1/KEY_${tenant_id}s` then you would set reseller_prefix to `KEY_` here.

Settings

☒ Enabled

operator_roles:

reseller_prefix:

reseller_admin_role:

Configuring Keystone Auth Token Support: From the SwiftStack controller, select the **Cluster > Manage > Middleware > Keystone Auth Token Support** option.



Note

auth_uri is deprecated

Figure 40: Keystone Auth

Usage in Cisco VIM

In order to support SwiftStack endpoint configuration, the following section needs to be configured in `setup_data.yaml`.

```
#####
# Optional Swift configuration section
#####
# SWIFTSTACK: # Identifies the objectstore provider by name
#   cluster_api_endpoint: <IP address of PAC (proxy-account-container) endpoint>
#   reseller_prefix: <Reseller_prefix configured in Swiftstack Keystone middleware E.g KEY_>
#   admin_user: <admin user for swift to authenticate in keystone>
#   admin_password: <swiftstack_admin_password>
#   admin_tenant: <The service tenant corresponding to the Account-Container used by
Swiftstack>
#   protocol: <http or https> # protocol that swiftstack is running on top
```

The automation supports two modes of Integration with SwiftStack- Integration during fresh install of the pod and a reconfigure option to add a SwiftStack endpoint to an existing Pod running CiscoVIM 2.0.

In the Fresh Install mode, adding the `setup_data.yaml` is automatically provision the following in Keystone.

- Keystone service for Object Store.
- Keystone endpoints for the Object Store service.
- A SwiftStack admin user with admin role in a SwiftStack tenant.

Integration Testing: In order to test if the Keystone integration has been successful, request a token for the configured swift user, tenant

Output must contain a properly generated endpoint for the object-store service that points to the SwiftStack PAC cluster endpoint with the expected "reseller_prefix" For example: KEY_

```
curl -d '{"auth":{"passwordCredentials":{"username": "<username>", "password":
"<password>"},"tenantName": "<swift-tenant>"}}' -H "Content-type: application/json" < OS_AUTH_URL
>/tokens
```

Output has to list endpoints generated by Keystone for the object-store cluster endpoint of SwiftStack for the user tenant (SwiftStack account).

Sample output snippet (all IP and Keys are just examples, they vary from Pod to Pod):

```
{
  "access": {
    "metadata": {
      "is_admin": 0,
      "roles": [
        "33f4479e42eb43529ec14d3d744159e7"
      ]
    },
    "serviceCatalog": [
      {
        "endpoints": [
          {
            "adminURL": "http://10.30.116.252/v1",
            "id": "3ca0f1fee75d4e2091c5a8e15138f78a",
            "internalURL":
"http://10.30.116.252/v1/KEY_8cc56cbe99ae40b7bleaeabb7984c77d",
            "publicURL":
"http://10.30.116.252/v1/KEY_8cc56cbe99ae40b7bleaeabb7984c77d",
            "region": "RegionOne"
          }
        ],
        "endpoints_links": [],
        "name": "object-store",
        "type": "object-store"
      },
      .....
    ]
  }
}
```

Verify that the Keystone user has access to the SwiftStack cluster. Using the token generated preceding for the swiftstack user and tenant, make a request to the SwiftStack cluster

```
curl -v -H "x-auth-token: <auth-token>"
http://10.30.116.252/v1/KEY_8cc56cbe99ae40b7bleaeabb7984c77d
```

This lists all the containers (if present) for the SwiftStack tenant (account)

Integrating SwiftStack over TLS: The automation supports SwiftStack integration over TLS. To enable TLS, the CA root certificate must be presented as part of the /root/openstack-configs/haproxy-ca.crt file. The **protocol** parameter within the SWIFTSTACK stanza must be set to **https**. As a pre-requisite, the SwiftStack cluster has to be configured to enable HTTPS connections for the SwiftStack APIs with termination at the proxy servers.

Cinder Volume Backup on SwiftStack

Cisco VIM, enables cinder service to be configured to backup its block storage volumes to the SwiftStack object store. Cinder Volume Backup on SwiftStack feature is automatically configured if the SWIFTSTACK stanza is present in the setup_data.yaml. The mechanism to authenticate against SwiftStack during volume backups leverages the same keystone SwiftStack endpoint configured for use to manage objects. The default SwiftStack container to manage cinder volumes within the Account (Keystone Tenant as specified by "admin_tenant") is currently defaulted to **volumebackups**.

Once configured, cinder backup service is automatically be enabled as follows.

```
cinder service-list
```

Binary	Host	Zone	Status	State	Updated_at
cinder-backup	c43b-control-1	nova	enabled	up	2017-03-27T18:42:29.000000
-					
cinder-backup	c43b-control-2	nova	enabled	up	2017-03-27T18:42:35.000000
-					

```

| cinder-backup      | c43b-control-3 | nova | enabled | up      | 2017-03-27T18:42:33.000000
| -                  | -              |      |         |        |
| cinder-scheduler   | c43b-control-1 | nova | enabled | up      | 2017-03-27T18:42:32.000000
| -                  | -              |      |         |        |
| cinder-scheduler   | c43b-control-2 | nova | enabled | up      | 2017-03-27T18:42:32.000000
| -                  | -              |      |         |        |
| cinder-scheduler   | c43b-control-3 | nova | enabled | up      | 2017-03-27T18:42:31.000000
| -                  | -              |      |         |        |
| cinder-volume      | c43b-control-1 | nova | enabled | up      | 2017-03-27T18:42:35.000000
| -                  | -              |      |         |        |
| cinder-volume      | c43b-control-2 | nova | enabled | up      | 2017-03-27T18:42:30.000000
| -                  | -              |      |         |        |
| cinder-volume      | c43b-control-3 | nova | enabled | up      | 2017-03-27T18:42:32.000000
| -                  | -              |      |         |        |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+

```

Backing up of an existing cinder volume is as follows

```
openstack volume list
```

```

+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| ID                                     | Display Name | Status   | Size | Attached to |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| f046ed43-7f5e-49df-bc5d-66de6822d48d | ss-vol-1     | available | 1    |              |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+

```

```
openstack volume backup create f046ed43-7f5e-49df-bc5d-66de6822d48d
```

```

+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Field | Value                                     |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| id    | 42a20bd1-4019-4571-a2c0-06b0cd6a56fc |
| name  | None                                     |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+

```

```
openstack container show volumebackups
```

```

+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Field      | Value                                     |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| account    | KEY_9d00fa19a8864db1a5e609772a008e94 |
| bytes_used | 3443944                                 |
| container  | volumebackups                           |
| object_count | 23                                     |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+

```

```
swift list volumebackups
```

```

volume_f046ed43-7f5e-49df-bc5d-66de6822d48d/20170327185518/az_nova_backup_42a20bd1-4019-4571-a2c0-06b0cd6a56fc-00001
volume_f046ed43-7f5e-49df-bc5d-66de6822d48d/20170327185518/az_nova_backup_42a20bd1-4019-4571-a2c0-06b0cd6a56fc-00002
volume_f046ed43-7f5e-49df-bc5d-66de6822d48d/20170327185518/az_nova_backup_42a20bd1-4019-4571-a2c0-06b0cd6a56fc-00003
volume_f046ed43-7f5e-49df-bc5d-66de6822d48d/20170327185518/az_nova_backup_42a20bd1-4019-4571-a2c0-06b0cd6a56fc-00004
volume_f046ed43-7f5e-49df-bc5d-66de6822d48d/20170327185518/az_nova_backup_42a20bd1-4019-4571-a2c0-06b0cd6a56fc-00005
volume_f046ed43-7f5e-49df-bc5d-66de6822d48d/20170327185518/az_nova_backup_42a20bd1-4019-4571-a2c0-06b0cd6a56fc-00006
volume_f046ed43-7f5e-49df-bc5d-66de6822d48d/20170327185518/az_nova_backup_42a20bd1-4019-4571-a2c0-06b0cd6a56fc-00007
volume_f046ed43-7f5e-49df-bc5d-66de6822d48d/20170327185518/az_nova_backup_42a20bd1-4019-4571-a2c0-06b0cd6a56fc-00008
volume_f046ed43-7f5e-49df-bc5d-66de6822d48d/20170327185518/az_nova_backup_42a20bd1-4019-4571-a2c0-06b0cd6a56fc-00009
volume_f046ed43-7f5e-49df-bc5d-66de6822d48d/20170327185518/az_nova_backup_42a20bd1-4019-4571-a2c0-06b0cd6a56fc-00010
volume_f046ed43-7f5e-49df-bc5d-66de6822d48d/20170327185518/az_nova_backup_42a20bd1-4019-4571-a2c0-06b0cd6a56fc-00011
volume_f046ed43-7f5e-49df-bc5d-66de6822d48d/20170327185518/az_nova_backup_42a20bd1-4019-4571-a2c0-06b0cd6a56fc-00012
volume_f046ed43-7f5e-49df-bc5d-66de6822d48d/20170327185518/az_nova_backup_42a20bd1-4019-4571-a2c0-06b0cd6a56fc-00013
volume_f046ed43-7f5e-49df-bc5d-66de6822d48d/20170327185518/az_nova_backup_42a20bd1-4019-4571-a2c0-06b0cd6a56fc-00014
volume_f046ed43-7f5e-49df-bc5d-66de6822d48d/20170327185518/az_nova_backup_42a20bd1-4019-4571-a2c0-06b0cd6a56fc-00015
volume_f046ed43-7f5e-49df-bc5d-66de6822d48d/20170327185518/az_nova_backup_42a20bd1-4019-4571-a2c0-06b0cd6a56fc-00016
volume_f046ed43-7f5e-49df-bc5d-66de6822d48d/20170327185518/az_nova_backup_42a20bd1-4019-4571-a2c0-06b0cd6a56fc-00017
volume_f046ed43-7f5e-49df-bc5d-66de6822d48d/20170327185518/az_nova_backup_42a20bd1-4019-4571-a2c0-06b0cd6a56fc-00018
volume_f046ed43-7f5e-49df-bc5d-66de6822d48d/20170327185518/az_nova_backup_42a20bd1-4019-4571-a2c0-06b0cd6a56fc-00019
volume_f046ed43-7f5e-49df-bc5d-66de6822d48d/20170327185518/az_nova_backup_42a20bd1-4019-4571-a2c0-06b0cd6a56fc-00020

```

```

volume_f046ed43-7f5e-49df-bc5d-66de6822d48d/20170327185518/az_nova_backup_42a20bd1-4019-4571-a2c0-06b0cd6a56fc-00021
volume_f046ed43-7f5e-49df-bc5d-66de6822d48d/20170327185518/az_nova_backup_42a20bd1-4019-4571-a2c0-06b0cd6a56fc_metadata
volume_f046ed43-7f5e-49df-bc5d-66de6822d48d/20170327185518/az_nova_backup_42a20bd1-4019-4571-a2c0-06b0cd6a56fc_sha256file

```

SolidFire Integration with Cisco VIM

Cisco VIM supports the automated integration with a customer-managed SolidFire cluster for a block-storage option. SolidFire supports Cinder service for backup of block-storage. The pre-deployed SolidFire cluster has two HA networks such as management network and storage network. The management network is on 1G interface with active/Passive configuration for two ports, while the storage network is on 10G interface with active/active Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) configuration.

It is recommended that the :

- Storage network of Cisco VIM is same as that of SolidFire.
- Management network of Solidfire to be reachable from Cisco VIM control nodes.

SolidFire is available only as a day-0 configuration. To enable SolidFire, update the `setup_data.yaml` file with the following code prior to the installation.

```

SOLIDFIRE:
  cluster_mvip: <management IP of SolidFire cluster> # must be reachable from the controller
  Nodes
  cluster_svip: <storage VIP on SolidFire cluster to be used by CVIM> # must be in Cisco
  VIM storage/management network; recommended to have it in storage network for better
  performance
  admin_username: <admin user on SolidFire cluster to be used by CVIM>
  admin_password: <password for admin user defined above; password criteria is:
    "satisfy at least 3 of the following conditions: " \
      "at least 1 letter between a to z, " \
      "at least 1 letter between A to Z, " \
      "at least 1 number between 0 to 9, " \
      "at least 1 character from !$#@%^_+=, " \
      "AND password length is between 8 and 20 characters."

```

Cisco VIM Configurations for VPP/VLAN Installation

If you are installing Cisco VIM with VPP/VLAN, the mechanism driver in the `setup_yaml` file should reflect the same.

Cisco VPP/VLAN Mechanism Driver Configuration

```

MECHANISM_DRIVERS: vpp
TENANT_NETWORK_TYPES: "VLAN"
TENANT_VLAN_RANGES: <START>:<END>          # arbitrary VLAN range**
NFV_HOSTS: ALL
NR_RESERVED_VSWITCH_PCORES: <int> # Optional, defaults to 2; takes values in the range 2
to 4, in order to increase performance by
allocating more cores to VPP

```

Cisco VIM Configurations for Cisco VTS Installation

If you are installing Cisco VIM with Cisco Virtual Topology Systems, you must enter the Cisco VTS parameters in Cisco VIM `setup_yaml` file.

Cisco VTS Mechanism Driver Configuration

```

MECHANISM_DRIVERS: vts
TENANT_NETWORK_TYPES: "VLAN"

```



```
TENANT_VLAN_RANGES: <START>:<END> # arbitrary VLAN range***
ENABLE_JUMBO_FRAMES: True
```



Note VLAN range overlap on the physical network could occur if a hardware VTEP is configured on a top of rack (ToR) switch. (VTEPs are Virtual Extensible Local Area Network (VXLAN) tunnel end points.)

NFV Parameters

```
NFV_HOSTS: ALL
# Only enabled when NFV_HOSTS has an info
#####
## Only 2 Values allowed is: 2M or 1G (defaults to 2M)
#VM_HUGEPAGE_SIZE: 2M or 1G

## Percentagae of huge pages assigned to VM
## On NFV_HOSTS enabled hosts, VM memory can be a mix of regular pages and huge
## pages. This setting sets the ratio. By default, all VM memories (100%)
## has huge pages.
## Only input of type integer is allowed, in the range of 0-100 (including 0 and 100)
# values < 100 is only supported for mechanism driver of openvswitch or ACI
#VM_HUGEPAGE_PERCENTAGE: 100
```

VMTP Parameters

```
VMTP_VALIDATION parameters: #Required if vmtp is enabled
VMTP_VALIDATION:
  VTS_NET:          #Required if VMTP is enabled for VTS (for VTS only this block is
needed)
  ENABLED: <true or false>
```

Networking Parameters

```
NETWORKING:
...
networks:
...
-
vlan_id: <VLAN to carry VTS tenant traffic>    # required for VTS
subnet: <subnet IP cidr>
gateway: <tenant GW IP>
pool:
- "<begin tenant IP> to <end tenant IP>"      # ***
segments:
- tenant
```



Note The tenant network pool size has to take into account the IP addresses that are statically assigned through the VTS VTSR VM bootstrap configuration. For more information, see the [Installing Cisco VTS](#)

Cisco VTS Parameters

```
VTS_PARAMETERS:
VTS_USERNAME: 'admin'                # Required to be 'admin'
VTS_PASSWORD: <VTC UI password>
VTS_NCS_IP:   <VTC mx-net IP>        # VTC mx-net VIP for VTC HA (cannot be in mx-net pool
```

```

    range)
VTS_SITE_UUID: <VTS site uuid> # VTS SITE UUID mandatory VTS parameter (Unique Pod UUID
to indicate
                                which pod the VTS is controlling)
VTC_SSH_USERNAME: '<vtc_ssh_username>' # Required parameter when VTS Day0 is enabled or
running NFVbench and/or VMTP
VTC_SSH_PASSWORD: '<vtc_ssh_password>' # Required parameter when VTS Day0 is enabled or
running NFVbench and/or VMTP

VTS_Day0_PARAMETERS:
VTS_2.5 mandates the VTC inventory generation and day0 configuration for VTF's to register.
without VTS_DAY0 the cloud is not operational as VTF does not register to VTC. Hence all
cloud operations fail
This is a boolean variable set as True or False. If set True, VTC day0 can be configured
by the CiscoVIM Installer
By default values is 'False', i.e. if VTS_DAY0 is not set, the orchestrator sets it internally
to 'False'
VTS_DAY0: '<True|False>'

## Optional, BGP_ASN:
    BGP_ASN: int # Optional, min=1, max=65535; if it is not defined, the default to 23
## Optional, MANAGED:
    MANAGED : <TRUE OR FALSE> #Optional; if it is true, tor_info in SERVERS becomes mandatory,
CONFIGURE_TORS under
                                TORSWITCHINFO should be false and VTS deployment mode is
managed.

```

**Note**

The mx-net IP pool configuration must take into account the IP addresses that are allocated to the VTC (VTS_NCS_IP). For more information, see the [Installing Cisco VTS](#)

Enabling ACI in Cisco VIM

Cisco VIM integrates the Opflex ML2 plugin (in Unified mode) to manage the tenant VLANs dynamically, as VMs come and go in the cloud. In addition, Cisco VIM supports the administrator driven automated workflow to provision the provider networks. In Cisco VIM, this is supported on a C-series based Fullon or micropod running with Cisco VIC 1227.

VIM orchestrator configures the day-0 aspects of the ACI fabric, along with the Opflex ML2 plugin integration. The only exception is the manual configuration of L3 out.

Before you begin

As Cisco VIM does the day-0 configuration of the ACI, following are the assumptions that VIM makes for the integration to happen.

- Before the VIM installation the APIC 3.0 controllers running in a cluster of three should be installed and active.
- All spine and leaf switches are booted in ACI mode and discovered under Fabric Inventory. The number of leaf switches cannot be changed after the initial install.

The IP address should be assigned to each device from the TEP_ADDRESS_POOL.



Serial Number	Pod ID	Node ID	Node Name	Rack Name	Model	Role	IP	Decommissioned	Supported Model	SSL Certificate
SAL18432XZK	1	201	spine1		N9K-C9336PQ	spine	10.0.112.94/32	False	True	yes
FD021071PSA	1	102	leaf2		N9K-C93180YC-EX	leaf	10.0.112.64/32	False	True	yes
FD021081ZV9	1	101	leaf1		N9K-C93180YC-EX	leaf	10.0.112.95/32	False	True	yes

- Network should be designed such that the management node and controllers are reachable to APIC controllers.
- ACIINFRA a new networking segment is introduced for ACI policy management; ACIINFRA segment should not overlap with the VLANID across the infrastructure
- Tunnel end point address pool (TEP_ADDRESS_POOL) is set to ACI default at 10.0.0.0/16; care should be taken not to assign this address space anywhere else in the cloud.
- Multicast address pool is set to ACI default at 225.0.0.0/15; care should be taken not to assign this address space anywhere else in the cloud.
- ACIINFRA VLANID, the TEP_ADDRESS_POOL, and the multicast address pool are immutable for the lifecycle of the infrastructure.
- Pre-provision of L3 out API network is done before the VIM install as listed:
 - Create installer tenant and VRF and provide the name of it in setup_data
 - Create L3out routed outside object and provide its name in the setup_data
 - Ensure, that this api-l3out must be associated to the tenant VRF.



Note The L3-out object for OpenStack API network needs to be consistently named that is Name of the L3 Outside object must be the same as the name provided for its corresponding External Network Instance Profile. Example: if you provide api_l3out_network: api-l3out in setup_data, then your dn for the api network should resolve to something like the following:
cvim-installer-tenant|uni/tn-cvim-installer-tenant/out-api-l3out/instP-api-l3out.



Note By default optimised DHCP and optimised metadata services are deployed with ACI integration.



Note The plugin automation configures DHCP and Metadata agents in optimized mode. There is no option provided in setup_data to change that setting in the current implementation.

Run the following setup_data in the VIM to add a new APICINFO:

```
APICINFO:
  apic_hosts: '<ip1|host1>:[port], <ip2|host2>:[port], <ip3|host3>:[port] ' # max of 3, min of 1,
  not 2; reconfigurable
  apic_username: # common across the 3;
```

```

    apic_password:          # common across the 3;
    apic_system_id:         # string max length of 8
    apic_resource_prefix: string e.g. cvim-1 # max length of 6
    apic_tep_address_pool: 10.0.0.0/16 # static today
    multicast_address_pool: 225.0.0.0/15 # static, today
    apic_pod_id: <int>      #All(int, Range(min=1, max=65535)),
    apic_installer_tenant: # String, max length 32
    apic_installer_vrf:    # string (max length32) this is the VRF which is associated with the
pre-provisioned API L3out
    api_l3out_network:      # String, max length 32
# mgmt_l3out_network: # String, max length 32 (optional)
NOTE: mgmt_l3out_network and mgmt_l3out_vrf MUST coexist together if defined
# mgmt_l3out_vrf: # String, max length 32 (optional)
NOTE: mgmt_l3out_network and mgmt_l3out_vrf MUST coexist together if defined

```

As the APIC manages the Leaf switches, its mandatory to define the Leaf switches in the following format:

TORSWITCHINFO: (mandatory)

```

SWITCHDETAILS:
-
  hostname: <leaf-hostname-1>
  vpc_peer_keepalive: <leaf-hostname-2>
  vpc_domain: 1 # Must be unique across pairs
  br_mgmt_port_info: 'eth1/27' # br_mgmt_* attributes must exist on at least one pair
  br_mgmt_vlan_info: '3401'
  node_id: <int> # unique across switches
-
  hostname: <leaf-hostname-2>
  vpc_peer_keepalive: <leaf-hostname-1>
  vpc_domain: 1
  br_mgmt_port_info: 'eth1/27' # br_mgmt_* attributes must exist on at least one pair
  br_mgmt_vlan_info: '3401'
  node_id: <int> # unique across switches
-
  hostname: <leaf-hostname-3>
  vpc_peer_keepalive: <leaf-hostname-4>
  vpc_domain: 2 # Must be unique across pairs
  node_id: <int> # unique across switches
-
  hostname: <leaf-hostname-4>
  vpc_peer_keepalive: <leaf-hostname-3>
  vpc_domain: 2
  node_id: <int> # unique across switches
-
  hostname: <leaf-hostname-5>
  node_id: <int> # unique across switches
  br_mgmt_port_info: 'eth1/27, eth1/30' # br_mgmt_* attributes must exist on at least one pair,
only if info is not in peer
  br_mgmt_vlan_info: '3401'

```

CVIM orchestrator does the day-0 configuration of the ACI. The SERVERS section of the setup_data needs to be augmented to include the server and the switch port associations as shown in the following steps:

```

c32-control-1.cisco.com:
  cimc_info: {cimc_ip: 172.26.229.67}
  management_ip: 192.168.37.17
  rack_info: {rack_id: RackC}
  tor_info: {<leaf-hostname-1>: eth1/15, <leaf-hostname-2>: eth1/15}
c32-control-2.cisco.com:
  cimc_info: {cimc_ip: 172.26.229.68}
  management_ip: 192.168.37.18

```

```

    rack_info: {rack_id: RackC}
    tor_info: {<leaf-hostname-1>: eth1/16, <leaf-hostname-2>: eth1/16}
c32-control-3.cisco.com:
    cimc_info: {cimc_ip: 172.26.229.69}
    management_ip: 192.168.37.19
    rack_info: {rack_id: RackC}
    tor_info: {<leaf-hostname-1>: eth1/17, <leaf-hostname-2>: eth1/17}
c32-compute-1.cisco.com:
    cimc_info: {cimc_ip: 172.26.229.70}
    management_ip: 192.168.37.20
    rack_info: {rack_id: RackC}
    tor_info: {<leaf-hostname-3>: eth1/18, <leaf-hostname-4>: eth1/18}
In the case of Intel 710 Based full on BOM the corresponding configuration looks as follows:
INTEL_NIC_SUPPORT: True
INTEL_SRIOV_VFS: 32 -7 Only for SRIOV
....
c32-control-1.cisco.com: cimc_info: {cimc_ip: 172.26.229.67}
management_ip: 192.168.37.17 rack_info: {rack_id: RackC} tor_info: {<leaf-hostname-1>: eth1/15,
<leaf-hostname-2>: eth1/15}
dp_tor_info: {<leaf-hostname-1>: eth1/19, <leaf-hostname-2>: eth1/19}
....
c32-compute-1.cisco.com: cimc_info: {cimc_ip: 172.26.229.70}
management_ip: 192.168.37.20 rack_info: {rack_id: RackC} tor_info: {<leaf-hostname-3>: eth1/15,
<leaf-hostname-4>: eth1/15}
dp_tor_info: {<leaf-hostname-3>: eth1/16, <leaf-hostname-4>: eth1/16}
sriov_tor_info: {<leaf-hostname-3>: eth1/17, <leaf-hostname-4>: eth1/17} 7 Assuming SRIOV is turned
on
....
c32-storage-1.cisco.com: cimc_info: {cimc_ip: 172.26.229.70}
management_ip: 192.168.37.20 rack_info: {rack_id: RackC} tor_info: {<leaf-hostname-3>: eth1/25,
<leaf-hostname-4>: eth1/25}

```

Additionally the mechanism_driver needs to be "aci" and ACINFRA section needs to be defined in the networks section.

Note that SRIOV is not supported for ACI based installs.

MECHANISM_DRIVERS: aci TENANT_NETWORK_TYPES: "VLAN"

TENANT_VLAN_RANGES: <START>:<END> # arbitrary VLAN range*** NFV

Networking Parameters

NETWORKING:

```

networks:
- segments: [aciinfra]
  vlan_id: user_defined_unique_vlan_id. This vlan should not overlap with any of the vlans defined
in setup data; new item
other segments same as OVS/VLAN.

```

Note Refer to the ACI documentation for usage of L3out external network that is consumed by VMTP below. Also, ensure that the L3 out routed configuration is provisioned in the ACI "common" tenant.

We support execution of VMTP for external network with ACI in place. For the VMTP the NET_NAME key for EXT_NET needs to match the name of the L3out for external network

VMTP_VALIDATION:

EXT_NET:

NET_NAME: <name of L3out for the external network>

Support for Provider Networks in ACI OpFlex plugin integration (3.0) does not currently support a fully automated workflow to provision Provider Networks in neutron. CVIM has provided a utility that will support provisioning neutron provider networks.

- After the installer has completed deployment, ensure that Fabric Access policies for the external link from the border leaf switches have been created manually. This is the link that will carry the L2 traffic between the external ToRs

and the border leaf switches. These may be configured as desired (direct PC, PC or VPC). This is typically a one-time admin setup.

- Create a neutron network and subnet in the OpenStack tenant as usual. This is the provider subnet that will be carried through L2 into the fabric. Do not provide segmentation_id. Enable DHCP.
- Run the following command to provision the provider network in ACI:

```
cd installer-<tagid>/tools
./apic_create_provider_net.py -netid <neutron-provider-net-id> --staticpath
<path-to-external-interface-on-borderleaf>
--segmentationid <vlan-id> --tenantid <openstack-tenant-id>
```

Setting of Memory Oversubscription Usage

Cloud allows you for over-subscription of resources (CPU, Memory, storage). The memory oversubscription value that is set to is 1.5. Cisco VIM gives the flexibility to change the default values at the start of the install. In Cisco VIM, you can adjust the memory oversubscription value between 1.0 to 4.0.

Following are the steps to set the NOVA_RAM_ALLOCATION_RATIO on fresh install.

Run the following command to set the NOVA_RAM_ALLOCATION_RATIO:

```
# cd installer-<tagid>/openstack-configs/
# update NOVA_RAM_ALLOCATION_RATIO value in openstack_config.yaml
```

What to do next

Once the NOVA_RAM_ALLOCATION_RATIO is done continue with the rest of the steps as planned for installation

Disabling Management Node Accessibility to Cloud API Network

Cisco VIM provides cloud connectivity verification from the data and control plane point of view using tools like cloud-sanity, VMTP, and NFVbench, which are typically run from the Management node. For these tools to work, reachability to the Cloud API, external, and provider network is a must.

From release Cisco VIM 2.4.3 onwards, you can set the MGMTNODE_EXTAPI_REACH variable to True in the setup_data file to override the need to ensure reachability of management node from Cloud API, external, and provider network.

For example:

```
MGMTNODE_EXTAPI_REACH: True
```

By default, the MGMTNODE_EXTAPI_REACH variable is set to True. If you do not want to use the MGMTNODE_EXTAPI_REACH variable, you can set it to False as part of the day-0 settings.

**Note**

- The MGMTNODE_EXTAPI_REACH variable must be set during the initial install, and cannot be changed later.
- You must ensure that the Cloud API, external, and provider network are properly routable, as Cisco VIM cannot automatically validate the same.

When MGMTNODE_EXTAPI_REACH is set to True, features such as VMTP and NFVBench are no longer accessible from the management node.

Enabling NFVBench on Cisco VIM

This section describes how to setup and use NFVBench with Cisco VIM.

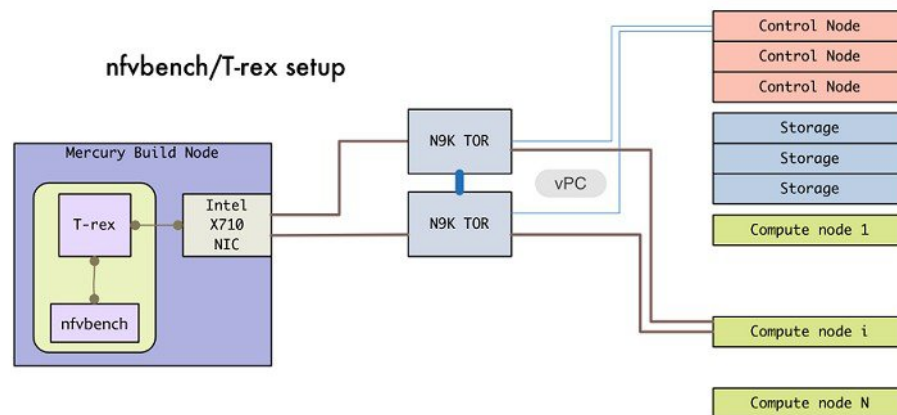
Once the pre-requisites for the management node hardware (Intel NIC) are met, add the NFVBench configurations in the setup_data.yaml. By default, NFVBench configuration is not enabled in Cisco VIM 2.0.

Before you begin

- NFVBench offering in Cisco VIM, requires an extra Intel NIC (Intel X710 NIC (4 x 10G) or Intel XL710 (2x40G)) to be installed on the management node.
- To interact with Intel NIC, TRex traffic generator uses DPDK interface, and makes use of hardware instead of just software to generate packets. This approach is more scalable and enables NFVBench to perform tests without software limitations.

If your NIC has more than two ports, use the first two ports only. Connect the first port to the first ToR switch (order is given by setup_data.yaml) and the second port to the second TOR switch. In case of only one ToR switch connect the first two ports to it as shown in the NFVBench Topology figure.

Figure 41: NFVBench topology setup



Step 1

To enable the NFVBench, set the following command:

```
NFVBENCH:
  enabled: True      # True or False
  tor_info: {switch_a_hostname: ethx/y, switch_b_hostname: ethx/y} # mandatory
```

```

# tor_info: {switch_c_hostname: 'etha/b,ethx/y'} # use if there is only one TOR switch
vtep_vlans: vlan_id1,vlan_id2 # mandatory only when mechanism driver is VTS, or tenant type is
VXLAN
# nic_ports: int1,int2 # Optional input, indicates which 2 of the 4 ports in the 10G
intel NIC ports on the management node is used by NFVBENCH tool to send and receive
traffic. If nothing is specified, the tool assumes it is Port 1,2 i.e. the first 2
ports will be used

# nic_slot: <int> # Optional, defaults to 1st set of unbonded pair of NIC ports in an Intel 710 or
520
card the code finds; Via this option, one can choose to run NFVBench via XL710, 520 or X710 card

# Note: if nic_ports are defined, then nic_slot has to be defined and vice-versa
# Please refer to the VTS_PARAMETERS and TORSWITCHINFO if NFVBench is enabled
# Required when mechanism driver is VTS
VTS_PARAMETERS:
...
VTS_NCS_IP: '<vtc_ssh_username>' # Required parameter when VTS enabled
VTC_SSH_USERNAME: '<vtc_ssh_username>' # Mandatory for NFVBench
VTC_SSH_PASSWORD: '<vtc_ssh_password>' # Mandatory for NFVBench
VTS_SITE_UUID : '<vtc_site_uuid>' # Mandatory if VTS is enabled (Unique Pod UUID to indicate
which pod the VTS is controlling)
# Minimal settings always required with NFVBench
TORSWITCHINFO:
CONFIGURE_TORS: True
...
SWITCHDETAILS:
- hostname: <switch_a_hostname>
  username: admin
  password: <password>
  ssh_ip: <ssh access to the switch a>

- hostname: <switch_b_hostname>
  username: admin
  password: <password>
  ssh_ip: <ssh access to the switch b>

```

The `tor_info` provides the information to configure the TOR switches. Two ports specified by interfaces will be configured in trunk mode in the same port-channel **po**. NFVBench needs the login details to access ToR details and retrieve TX/RX counters. Manual configuration is required if the 'CONFIGURE_TORS' is set to 'True'.

With VTS as mechanism driver additional settings are needed. NFVBench needs access to VTS NCS to perform cleanup after it detaches traffic generator port from VTS. Also a pair of VTEP VLANs is required for VLAN to VxLAN mapping. Value can be any random VLAN ID. Note that `vtep_vlans` field is required if VxLAN is used as encapsulation without VTS.

Step 2 To do manual configuration on the ToRs, we recommend you to perform the following configurations:

```

interface <port-channel>
  switchport mode trunk
  switchport trunk allowed vlan <3000-3049>
interface Ethernetx/y
  switchport mode trunk
  switchport trunk allowed vlan <3000-3049>
channel-group <a>

```


NFV Host Configuration

NFV Host configuration describes how to configure NFV hosts and Cisco VIM monitoring.

Cisco VIM supports CPU pinning and huge page on the compute nodes. To enable non-uniform memory access (NUMA), you can use ALL (case insensitive) to configure all compute nodes. For VTS and VPP/VLAN, only the value of ALL is allowed. For OVS/VLAN, alternatively, you can list the compute nodes where NUMA must be enabled.

```
# For VPP and VTS, only NFV_HOSTS: ALL is allowed
NFV_HOSTS: ALL
or
NFV_HOSTS: ['compute-server-1']
```

By default, hyper-threading is enabled across compute nodes in Cisco VIM. Based on certain VNF characteristics, Cisco VIM offers user the capability to disable hyper-threading across the pod on day-0. You can also disable it on a single compute node on day-n, updating the setup_data and doing remove or add of compute nodes (see Utilizing NUMA features in Cisco NFV Infrastructure section in the Cisco VIM Admin Guide for details on day-n operation). To disable hyper-threading, update the setup_data with the following name or value pair before starting the installation.

```
DISABLE_HYPERTHREADING: True or False; this is optional and default value is false.
```

Install Mode

Cisco VIM can be deployed on the setup in one of the following install modes:

1. Connected-In this mode, the setup must be connected to Internet to fetch artifacts and docker images.
2. Dis-connected: In this mode, Cisco VIM is not connected to Internet. The artifacts and docker images are loaded from USB device.

Based on the deployment type, select the install mode as connected or disconnected.

```
# Install Mode: connected/disconnected
INSTALL_MODE: connected
```

Enabling NFVIMON on Cisco VIM

The Cisco VIM solution uses Cisco NFVI Monitor (NFVIMON) to monitor the health and performance of the NFVI. This includes monitoring both the physical and logical components of one or multiple NFVI pods. The NFVIMON feature enables extensive monitoring and collection of performance data for various components of the cloud infrastructure including Cisco UCS blade and rack servers, service profiles, Nexus top of rack switches, fabric connections, and also the OpenStack instances. The monitoring system is designed such that it can monitor single or multiple pods from a single management system. NFVIMON is enabled by extending the setup_data.yaml file with relevant information. Also, NFVIMON can be enabled on an existing pod, through the reconfigure option. Then, the pod is added as a VIM resource to be monitored in a Control Center.

NFVIMON consists of four components: dispatcher, collector, resource manager (RM), and control-center with Cisco Zenpacks (CZ). Integration of NFVIMON into VIM is loosely coupled and the VIM automation only deals with installing the minimal software piece (dispatcher) needed to monitor the pod. The installing of the other NFVIMON components (collector, resource manager (RM) and control-center with Cisco Zenpacks (CZ), are outside the scope of the current install guide.

Before you Begin

Ensure that you have engaged with the account team for services engagement on the planning and installation of the NFVIMON accessories along with its network requirements. The image information of collector, Resource Manager (RM) and control-center with Cisco Zenpacks (CZ) is available only through Cisco Advance

Services. At a high level, have a node designated to host a pair of collector VM for each pod, and a common node to host CC and RM VMs, which can aggregate and display monitoring information from multiple pods.

In terms of networking, the collectors VMs need to have two interfaces: an interface in br_mgmt of the VIM, and another interface that is routable, which can reach the VIM Installer REST API and the RM VMs. As the collector VM is in an independent node, four IPs from the management network of the pod should be pre-planned and reserved. Install steps of the collector, resource manager (RM) and control-center with Cisco Zenpacks (CZ) are Cisco advance services activities.

Installation of NFVIMON Dispatcher

The dispatcher is the only component in NFVIMON that is managed by Cisco VIM orchestrator. While the dispatcher acts as a conduit to pass OpenStack information of the pod to the collectors, it is the Cisco Zenpack sitting in the controller node, that gathers the node level information.

To enable dispatcher as part of the VIM Install, update the setup_data with the following information:

```
#Define the PODNAME
PODNAME: <PODNAME with no space>; ensure that this is unique across all the pods
NFVIMON:
  MASTER:
    # Master Section
    admin_ip: <IP address of Control Centre VM>
  COLLECTOR:
    # Collector Section
    management_vip: <VIP for ceilometer/dispatcher to use> #Should be unique across the VIM
    Pod; Should be part of br_mgmt network
    Collector_VM_Info:
      -
        hostname: <hostname of Collector VM 1>
        password: <password_for_collector_vm1> # max length of 32
        ccuser_password: <password from master for 'ccuser' (to be used for self monitoring)>
      # max length of 32
        admin_ip: <ssh_ip_collector_vm1> # Should be reachable from br_api network
        management_ip: <mgmt_ip_collector_vm1> # Should be part of br_mgmt network
      -
        hostname: <hostname of Collector VM 2>
        password: <password_for_collector_vm2> # max length of 32
        ccuser_password: <password from master for 'ccuser' (to be used for self monitoring)>
      # max length of 32
        admin_ip: <ssh_ip_collector_vm2> # Should be reachable from br_api network
        management_ip: <mgmt_ip_collector_vm2> # Should be part of br_mgmt network
    DISPATCHER:
      rabbitmq_username: admin # Pod specific user for dispatcher module in
      ceilometer-collector

      COLLECTOR_TORCONNECTIONS: # Optional. Indicates the port where the collector is hanging
      off. Recommended when Cisco NCS 5500 is used as ToR
      - tor_info: {po: <int>, switch_a_hostname: ethx/y, switch_b_hostname: ethx/y}
```

To monitor ToR, ensure that the following **TORSWITCHINFO** sections are defined in the setup_data.yaml file.

```
TORSWITCHINFO:
  SWITCHDETAILS:
    -
      hostname: <switch_a_hostname>: # Mandatory for NFVIMON if switch monitoring is
      needed
      username: <TOR switch username> # Mandatory for NFVIMON if switch monitoring is
      needed
      password: <TOR switch password> # Mandatory for NFVBENCH; Mandatory for NFVIMON
      if switch monitoring is needed
      ssh_ip: <TOR switch ssh ip> # Mandatory for NFVIMON if switch monitoring is
      needed
```

```

-
  ....
  hostname: <switch_b_hostname>:      # Mandatory for NFVIMON if switch monitoring is
needed                               # needed
  username: <TOR switch username>      # Mandatory for NFVIMON if switch monitoring is
needed                               # needed
  password: <TOR switch password>      # Mandatory for NFVIMON if switch monitoring is
needed                               # needed
  ssh_ip: <TOR switch ssh ip>          # Mandatory for NFVIMON if switch monitoring is
needed                               # needed
  ....

```



Note TORSWITCH monitoring is disabled when running Cisco VIM with ACI plugin enabled.

Enabling CVIMMON on Cisco VIM

The Cisco VIM solution offers the use of Cisco CVIM Monitor (CVIMMON) to monitor the health and performance of NFVI. This includes monitoring both the physical and logical (openstack services) components at each NFVI pod level.

The CVIMMON feature enables extensive monitoring and collection of performance data for various components of the cloud infrastructure, and also the OpenStack instances. The monitoring system is designed at a single pod level.

CVIMMON is enabled by extending the `setup_data.yaml` file with relevant information.

You can enable CVIMMON on an existing pod that is installed with CVIM 2.4.3 or later, through the reconfigure option.

The components of CVIMMON are as follows:

- **CVIM_MON:** It provides the base functionality of monitoring and KPIs.
- **CVIM_TRAP:** It is enabled using SNMP. This component is available only if CVIM_MON is enabled.
You can enable SNMP at the server or infrastructure level.
- **SERVER-MON:** If SNMP is enabled, you can enable SERVER_MON to use SNMP from the Cisco IMC of Cisco UCS c-series server. This component is available only if the SNMP option is enabled.

Install the CVIMMON using the standard Cisco VIM installer after enabling it in the `setup_data` configuration file. It is assumed that the pod is newly installed with Cisco VIM 2.4.3 or later. To install CVIM-MON, CVIM_MON and PODNAME keys must be added to the `setup_data.yaml` file.

The CVIM_MON key has:

- Boolean value indicating whether CVIM-MON is enabled.
- `Polling_intervals`: It is a dictionary having three different levels of data collection frequencies. Defining `polling_intervals` is optional and a default value is used if the `polling_interval` is not defined.

PODNAME is mandatory for CVIMMON.

CVIM-MON, CVIM-Trap and SERVER-MON can be installed by the standard CVIM installer, if they are enabled in the `setup_data` configuration file.

The CVIM_TRAP key has:

- Boolean value indicating whether CVIM_TRAP is enabled. If CVIM_TRAP is enabled, CVIM-MON must be enabled.
- List of SNMP managers to send the SNMP traps. This list contains SNMPv2 or SNMPv3 managers. For SNMPv2, community and port field can be set. For SNMPv3, the engine_id and list of users must be specified, where the Engine_id is the EngineContextID which is used to send trap of the SNMP Manager.



Note SNMP-Traps will be sent without setting any authentication or security engine_id for the user.

Property Group and Name	Values	Default Value	Description
PODNAME:	<string>	(required)	Must be provided for identifying each pod if CVIM_MON is enabled.
CVIM_MON: enabled	true false	false	A boolean indicating whether CVIM-MON is enabled or not. Set to True to enable CVIM_MON.
CVIM_MON: polling_intervals:	-	-	Metric collection frequency 10s <= low frequency <med frequency < high frequency <=1 hour
low_frequency	1m to 1h	1m	Must be higher than med_frequency integer following with time sign (m/h)
medium_frequency	30s to 1h	30s	Must be higher than high_frequency integer following with time sign (s/m/h)
high_frequency	10s to 1h	10s	Integer following with time sign (s/m/h)
SNMP:enabled	true false	false	A Boolean indicating whether CVIM-Trap is enabled or not. If true, CVIM_MON:enabled must also be set to true.
SNMP:managers:	-	-	A list of up to 3 SNMP managers to send traps

Property Group and Name	Values	Default Value	Description
address	<ipv4>	(required)	IPv4 address of the SNMP manager
port	1-65535	162	Optional, port to send traps
version	v2c v3	v2c	SNMP manager version
community	<string>	public	Used for SNMPv2c
SNMP:managers:users:			Required for SNMPv3, up to 3 users.
engine_id	<hexadecimal string>	(required v3)	ContextEngineId (unique across all managers) Minimum length is 5 and max length is 32 Cannot be all 00s or FFs; and cannot start with 0x
name	<string>	(required v3)	User name
auth_key	<string>	(required v3)	Authorization password, must be eight characters at least
authentication	SHA MD5	SHA	Authentication protocol
privacy_key	<str>	(auth_key)	Encryption key
encryption	'AES128' 'AES192' 'AES256'	'AES128'	Encryption protocol
SERVER_MON: enabled	true false	false	Enable SNMP traps for CIMC faults (UCS C-series only)
SERVER_MON: host_info:	'ALL' or list of servers	'ALL'	Specifies which UCS-C servers should be monitored

Enabling or Disabling Autobackup of Management Node

Cisco VIM supports the backup and recovery of the management node. By default, the feature is enabled. Auto-snapshots of the management node happens during pod management operation. You can disable the autobackup of the management node.

To enable or disable the management node, update the setup_data.yaml file as follows:

```
# AutoBackup Configuration
# Default is True
#autobackup: <True or False>
```

Enabling Custom Policy for VNF Manager

Some of the VNF managers operates, using specific OpenStack features that require the admin role. Cisco VIM introduces a feature to enable non-admin role for VNF managers (such as Cisco ESC). VNF manager is used to operate and manage tenant VMs in the OpenStack cloud, with minimally enhanced privileges.

To enable this option, the administrator needs to add the following line in the `setup_data.yaml`:

```
ENABLE_ESC_PRIV: True # optional; default is false
```

Forwarding ELK logs to External Syslog Server

Cisco VIM supports backup and recovery of the management node, to keep the process predictable and avoid loss of logs. The software supports the capability of forwarding the ELK logs to multiple external syslog server. It supports Minimum of 1 and maximum of 3 external syslog servers.

Before launching the installation, update the `setup_data.yaml` file with the following information:

```
#####
## SYSLOG EXPORT SETTINGS
#####
SYSLOG_EXPORT_SETTINGS:
-
  remote_host: <Syslog_ipv4_or_v6_addr> # required IP address of the remote syslog
  server protocol : udp # defaults to udp
  facility : <string> # required; possible values local[0-7]or user
  severity : <string> suggested value: debug>
  port : <int>; # defaults, port number to 514
  clients : 'ELK' # defaults and restricted to ELK;

  remote_host: <Syslog_ipv4_or_v6_addr> # IP address of the remote syslog #2 (optional)
  server protocol : udp # defaults to udp
  facility : <string> # required; possible values local[0-7]or user severity : <string>
  suggested value: debug>
  port : <int>; # defaults, port number to 514 clients : 'ELK' # defaults and restricted to
  ELK;

# Please note other than the remote host info, most of the other info is not needed; Also
the client list is restricted to ELK only
```

With this configuration, the ELK logs are exported to an external syslog server. You can add this configuration to a pod that is already up and running. For more details, refer to Forwarding ELK logs to External Syslog Server section in the admin guide.

Support of NFS for ELK Snapshot

Cisco VIM optionally supports NFS for ELK snapshots. In this configuration, the remote location specified in the configuration has to allow user elasticsearch (2020) and group mercury (500) to read/write into the path specified in `remote_path` of the `remote_host` server.

Before launching the installation, update the `setup_data.yaml` file with the following information:

```
#####
## ES_REMOTE_BACKUP
#####
#ES_REMOTE_BACKUP:          # Set if Elasticsearch backups will use a remote host
#  service: 'NFS'           # Only value supported is NFS
```

```
# remote_host: <ip_addr> # IP of the NFS server
# remote_path: </root/es_remote> # Path to location of the backups in the remote server
```

With this configuration, the ELK snapshots are hosted at the remote NFS location, thereby ensuring that the management node does not run out of disk space. You can add this configuration to a pod that is already up and running. For more details, refer to Support of NFS for ELK Snapshot section in the admin guide.

Support for TTY Logging

Cisco VIM supports enabling of TTY logging on the management node and all of the cluster hosts through the option in the `setup_data.yaml` file. By default, the TTY logging feature is not enabled. The feature is made available only at the time of installation. If `SYSLOG_EXPORT_SETTINGS` is configured, the TTY audit messages are available in local syslog, Kibana dashboard, and remote syslog.

For the TTY logging to take effect in the management node, reboot the management node based on the customer downtime window.

At the end of the installation, the following message is displayed: Management node needs to be rebooted for TTY Logging to take effect.

Before launching the installation, update the `setup_data.yaml` file with the following information:

```
# TTY Logging with pam.d and auditd. Events available in Kibana and remote syslog, if syslog
  export is enabled
ENABLE_TTY_LOGGING: <True or False> # default value is False
```

Configuring Additional VIM Administrators

Cisco VIM supports management of VIM Administrators. VIM administrator has the permission to login to the management through SSH or the console using the configured password. Administrators have their own accounts. After the VIM administrator account creation, the administrator can manage their own password using the Linux “passwd” command. You can change the `vim_admins[]` parameter to add and remove VIM administrators during reconfiguration, while the passwords for existing accounts remains unchanged.

Before launching the installation, update the `setup_data.yaml` file with the following information:

```
vim_admins:
- vim_admin_username: <username>
  vim_admin_password_hash: <sha512-password-hash>#
- vim_admin_username: <username>
  vim_admin_password_hash: <sha512-password-hash>
- vim_admin_username: <username>
  vim_admin_password_hash: <sha512-password-hash>
```

The value of password hash must be in the standard sha512 format.

With the preceding configuration, administrators will have access to a shell with system privileges on the management node.

Configuring Support for Read-only OpenStack Role

By default, Cisco VIM deployment of OpenStack supports two user roles: admin and user. Admin have privilege to view and change all OpenStack resources including system and project resources. Users have privileges to view and change only project resources.

Optionally, Cisco VIM provides OpenStack user role which is read-only or readonly. Read-only users can view the project resources, but cannot make any changes. Use the optional parameter `ENABLE_READONLY_ROLE` to enable this feature.

The admin can only assign the readonly role using the Horizon dashboard or OpenStack CLI, to the target user for accessing each project. A user can be given the readonly role to multiple projects.



Note

Ensure that the admin role is not given for the user having only readonly access, as the conflict of access will not constrain the user to read-only operations.

Enabling this feature provides the following enhancements to the Cisco VIM Pod.

- "readonly" role is added to the OpenStack deployment.
- OpenStack service policies are adjusted to grant read permissions such as "list" and "show", but not "create", "update", or "delete".
- "**All Projects**" tab is added to the Horizon interface. This allows the readonly user to see all instances for which the user have access. Under the **Project** tab, you can see the resources for a single project. You can change the projects using the Project pulldown in the header.

Before launching the installation, update the `setup_data.yaml` file with the following information:

```
ENABLE_READONLY_ROLE: True
```

With the preceding configuration, the readonly role is created in OpenStack. After deployment, the administrators have the privilege to create new users assigned with this role.



Note

If the `ENABLE_READONLY_ROLE` is False (by default), the readonly role will not have special permissions or restrictions, but have create, update, and delete permissions to project resources similar to that of project member. You need to assign the users with readonly role, when `ENABLE_READONLY_ROLE` is set to True.

VPP Port Mirroring Support

The VPP Port Mirror feature enables you to selectively create a mirror port to a VM. This mirror port detects all the packets sent and received by the VM without having access to the VM. The packets captured in this manner can be saved as pcap files, which can be used for further analysis by tools like Wireshark and so on.

The following CLIs are available in Cisco VIM:

- **vpp-portmirror-create:** Tool to create mirrored ports corresponding to Openstack ports
- **vpp-portmirror-delete:** Tool to delete mirrored ports
- **vpp-portmirror-list:** Tool to get a list of current mirrored port

In addition, the VPP port mirror tools perform the following tasks:

- Checks if the port specified is a valid neutron port with valid UUID pattern
- Checks if there is a corresponding Vhost interface in the VPP instance for the neutron port specified
- Checks if the port has already mirrored

VPP Port Mirroring Usage

Step 1 Identify the VM that you want to monitor and the compute host on which it runs.

From the Management node, execute the following:

```
#cd /root/openstack-configs
# source openrc
# openstack server show vm-7
```

Field	Value
OS-DCF:diskConfig	AUTO
OS-EXT-AZ:availability_zone	nova
OS-EXT-SRV-ATTR:host	k07-compute-1
OS-EXT-SRV-ATTR:hypervisor_hostname	k07-compute-1
OS-EXT-SRV-ATTR:instance_name	instance-0000004d
OS-EXT-STS:power_state	Running
OS-EXT-STS:task_state	None
OS-EXT-STS:vm_state	active
OS-SRV-USG:launched_at	2018-05-10T02:40:58.000000
OS-SRV-USG:terminated_at	None
accessIPv4	
accessIPv6	
addresses	net1=10.0.1.4
config_drive	
created	2018-05-10T02:40:37Z
flavor	m1.medium (ac4bdd7f-ff05-4f0d-90a5-d7376e5e4c75)
hostId	8e7f752ab34153d99b17429857f86e30ecc24c830844e9348936bafc
id	46e576c1-539b-419d-a7d3-9bdde3f58e35
image	cirros (e5e7e9d8-9585-46e3-90d5-4ead5c2a94c2)
key_name	None
name	vm-7
os-extended-volumes:volumes_attached	[]
progress	0
project_id	434cf25d4b214398a7445b4fafa8956a
properties	
security_groups	[{'name': 'my_sec_group'}]
status	ACTIVE
updated	2018-05-10T02:40:58Z
user_id	57e3f11eaf2b4541b2371c83c70c2686

Step 2 Identify the neutron port that corresponds to the interface that you want to mirror.

```
# openstack port list | grep 10.0.1.4
| ed8caee2-f56c-4156-8611-55dde24f742a | | fa:16:3e:6a:d3:e8 | ip_address='10.0.1.4',
subnet_id='6d780f2c-0eeb-4c6c-a26c-c03f47f37a45' |
```

Step 3 ssh to the target compute node on which the VM is running and join the VPP docker container.

```
# vpp
neutron_vpp_13881 [root@k07-compute-1 /]#
```

The syntax of the Port mirror create tool is as follows:

```
neutron_vpp_13881 [root@k07-compute-1 /]# vpp-portmirror-create
Option -p (--port) requires an argument
-p --port [arg] Port in openstack port uuid format. Required.
-d --debug Enables debug mode
-h --help This page
-n --no-color Disable color output
VPP port mirror utility.
```

Step 4 Create a port mirror using the Neutron port ID identified in Step 2.

The CLI tool displays the mirrored interface name.

```
neutron_vpp_13881 [root@k07-compute-1 /]# vpp-portmirror-create -p ed8caee2-f56c-4156-8611-55dde24f742a
===== [ Port Mirroring ] =====
2018-05-14 22:48:26 UTC [ info] Interface inside vpp is VirtualEthernet0/0/1 for Openstack port:
ed8caee2-f56c-4156-8611-55dde24f742a
2018-05-14 22:48:26 UTC [ info] Port:ed8caee2-f56c-4156-8611-55dde24f742a is now mirrored at taped8caee2
2018-05-14 22:48:26 UTC [ notice] Note! Please ensure to delete the mirrored port when you are done
with debugging
```

Note Use the `--debug` flag to troubleshoot the Linux/VPP commands that are used to set up the port mirror.

Step 5 Use the tap device as a standard Linux interface and use tools such as tcpdump to perform packet capture.

```
neutron_vpp_13881 [root@k07-compute-1 /]# tcpdump -leni taped8caee2
tcpdump: verbose output suppressed, use -v or -vv for full protocol decode
listening on taped8caee2, link-type EN10MB (Ethernet), capture size 262144 bytes
16:10:31.489392 fa:16:3e:6a:d3:e8 > fa:16:3e:0e:58:7b, ethertype IPv4 (0x0800), length 98: 10.0.1.4
> 10.0.1.10: ICMP echo
request, id 32513, seq 25752, length 64
16:10:31.489480 fa:16:3e:0e:58:7b > fa:16:3e:6a:d3:e8, ethertype IPv4 (0x0800), length 98: 10.0.1.10
> 10.0.1.4: ICMP echo
reply, id 32513, seq 25752, length 64
16:10:32.489560 fa:16:3e:6a:d3:e8 > fa:16:3e:0e:58:7b, ethertype IPv4 (0x0800), length 98: 10.0.1.4
> 10.0.1.10: ICMP echo
request, id 32513, seq 25753, length 64
16:10:32.489644 fa:16:3e:0e:58:7b > fa:16:3e:6a:d3:e8, ethertype IPv4 (0x0800), length 98: 10.0.1.10
> 10.0.1.4: ICMP echo
reply, id 32513, seq 25753, length 64
16:10:33.489685 fa:16:3e:6a:d3:e8 > fa:16:3e:0e:58:7b, ethertype IPv4 (0x0800), length 98: 10.0.1.4
> 10.0.1.10: ICMP echo
request, id 32513, seq 25754, length 64
16:10:33.489800 fa:16:3e:0e:58:7b > fa:16:3e:6a:d3:e8, ethertype IPv4 (0x0800), length 98: 10.0.1.10
> 10.0.1.4: ICMP echo
reply, id 32513, seq 25754, length 64
^C
```

Step 6 Obtain a list of all the mirrored ports.

```
neutron_vpp_13881 [root@k07-compute-1 /]# vpp-portmirror-list
VPP interface VPP-side span port Kernel-side span port Neutron port
-----
VirtualEthernet0/0/0 tapcli-0 tap88b637e4 net-vpp.port:88b637e4-43cc-4ea2-8a86-2c9b940408ec
VirtualEthernet0/0/1 tapcli-1 taped8caee2 net-vpp.port:ed8caee2-f56c-4156-8611-55dde24f742a
```

Step 7 Remove the mirrored port.

```
neutron_vpp_13881 [root@k07-compute-1 /]# vpp-portmirror-delete -p ed8caee2-f56c-4156-8611-55dde24f742a
===== [ Port Mirroring Operation ] =====
2018-05-14 23:18:49 UTC [ info] Interface inside vpp is VirtualEthernet0/0/1 for Openstack
port:ed8caee2-f56c-4156-8611-55dde24f742a
```

```
Deleted.
2018-05-14 23:18:49 UTC [ info] Port:ed8caee2-f56c-4156-8611-55dde24f742a is now un-mirrored
```

Setting up VXLAN/EVPN in Cisco VIM

Choose single VXLAN or multi-VXLAN (multi refers to 2) network terminating on the same box on day-0. Two vxlan segments such as vxlan-tenant and vxlan-ecn are defined.

For single VXLAN network, define only the vxlan-tenant. For two-VXLAN network, define vxlan-ecn segment along with vxlan-tenant network.

To enable VXLAN/EVPN in Cisco VIM, define the following in the setup-data file during the Day-0 deployment.

Step 1 In the **Networking** section, define the segment vxlan-tenant.

```
NETWORKING:
...
networks:
...
- # only needed when NETWORK_OPTIONS is vxlan, and TOR is Cisco NCS5500
vlan_id: <2003>
subnet: <191.168.11.0/25>
gateway: <191.168.11.1>
## 'pool' can be defined with single ip or a range of ip
pool:
- <191.168.11.2,191.168.11.5>
- <191.168.11.7 to 191.168.11.12>
- <191.168.11.20>
segments:
- vxlan-tenant
- # only needed when NETWORK_OPTIONS is vxlan, and TOR is Cisco NCS5500, and second VXLAN segment is
  required
vlan_id: <2005>
subnet: <191.165.11.0/25>
gateway: <191.165.11.1>
## 'pool' can be defined with single ip or a range of ip pool:
- <191.165.11.2,191.165.11.5>
- <191.165.11.7 to 191.165.11.12>
- <191.165.11.20>
segments:
- vxlan-ecn
-
```

Step 2 Define the vxlan section under NETWORK_OPTIONS, only allowed for Cisco NCS 5500 as ToR.

```
# Optional, only allowed for NCS-5500 as tor
NETWORK_OPTIONS:
vxlan:
vxlan-tenant:
provider_network_name: <name of provider network>
bgp_as_num: <int value between 1 and 232-1>
bgp_peers: ['ip1', 'ip2'] ---> list of min length 1, Peer Route Reflector IPs
bgp_router_id: 'ip3' ---> The router ID to use for local GoBGP cluster, part of vxlan-tenant network
but not in the pool

vxlan-ecn:
provider_network_name: <name of provider network>
bgp_as_num: <int value between 1 and 232-1>
```

```

    bgp_peers: ['ip1', 'ip2'] ---> list of min length 1, Peer Route Reflector IPs
    bgp_router_id: 'ip3' ---> The router ID to use for local GoBGP cluster, part of vxlan-ecn network
    but not in the pool

```

Step 3 In the **SEVERs** section, define `vxlan_bgp_speaker_ip` for each controller node.

Note The `vxlan_bgp_speaker_ip` belongs to the vxlan network, however, it is not part of the IP pool defined in the vxlan segment.

```

SERVERS:
control-server-1:
...
# bgp_speaker_addresses: {vxlan-tenant: <ip address> # <== optional, only when NETWORK_OPTIONS is
vxlan network, for
    controller node only; IP belongs to the vxlan-tenant network but not part of the pool as
defined in the network section
    vxlan-ecn: <ip address>} # <== optional, only needed for multi-vxlan scenario and only when
NETWORK_OPTIONS is vxlan network,
    for controller nodes only; IP belongs to the vxlan-ecn network but not part of the pool as
defined in the network section

```

Note Setting up the BGP route-reflector and accessing it over the VXLAN network from the three controllers is outside the scope of CVIM automation.

Updating Cisco NFVI Software

The Cisco VIM installer provides a mechanism to update all OpenStack services and some infrastructure services such as RabbitMQ, MariaDB, HAProxy, and VMTP. Updating host-level packages and management node ELK and Cobbler containers are not supported. Updating Cisco NFVI software has minimal service impact because the update runs serially, component-by-component, one node at a time. If errors occur during an update, an automatic rollback will bring the cloud back to its previous state. After an update is completed, check for any functional cloud impacts. If everything is fine, you can commit the update which clears the old containers from the system. Cisco recommends that you commit the update before you perform any other pod management functions. Skipping the commit option might lead to double faults. If you see any functional impact on the cloud, perform a manual rollback to start the old containers again.



Note Cisco NFVI software updates are not supported for registry related containers and authorized_keys. Also, after the management node repo containers are updated, they cannot be rolled back to the older versions because this requires node packages to be deleted, which might destabilize the cloud.



Note Update of Cisco NFVI software is within the same major version, that is from 2.4.1 to 2.4.3, and not from 2.4 to 3.0.

To prevent double faults, a cloud sanity check is done both before and after the update.

To complete the software update, perform the Installing Cisco VIM [m_Install_VIM.ditamap#id_33373](#). If your management node does not have Internet, complete the [m_Preparing_USB_Stick.ditamap#id_38540](#) procedure first, then follow the Cisco VIM installation instructions. Differences between a software update and regular Cisco VIM installation:

- You do not need to modify `setup_data.yaml` like you did during the first installation. In most cases, no modifications are needed.
- You do not need to repeat the Cisco VIM Insight installation.
- Minor differences between NFVI software installation and updates are listed in the installation procedure.

**Note**

After you complete the software update, you must commit it before you can perform any pod management operations. During software updates the following operations are locked: add/remove compute/storage node, replace controllers, and rotate fernet key. Before you commit, you can roll back the update to return the node to its previous software version.

For information about updating the Cisco NFVI software, see *Managing Cisco NFVI* chapter in the Cisco NFV Infrastructure Administrator Guide, Release 2.4

Upgrading Cisco NFVI Software

Cisco VIM's design allows the graceful upgrade of a cloud from version 1.0 (liberty based) to 2.2 (newton based). The seamless process upgrades both OpenStack and infrastructure services to the newer version. As the upgrade involves moving the kernel version (from RHEL 7.2 to 7.4), proper down-time should be planned to upgrade the VIM cloud. The upgrade cause limited service impact, critical components such as controller and storage nodes are upgrade serially, whereas compute nodes are upgraded in a bulk-and-batch manner.

As the OpenStack does not support the skipping of major releases during upgrade from liberty to newton, the VIM upgrade orchestrator internally moves the stack to mitaka as an intermediate step. As part of the upgrade, the REST API server managing the VIM orchestrator also gets upgraded. A script called `vim_upgrade_orchestrator.py` is used to upgrade the cloud. Also, as part of the upgrade, automatic translation (from Liberty to Newton) of the `setup_data.yaml` happens so that it is compatible to the target release version.

**Note**

After you complete the software upgrade you will not be able to roll back to the prior release. During software upgrade all pod management operations are blocked.

For information about upgrading the Cisco NFVI software, see the *"Managing Cisco NFVI" chapter in the Cisco NFV Infrastructure Administrator Guide, Release 2.4.*



CHAPTER 7

Installing Cisco VIM Unified Management



Note Cisco VIM Insight is also known as Cisco VIM Unified Management. They are interchangeable across the guide.

Cisco VIM offers a unified management solution which is available in the subsequent releases.

Cisco VIM Unified Management can be installed on two modes:

- Standalone/non-HA mode on a dedicated node to manage multiple VIM pods.
- Standalone/non-HA mode on the management node to manage a single VIM pod.

You can start the installation in a standalone/non-HA mode initially (on the management node of the pod) or a standalone (BOM) server. If VIM UM is hosted on the node where the VIM management service of a pod is running, ensure that the workspace for Insight is different from that of the installer. Rendition and migration from one install mode to another is easy as the UI interacts to each pod through REST API and very little RBAC information of both the admin and user is maintained in the database. As the UI interacts with the REST API, it is not necessary that the pod should be managed by Insight from day 0. You can register a pod, with an Insight instance after it is up and running.

Also, the UI has two types of Admin: UI Admin and Pod Admin. UI Admin is for the administrators who can add more folks as UI Admin or Pod admin. Pod Admin has privileges only at the pod level, whereas an UI Admin has privileges both at UI and pod level.

Complete the following procedure to install Cisco VIM Insight on the Cisco NFVI management node.

- [Installing Cisco VIM Unified Management with Internet Access, on page 188](#)
- [Installing Cisco VIM Unified Management with SDS, on page 192](#)
- [Installing Cisco VIM Unified Management with LDAP, on page 193](#)
- [Installing Cisco VIM Unified Management Without SMTP, on page 193](#)
- [Installing Cisco VIM Unified Management without Internet Access , on page 195](#)
- [Cisco VIM Insight Post Bootstrap Validation Checks, on page 198](#)
- [VIM UM Admin Login for Standalone Setup, on page 202](#)
- [VIM UM Pod Admin Login for Standalone Setup, on page 202](#)

Installing Cisco VIM Unified Management with Internet Access

Complete the following steps to install Cisco VIM Insight on the Cisco NFVI management node. As security is paramount to pod management, the web-service hosting the single pane of glass is protected through TLS. Following are the steps to get the TLS certificate setup going.

You can select one of the following approaches for the TLS certificate configurations:

1. Provide your own certificate: You can bring in your certificate on the management node and provide the absolute path of .pem and CA certificate files in the insight_setup_data.yaml file. The path must be provided as a value for the key 'PEM_PATH' in the insight_setup_data.yaml file.
2. Generate a new certificate on the node. You can create a new certificate on the node by running the following command:

```
#./tls_insight_cert_gen.py -f <path_to_insight_setup_data.yaml>/insight_setup_data.yaml.
```

This script searches for the 'PEM_PATH' inside the insight_setup_data.yaml. As the path is not provided, it creates a new certificate inside install-dir/openstack-configs.



Note

The self-signed certificate generation utility script is provided for lab/testing deployment only. Ensure that you do not use self-signed certificate generated by this utility for the production deployment.

Before you begin

Complete all Cisco NFVI preparation tasks that are described in [Preparing for Cisco NFVI Installation](#), and the management node that are described [Cisco VIM Management Node Networking](#). The procedure to bootstrap the node hosting the Insight is same as installing the buildnode.iso. Make sure that you plan for a standalone unified management node for production. Click the Yes option if the node is to be used in the production.

Step 1 Enter **ip a** to verify the br_mgmt and br_api interfaces are up and are bound to bond0 and bond1 respectively. For example:

```
$ ip a
br_api: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue state UP link/ether 00:42:68:6f:79:f2
    brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
inet nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn/25 brd nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn scope global br_api valid_lft forever preferred_lft
forever
inet6 fe80::3c67:7aff:fef9:6035/64 scope link valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
bond1: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,MASTER,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue master br_api state UP link/ether
    00:42:68:6f:79:f2 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
br_mgmt: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue state UP link/ether 00:78:88:46:ee:6e
    brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
inet nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn/24 brd nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn scope global br_mgmt valid_lft forever preferred_lft
forever
inet6 fe80::278:88ff:fe46:ee6e/64 scope link valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
bond0: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,MASTER,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue master br_mgmt state UP
link/ether 00:78:88:46:ee:6e brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
```

Note The br_mgmt and br_api interfaces are created when you install the RHEL on the management node in [Installing the Management Node](#).

Step 2 Run the following commands to copy the installer directory and the standalone insight_setup_data.yaml.

- a) Copy the installer dir to a directory in /root/. Start the name of the new directory with Insight-tag_id.

```
# cd /root/
# cp -pr installer-<tag_id> <Insight-tag_id>
```

- b) Copy the Standalone insight_setup_data.yaml. Standalone_EXAMPLE file from the Insight-dir/openstack-configs to any other location on the management node or the BOM.

```
# cp /root/Insight-<tag_id>/openstack-configs/insight_setup_data.yaml.
Standalone_EXAMPLE /root/insight_setup_data.yaml
```

Step 3 Modify the insight setup data according to your requirements.

#Configuration File:

```
#####
# User Defined Configuration File.
# Information in this file is specific to the user setup.
#####

# This file is used as an inventory file to setup Insight Container.

#####
# Registry credentials

#####
REGISTRY_USERNAME: '<username>'
REGISTRY_PASSWORD: '<password>'

# Install Mode: connected/disconnected, Optional parameter; default is connected
INSTALL_MODE: connected

# https_proxy: <Name of the proxy server without https://> ; Optional Parameter for INSTALL_MODE
# Needed for connected install only and not required for disconnected mode.

#####
# Super Admin Username Password
#####

# This user is the default Super Admin of the system and can grant Aaccess to all other users getting
# registered to PODs.
# This is a mandatory field and is required to be filled every time.
UI_ADMIN_USERNAME: '<username>'
UI_ADMIN_EMAIL_ID: '<email_id@domain.com>'

# Please define the mail server off which the Insight email alias works;
# For example, outbound.cisco.com
# Optional: Valid SMTP Server is required for sending mails to the customers. By default, it is set
# as True.
INSIGHT_SMTP_SERVER: <smtp.domain.com>
#INSIGHT_SMTP_PORT: <port no.>
#optional, defaults to 25, if undefined

# for Insight UI, customer needs to create a mailer, so that automated mails come from that alias;
# For example, vim-insight-admin@cisco.com
# Mandatory: You need to create a valid email alias that would be responsible for sending email
# notification for users and UI Admin.
INSIGHT_EMAIL_ALIAS: <Email-Alias@domain.com>
# Optional: Insight Email Alias Password is required if log in on a SMTP server requires authentication.
INSIGHT_EMAIL_ALIAS_PASSWORD: <password> #Optional

#####
```

```
# LDAP Configuration
#####
LDAP_MODE: <True or False>      # Required, True when ldap server is available.
#
# Following LDAP settings are required only when LDAP_MODE is True.
LDAP_SERVER: <IP Address of the LDAP Server>
LDAP_PORT: <port no.>
LDAP_ADMIN: '<user-DN for admin>' # e.g Complete DN of admin user for bind and search. <cn=admin,
dc=example, dc=com>
LDAP_ADMIN_PASSWORD: '<password>' # e.g. password of bind user
LDAP_BASE_DN: '<DN tree for Groups>' # e.g. 'ou=Groups,dc=cisco,dc=com'
LDAP_SECURE: '<True or False>' # For protocol to be followed. True is for ldaps and False is for ldap
# LDAP certificate path for self-signed certificates only;
# Required when LDAP_SECURE is True for self-signed certificate.
# In case of trusted Root-CA-Certificate, this key is not required.
LDAP_CERT_PATH: '<abs_location_for_cert_path>'
LDAP_USER_ID_ATTRIBUTE: 'LDAP attribute which can be used as user-id' # e.g. '<uid>' or '<cn>' or '<mail>'

#TLS certificate path;
#Absolute TLS certificate path, can also be generated using the script tls_insight_cert_gen.py located
at
# installer-<tagid>/insight/; if generated by: tls_insight_cert_gen.py, then entry of the info is
optional;
# the script copies the certs to installer-<tagid>/openstack-configs/ dir
PEM_PATH: <abs_location_for_cert_path>
SSL_CERT_CHAIN_FILE: <abs_location_for_cert_chain_file of x509 certificate> #Mandatory if PEM_PATH
is defined in the setupdata.

#If using tls_insight_cert_gen.py to create the cert, please define the following:
CERT_IP_ADDR: <br_api of the insight node> # Mandatory
CERT_HOSTNAME: <Domain name for Cert>      # Optional
And then execute:
# cd installer-<tagid>/insight
# ./tls_insight_cert_gen.py --file <absolute path of insight_setup_data.yaml>

The script generates the certs at installer-<tagid>/openstack-configs/ dir

If bringing in a 3rd part Cert, skip the above step and define the following
CERT_IP_ADDR: <br_api of the insight node> # Mandatory
CERT_HOSTNAME: <Domain name for Cert> # Optional
PEM_PATH in insight_setup_data.yaml, and go to step 4 instead of executing # ./tls_insight_cert_gen.py

As part of insight bootstrap the script copy the certs to installer-<tagid>/openstack-configs/ dir
```

Step 4 Save the edited insight_setup_data.yaml file.

Step 5 Start the insight installation process.

```
$ cd /root/Insight-<tag_id>/insight/
$ ./bootstrap_insight.py --help
usage: bootstrap_insight.py [-h] --action ACTION
                             [--regenerate_secrets] [--setpassword]
                             [--file INSIGHTSETUPDATA] [--keep] [--verbose]
                             [--backupdir BACKUPDIR] [-y]
```

Insight install setup helper.

optional arguments:

```
-h, --help            show this help message and exit
--action ACTION, -a ACTION
                        install - Install Insight UI
                        install-status - Display Insight Install Status
```

```

reconfigure - reconfigure - Reconfigure Insight DB password,
TLS Certificate, INSIGHT SMTP SERVER,
INSIGHT_EMAIL_ALIAS_PASSWORD,
INSIGHT_EMAIL_ALIAS, INSIGHT_SMTP_PORT
LDAP_MODE, LDAP_SERVER, LDAP_PORT, LDAP_ADMIN
LDAP_ADMIN_PASSWORD, LDAP_BASE_DN, LDAP_SECURE
LDAP_CERT_PATH, LDAP_USER_ID_ATTRIBUTE,
SSL_CERT_CHAIN_FILE

update - Update Insight UI
update-status - Display Insight Update Status
rollback - Rollback Insight UI update
commit - Commit Insight UI update
backup - Backup Insight UI
uninstall - Uninstall Insight UI

--regenerate_secrets, -r      System generated INSIGHT_DB_PASSWORD
--setpassword, -s            User supplied INSIGHT_DB_PASSWORD,
--file INSIGHTSETUPDATA, -f INSIGHTSETUPDATA
                              Location of insight_setup_data.yaml
--keep, -k                   Preserve Insight artifacts during uninstall
--verbose, -v                Verbose on/off
--backupdir BACKUPDIR, -b BACKUPDIR
                              Path to backup Insight
-y, --yes                    Option to skip reconfigure or uninstall steps without prompt

$ ./bootstrap_insight.py -a install -f </root/insight_setup_data.yaml>

VIM Insight install logs are at: /var/log/insight/bootstrap_insight/bootstrap_insight_<date>_<time>.log

```

Management Node validation!

Rule	Status	Error
Check Kernel Version	PASS	None
Check Ansible Version	PASS	None
Check Docker Version	PASS	None
Check Management Node Tag	PASS	None
Check Bond Intf. Settings	PASS	None
Root Password Check	PASS	None
Check Boot Partition Settings	PASS	None
Check LV Swap Settings	PASS	None
Check Docker Pool Settings	PASS	None
Check Home Dir Partition	PASS	None
Check Root Dir Partition	PASS	None
Check /var Partition	PASS	None
Check LVM partition	PASS	None
Check RHEL Pkgs Install State	PASS	None

Insight standalone Input validation!

Rule	Status	Error
Insight standalone Schema Validation	PASS	None
Valid Key Check in Insight Setup Data	PASS	None
Duplicate Key Check In Insight Setup Data	PASS	None
CVIM/Insight Workspace Conflict Check	PASS	None
Check Registry Connectivity	PASS	None
Check LDAP Connectivity	PASS	None
Test Email Server for Insight	PASS	None

Downloading VIM Insight Artifacts, takes time!!!

Cisco VIM Insight Installed successfully!

Description	Status	Details
VIM Insight UI URL	PASS	https://<br_api:9000>
VIM UI Admin Email ID	PASS	Check for info @: <abs path of insight_setup_data.yaml>
VIM UI Admin Password	PASS	Check for info @ /opt/cisco/insight/secrets.yaml
VIM Insight Workspace	PASS	/root/Insight-<tag_id>/insight/

Cisco VIM Insight backup Info!

Description	Status	Details
Insight backup Status	PASS	Backup done @ /var/cisco/insight_backup/insight_backup_<release_tag>_<date_time>

Cisco VIM Insight Autobackup Service Info!

Description	Status	Details
VIM Insight Autobackup	PASS	[ACTIVE]: Running 'insight-autobackup.service'

Done with VIM Insight install!

VIM Insight install logs are at: "/var/log/insight/bootstrap_insight/"

Logs of Insight Bootstrap are generated at : /var/log/insight/bootstrap_insight/ on the management node. Log file name for Insight Bootstrap are in the following format : bootstrap_insight_<date>_<time>.log. Only ten bootstrap Insight log files are displayed at a time. Once the bootstrap process is completed a summary table preceding provides the information of the UI URL and the corresponding login credentials. After first login, for security reasons, we recommend you to change the Password.

Insight autobackup takes place after an install and is located at default backup location /var/cisco/insight_backup;

details of which is provided in the backup summary table.

To add a new UI Admin in a setup that just got created, login to VIM insight and add a new UI admin user from the Manage UI Admin Users menu. Without doing a fresh install (that is un-bootstrap, followed by bootstrap) of the insight application, the UI admin that was bootstrapped cannot be changed.

Refer Cisco VIM Insight Post Bootstrap Validation Checks section, to verify the bootstrap status of Cisco VIM Insight.

Installing Cisco VIM Unified Management with SDS

To reduce the logistics of the artifact distribution during an air-gapped installation, use SDS. To download the artifacts to the SDS server, follow the instructions available at [Installing SDS in Air-Gapped Mode, on page 92](#). Then, you can use the connected way of installing Unified Management (UM) on the UM node.

To install UM on the UM node through SDS, you need REGISTRY_NAME as an additional field in the setup data for the UM node.

```
REGISTRY_NAME: '<registry_name>' #Mandatory Parameter when SDS is enabled.
```

For example, registry FQDN name [your.domain.com]. When SDS is not enabled, this parameter must not be used.

Once REGISTRY_NAME is defined in the setup data, the UM software fetches the artifacts from the SDS server as long as the INSTALL_MODE is defined to be connected or not defined in the insight_setup_data.yaml file. By default, it is assumed to be connected.

Installing Cisco VIM Unified Management with LDAP

Insight supports both LDAP and LDAPS (Secure over SSL) for an AD (Active Directory) environment. You can choose only one at a time.

LDAPS supports connection using both self-signed and CA-signed certificate. You can choose any type of certificate for LDAPS.

- Selecting self-signed certificate option will require a certificate for verification over LDAPS and to make a secure connection to LDAP over SSL.
- No certificate is required when selecting CA-signed certificate option.

The following are the required keys in setup data for LDAP support:

- LDAP_MODE: < True or False >
- LDAP_SERVER: < IP address of LDAP server >
- LDAP_PORT: < Port no. >
- LDAP_BASE_DN: <DN tree for Groups>
- LDAP_SECURE: < True or False >
- LDAP_USER_ID_ATTRIBUTE: <'uid' or 'cn' or 'mail'>

Following optional key is required in the setup_data file, when LDAP_SECURE is True and a self-signed certificate is used:

LDAP_CERT_PATH: < Path of cert file >

Following optional keys are required in the setup_data file, when LDAP server is configured to support simple binding:

- LDAP_ADMIN: < User-Name of Admin user >
- LDAP_ADMIN_PASSWORD: < Password of user Admin >

Installing Cisco VIM Unified Management Without SMTP

By default, a SMTP infrastructure is required for Cisco VIM Unified Management service.

For releases starting from Cisco VIM 2.4.2, the Unified Management service is supported in the absence of SMTP.



Note The migration of the Unified Management service to SMTP enabled mode from the mode which does not require SMTP, is not supported.

To install Unified Management without SMTP, follow the below steps:

Step 1 Modify the insight_setup_data.yaml file and add following key:

```
SMTP_MODE: False
```

Step 2 Remove the following keys from the insight_setup_data.yaml:

```
INSIGHT_SMTP_SERVER
INSIGHT_EMAIL_ALIAS
INSIGHT_SMTP_PORT and
INSIGHT_EMAIL_ALIAS_PASSWORD
```

Step 3 Save the yaml file and begin the installation from the insight dir:

```
#./bootstrap_insight.py -a install -f <path to insight_setup_data.yaml>
```

With SMTP disabled, bootstrap insight sets both the Super Admin and Pod Admin as the default user.

The user can login and register the Pod, but cannot perform the following:

- Add new user at POD Level.
- Add new Pod Admin.
- Add new Super Admin.

To add new user or update password for the existing user for Insight without SMTP, use the below script.

```
# ./user_populate.py --help
usage: user_populate.py [-h] [--username USERNAME] [--emailid EMAILID]
                        [--usertype USERTYPE] [--updatepass UPDATEPASS]
```

Optional arguments:

```
-h, --help                show the help message and exit
--username USERNAME, -u USERNAME
                           name of the user.
--emailid EMAILID, -e EMAILID
                           Email ID of the user.
--usertype USERTYPE, -t USERTYPE
                           User Type:
                           super_admin - User is Super User for Insight
                           pod_admin - User allowed to register new PODS
                           pod_user - User can only get associated with PODS
--updatepass UPDATEPASS, -p UPDATEPASS
                           Email ID of user whose password needs to be updated.
```

To add a user, enter the below command:

```
#./user_populate.py -u abc -e abc@abc.com -t pod_user
```

- Note**
- **-t** can take one of the following values such as **super_admin**, **pod_admin**, and **pod_user** as an argument.
 - If the user already exists, an error stating "User already exists" is displayed. If the user is new, the script prompts to enter a new password and confirmation password.

To use forgot password functionality, use the below command:

```
#./user_populate.py -p abc@abc.com
```

If the user is added or password has been changed using "-p" option, then on first login through Unified Management, the user is redirected to the **Change Password** page.

Installing Cisco VIM Unified Management without Internet Access

Complete the following steps to install Cisco VIM Insight on the Cisco NFVI management node.

Management Node setup (without Internet):

For many service providers, the infrastructure on which Management Node setup is run is air-gapped. This presents an additional dimension for the orchestrator to handle. To support install that is air-gapped, refer to the section [Preparing for Installation on Servers Without InternetAccess](#) , on page 41 and follow the steps to prepare 64G USB 2.0.

Before you begin

You must complete all Cisco NFVI preparation tasks described in [Preparing for Cisco NFVI Installation](#) , on page 47 and the management node as described in [Cisco VIM Management Node Networking](#) , on page 22

Step 1

Enter ip a to verify the br_mgmt and br_api interfaces are up and are bound to bond1 and bond0. For example:

```
$ ip a
br_api: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue state UP link/ether 00:42:68:6f:79:f2
    brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
inet nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn/25 brd nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn scope global br_api valid_lft forever preferred_lft
forever
inet6 fe80::3c67:7aff:fe9:6035/64 scope link valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
bond1: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,MASTER,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue master br_api state UP link/ether
    00:42:68:6f:79:f2 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
br_mgmt: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue state UP link/ether 00:78:88:46:ee:6e
    brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
inet nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn/24 brd nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn scope global br_mgmt valid_lft forever preferred_lft
forever
inet6 fe80::278:88ff:fe46:ee6e/64 scope link valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
bond0: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,MASTER,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue master br_mgmt state UP
link/ether 00:78:88:46:ee:6e brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
```

- Note** The br_mgmt and br_api interfaces are created when you install RHEL on the management node in [Installing the Management Node](#) , on page 56

Step 2 Run the following commands to copy the installer directory and the standalone insight_setup_data.yaml.

- a) Copy the installer dir to a another directory in /root/. The name of the new directory should start with Insight-

```
# cd /root/
# cp -r installer-<tag_id> Insight-<tag_id>
```

- b) Copy the Standalone insight_setup_data.yaml.Standalone_EXAMPLE file from the Insight-dir/openstack-configs to any other location on the management node or the BOM.

```
# cp /root/Insight-<tag_id>/openstack-configs/insight_setup_data.yaml.Standalone_EXAMPLE
/root/insight_setup_data.yaml
```

Step 3 Modify the insight setup data according to the requirements. Refer to the insight_setup_data.yaml and cert generation as listed in step 5 of the preceding section.

Step 4 Save the edited insight_setup_data.yaml file.

Step 5 Run Import Artifacts:

```
$ cd /root/insight-<tag_id>/tools
./import_artifacts.sh
```

This verifies that /var/cisco/artifacts on the management node has the following Insight artifacts, along with the other components 'insight-K9.tar', 'mariadb-app-K9.tar'.

Step 6 Start the insight installation process.

```
$ cd /root/Insight-<tag_id>/insight/
$ ./bootstrap_insight.py --help
usage: bootstrap_insight.py [-h] --action ACTION

                        [--regenerate_secrets] [--setpassword]
                        [--file INSIGHTSETUPDATA] [--keep] [--verbose]
                        [--backupdir BACKUPDIR] [-y]
```

Insight install setup helper.

optional arguments:

```
-h, --help            show this help message and exit
--action ACTION, -a ACTION
                        install - Install Insight UI
                        install-status - Display Insight Install Status
                        reconfigure - Reconfigure Insight DB password,
                        TLS Certificate, INSIGHT_SMTP_SERVER,
                        INSIGHT_EMAIL_ALIAS_PASSWORD,
                        INSIGHT_EMAIL_ALIAS, INSIGHT_SMTP_PORT
                        LDAP_MODE, LDAP_SERVER, LDAP_PORT, LDAP_ADMIN
                        LDAP_ADMIN_PASSWORD, LDAP_BASE_DN, LDAP_SECURE
                        LDAP_CERT_PATH, LDAP_USER_ID_ATTRIBUTE, SSL_CERT_CHAIN_FILE
                        update - Update Insight UI
                        update-status - Display Insight Update Status
                        rollback - Rollback Insight UI update
                        commit - Commit Insight UI update
                        backup - Backup Insight UI
                        uninstall - Uninstall Insight UI
--regenerate_secrets, -r
                        System generated INSIGHT_DB_PASSWORD
--setpassword, -s      User supplied INSIGHT_DB_PASSWORD,
--file INSIGHTSETUPDATA, -f INSIGHTSETUPDATA
                        Location of insight_setup_data.yaml
--keep, -k            Preserve Insight artifacts during uninstall
--verbose, -v         Verbose on/off
--backupdir BACKUPDIR, -b BACKUPDIR
                        Path to backup Insight
```


-y, --yes Option to skip reconfigure or uninstall steps without prompt

\$./bootstrap_insight.py -a install -f </root/insight_setup_data.yaml> Insight Schema Validation would be initiated:

VIM Insight install logs are at: / var/log/insight/<bootstrap_insight_<date>_<time>.log

Management Node Validations!

Rule	Status	Error
Check Kernel Version	PASS	None
Check Ansible Version	PASS	None
Check Docker Version	PASS	None
Check Management Node Tag	PASS	None
Check Bond Intf. Settings	PASS	None
Root Password Check	PASS	None
Check Boot Partition Settings	PASS	None
Check LV Swap Settings	PASS	None
Check Docker Pool Settings	PASS	None
Check Home Dir Partition	PASS	None
Check Root Dir Partition	PASS	None
Check /var Partition	PASS	None
Check LVM partition	PASS	None
Check RHEL Pkgs Install State	PASS	None

Insight standalone Input Validations!

Rule	Status	Error
Insight standalone Schema Validation	PASS	None
Valid Key Check in Insight Setup Data	PASS	None
Duplicate Key Check In Insight Setup Data	PASS	None
CVIM/Insight Workspace Conflict Check	PASS	None
Check Registry Connectivity	PASS	None
Test Email Server for Insight	PASS	None

Setting up Insight, Kindly wait!!!

Cisco VIM Insight Installed successfully!

Description	Status	Details
VIM Insight UI URL	PASS	https://<br_api:9000>
VIM UI Admin Email ID	PASS	Check for info @: <abs path of insight_setup_data.yaml>
VIM UI Admin Password	PASS	Check for info @ /opt/cisco/insight/secrets.yaml
VIM Insight Workspace	PASS	/root/Insight_<tag_id>/insight/

Cisco VIM Insight backup Info!

Description	Status	Details
Insight backup Status	PASS	Backup done @
		/var/cisco/insight_backup/insight_backup_<release_tag>_<date_time>

Done with VIM Insight install!

VIM Insight install logs are at: /var/log/insight/bootstrap_insight/

Logs of Insight Bootstrap is generated at : /var/log/insight/bootstrap_insight/ on the management node. Log file name for Insight Bootstrap is in the following format : bootstrap_insight_<date>_<time>.log. Only ten bootstrap Insight log files are displayed at a time. Once the bootstrap process is completed a summary table preceding provides the information of the UI URL and the corresponding login credentials. After first login, for security reasons, we recommend you to change the Password. Insight autobackup takes place after an install and is located at default backup location /var/cisco/insight_backup; details of which is provided in the backup summary table.

To add a new UI Admin in a setup that just got created, login to VIM insight and add a new UI admin user from the Manage UI Admin Users menu. Without doing a fresh install (that is un-bootstrap, followed by bootstrap) of the insight application, the UI admin that was bootstrapped with cannot be changed.

Refer Cisco VIM Insight Post Bootstrap Validation Checks , on page 128 to verify the bootstrap status of Cisco VIM Insight.

Cisco VIM Insight Post Bootstrap Validation Checks

1. After the VIM Insight bootstrap, you can view the status of Insight installation through install-status action using bootstrap.

```
$ Cisco VIM Insight Install Status!
+-----+-----+-----+
| Description      | Status | Details |
+-----+-----+-----+
| VIM Insight Setup      | PASS   | Success |
| VIM Insight Version    | PASS   | <release_tag> |
| VIM Insight UI URL     | PASS   | https://<br_api:9000> |
| VIM Insight Container | PASS   | insight_<tag_id> |
| VIM Mariadb Container | PASS   | mariadb_<tag_id> |
| VIM Insight Autobackup| PASS   | [ACTIVE]: Running 'insight-autobackup.service' |
| VIM Insight Workspace | PASS   | /root/installer-<tag_id>/insight |
+-----+-----+-----+
```

2. You can also verify if the Insight and MySQL containers are up or not by running the following command:

```
$ docker ps -a
CONTAINER ID        IMAGE                                     STATUS      NAMES
COMMAND            CREATED             STATUS      NAMES
cbe582706e50       cvim-registry.com/mercury-rhel7-osp10/insight:7434
"/start.sh"        10 hours ago       Up 10 hours   insight_7321
68e3c3a19339       cvim-registry.com/mercury-rhel7-osp10/mariadb-app:7434
"/usr/bin/my_init /ma" 10 hours ago       Up 10 hours   mariadb <tag-id>
```

3. Check the status of Insight by running the following command :

```
$ systemctl status docker-insight
docker-insight.service - Insight Docker Service
Loaded: loaded (/usr/lib/systemd/system/docker-insight.service; enabled; vendor preset: disabled)
Active: active (running) since Fri 2017-04-07 13:09:25 PDT; 36s ago Main PID: 30768 (docker-current)
Memory: 15.2M
CGroup: /system.slice/docker-insight.service
└─30768 /usr/bin/docker-current start -a insight_<tag-id>
```

```

Apr 07 13:09:26 i11-tb2-ins-3 docker[30768]: Tables_in_rbac
Apr 07 13:09:26 i11-tb2-ins-3 docker[30768]: buildnode_master
Apr 07 13:09:26 i11-tb2-ins-3 docker[30768]: permission_master
Apr 07 13:09:26 i11-tb2-ins-3 docker[30768]: role_master
Apr 07 13:09:26 i11-tb2-ins-3 docker[30768]: role_permission
Apr 07 13:09:26 i11-tb2-ins-3 docker[30768]: user_master
Apr 07 13:09:26 i11-tb2-ins-3 docker[30768]: user_role
Apr 07 13:09:26 i11-tb2-ins-3 docker[30768]: user_session
Apr 07 13:09:26 i11-tb2-ins-3 docker[30768]: Starting the apache httpd
Apr 07 13:09:26 i11-tb2-ins-3 docker[30768]: AH00558: httpd: Could not reliably determine
the server's fully qualified domain name, using 2.2.2.6.
Set the 'ServerName' directive gl... this message
Hint: Some lines were ellipsized, use -l to show in full.

```

4. Check if the Insight is up by running the following command:

```

$curl https://br_api:9000 -k (or --insecure)
Your response of curl should show the DOCTYPE HTML:
<!DOCTYPE html>
<!--[if lt IE 7]>      <html lang="en" ng-app="myApp" class="no-js lt-ie9 lt-ie8 lt-ie7">
<![endif]-->
<!--[if IE 7]>        <html lang="en" ng-app="myApp" class="no-js lt-ie9 lt-ie8">
<![endif]-->
<!--[if IE 8]>        <html lang="en" ng-app="myApp" class="no-js lt-ie9"> <![endif]-->
<!--[if gt IE 8]><!--> <html lang="en" ng-app="mercuryInstaller" class="no-js">
<!--<![endif]-->
<head>
  <meta charset="utf-8">
  <meta http-equiv="X-UA-Compatible" content="IE=edge">
  <title>Cisco VIM Installer</title>
  <meta name="description" content="">
  <meta name="viewport" content="width=device-width, initial-scale=1,
maximum-scale=1, user-scalable=0"/>
  <link rel="stylesheet"
href="static/lib/html5-boilerplate/dist/css/normalize.css">
  <link rel="stylesheet" href="static/lib/html5-boilerplate/dist/css/main.css">

  <link rel="stylesheet" href="static/lib/bootstrap/bootstrap.min.css">
  <link rel="stylesheet" href="static/lib/font-awesome/font-awesome.min.css">
  <!--<link
href="http://maxcdn.bootstrapcdn.com/font-awesome/4.1.0/css/font-awesome.min.css"
rel="stylesheet">-->
  <link rel="stylesheet" href="static/lib/bootstrap/bootstrap-theme.min.css">
  <link rel="stylesheet" href="static/lib/uigrid/ui-grid.min.css">
  <link rel="stylesheet" href="static/lib/chart/angular-chart.min.css">
  <script
src="static/lib/html5-boilerplate/dist/js/vendor/modernizr-2.8.3.min.js"></script>
  <link rel="stylesheet" href="static/css/app.css">
  <!--new dashboard css starts-->
  <link rel="stylesheet" href="static/css/dashboard.css">
  <!--new dashboard css end-->
</head>
<body class="skin-blue sidebar-collapse" ng-controller="DashboardCtrl"
id="ToggleNavbar">
  <div class="wrapper" id="wrapper">

    <div class="content-wrapper" id="contentclass">
      <mi-header></mi-header>
      <mi-left-side-navbar></mi-left-side-navbar>
      <message-box> </message-box>
      <div class="viewheight" ng-view autoscroll="true"></div>

```

```

</div>

<mi-footer></mi-footer>
</div>
<!--new dashboard js starts-->
<script src="../../static/lib/bootstrap/jquery.min.js"></script>
<script src="../../static/lib/jquery/jquery-ui.js"></script>
<script src="../../static/lib/bootstrap/progressbar.js"></script>
<!--new dashboard js ends-->
<script src="../../static/lib/chart/Chart.min.js"></script>
<script src="../../static/lib/bootstrap/bootstrap.min.js"></script>
<script src="../../static/lib/angular/angular.js"></script>
<script src="../../static/lib/chart/angular-chart.min.js"></script>
<script src="../../static/lib/uigrid/angular-touch.js"></script>
<script src="../../static/lib/uigrid/angular-animate.js"></script>
<script src="../../static/lib/uigrid/csv.js"></script>
<script src="../../static/lib/uigrid/pdfmake.js"></script>
<script src="../../static/lib/uigrid/vfs_fonts.js"></script>
<script src="../../static/lib/uigrid/ui-grid.js"></script>
<script src="../../static/lib/angular/smart-table.min.js"></script>
<script src="../../static/lib/angular-route/angular-route.js"></script>
<script src="../../static/lib/angular-cookies/angular-cookies.js"></script>
<script src="../../static/lib/angular/angular-translate.js"></script>
<script
src="../../static/lib/angular/angular-translate-loader-static-files.min.js"></script>
<script
src="../../static/lib/angular/angular-translate-storage-cookie.min.js"></script>
<script
src="../../static/lib/angular/angular-translate-storage-local.min.js"></script>
<script src="../../static/lib/yamltojson/yaml.js"></script>
<script src="../../static/lib/yaml/js-yaml.min.js"></script>
<script src="../../static/lib/d3/d3min.js"></script>
<script src="../../static/utility/utility.js"></script>
<script src="../../static/widgets/widgets.js"></script>
<script src="../../static/app.js"></script>
<script src="../../static/layout/layout.js"></script>
<script src="../../static/login/login.js"></script>
<script src="../../static/globals/globals.js"></script>
<script src="../../static/dashboard/dashboard.js"></script>
<script src="../../static/cloudpulse/cloudpulse.js"></script>
<script src="../../static/blueprintsetup/physicalsetupwizard/ucsmcommon.js"></script>

<script src="../../static/blueprintsetup/physicalsetupwizard/cimccommon.js"></script>

<script src="../../static/vmtp/runvmtp.js"></script>

<script src="../../static/blueprintsetup/physicalsetupwizard/networking.js"></script>

<script
src="../../static/blueprintsetup/physicalsetupwizard/serverandroles.js"></script>
<script src="../../static/blueprintsetup/openstacksetupwizard/cephsetup.js"></script>

<script
src="../../static/blueprintsetup/openstacksetupwizard/cinderssetup.js"></script>
<script
src="../../static/blueprintsetup/openstacksetupwizard/glancesetup.js"></script>
<script src="../../static/blueprintsetup/openstacksetupwizard/haproxy.js"></script>

<script
src="../../static/blueprintsetup/openstacksetupwizard/keystonesetup.js"></script>
<script
src="../../static/blueprintsetup/openstacksetupwizard/swiftstack.js"></script>
<script

```

```

src="../../../static/blueprintsetup/openstacksetupwizard/neutronsetup.js"></script>
<script src="../../../static/blueprintsetup/openstacksetupwizard/vmtpsetup.js"></script>

<script
src="../../../static/blueprintsetup/physicalsetupwizard/physicalsetupwizard.js"></script>
<script src="../../../static/blueprintsetup/servicesSetupWizard/systemlog.js"></script>

<script src="../../../static/blueprintsetup/servicesSetupWizard/nfvbench.js"></script>

<script
src="../../../static/blueprintsetup/servicesSetupWizard/servicesSetupWizard.js"></script>
<script
src="../../../static/blueprintsetup/openstacksetupwizard/openstacksetupwizard.js"></script>
<script src="../../../static/blueprintsetup/blueprintsetup.js"></script>
<script src="../../../static/blueprintmanagement/blueprintmanagement.js"></script>
<script src="../../../static/topology/topology.js"></script>
<script src="../../../static/monitoring/monitoring.js"></script>
<script src="../../../static/horizon/horizon.js"></script>
<script src="../../../static/podmanagement/podmanagement.js"></script>
<script
src="../../../static/blueprintsetup/openstacksetupwizard/tlssupport.js"></script>
<script src="../../../static/blueprintsetup/openstacksetupwizard/clksetup.js"></script>

<script src="../../../static/systemupdate/systemupdate.js"></script>
<script
src="../../../static/blueprintsetup/physicalsetupwizard/registrysetup.js"></script>
<script src="../../../static/registerertestbed/registerertestbed.js"></script>
<script src="../../../static/registerasaas/registerasaas.js"></script>
<script src="../../../static/useradministration/managesaasusers.js"></script>
<script src="../../../static/useradministration/rolemanagement.js"></script>
<script src="../../../static/saasadmindashboard/saasadmindashboard.js"></script>
<script src="../../../static/saasadmindashboard/buildnodes.js"></script>
<script src="../../../static/saasadmindashboard/buildnodeusers.js"></script>
<script src="../../../static/saasadmindashboard/managesaasuser.js"></script>
<script src="../../../static/saasadminusermanagement/saasadminusermgmt.js"></script>
<script src="../../../static/blueprintsetup/physicalsetupwizard/nfvsetup.js"></script>

<script src="../../../static/blueprintsetup/physicalsetupwizard/torswitch.js"></script>

<script src="../../../static/blueprintsetup/openstacksetupwizard/vtssetup.js"></script>

<script src="../../../static/rbacutilities/rbacutility.js"></script>
<script src="../../../static/forgotpassword/forgotpassword.js"></script>
<script src="../../../static/changepassword/changepassword.js"></script>
<script src="../../../static/passwordreconfigure/passwordreconfigure.js"></script>
<script
src="../../../static/openstackconfigreconfigure/openstackconfigreconfigure.js"></script>
<script
src="../../../static/reconfigureoptionalservices/reconfigureoptionalservices.js"></script>
</body>

```

5. VIM Insight Autobackup: Insight will invoke Insight Autobackup as a daemon process. Autobackup is taken as an incremental backups of database and /opt/cisco/insight/mgmt_certs dir if there is any change.

You can check the status of Insight Autobackup service:

```

systemctl status insight-autobackup
insight-autobackup.service - Insight Autobackup Service
   Loaded: loaded (/usr/lib/systemd/system/insight-autobackup.service; enabled; vendor
   preset: disabled)
   Active: active (running) since Mon 2017-09-04 05:53:22 PDT; 19h ago
   Process: 21246 ExecStop=/bin/kill ${MAINPID} (code=exited, status=0/SUCCESS)
  Main PID: 21287 (python)
    Memory: 9.2M
    CGroup: /system.slice/insight-autobackup.service

```

```

└─21287 /usr/bin/python
/var/cisco/insight_backup/insight_backup_2.1.10_2017-08-31_03:02:06/root
/rohan/installer-10416/insight/playbooks/./insight_autobackup.py

Sep 04 05:53:22 F23-insight-4 systemd[1]: Started Insight Autobackup Service.
Sep 04 05:53:22 F23-insight-4 systemd[1]: Starting Insight Autobackup Service...
```

VIM UM Admin Login for Standalone Setup

For security reasons, the Insight Admin logs in to the UI with which UM is bootstrapped and Add users. Insight Admin needs to add new users as Pod Admin.

Registration of UM Admin to UM

-
- Step 1** Enter the following address on the browser: https://<br_api>:9000.
 - Step 2** Enter the **Email ID** and **Password**. The Email ID should be the one specified as 'UI_ADMIN_EMAIL_ID' in `insight_setup_data.yaml` during bootstrap. The Password for UI Admins are generated at: `/opt/cisco/insight/secrets.yaml` and key is 'UI_ADMIN_PASSWORD'. If LDAP mode is True and LDAP user attribute is set to uid, login with LDAP user id credentials.
 - Step 3** Click **Login as UI Admin User**. You will be redirected to Insight UI Admin Dashboard.
-

VIM UM Pod Admin Login for Standalone Setup

-
- Step 1** Log in as Insight UM.
 - Step 2** Navigate to **Manage Pod Admin** and click **Add Pod Admin**.
 - Step 3** Enter a new Email ID in **Add Pod Admin** pop-up.
 - Step 4** Enter the username of the Pod Admin.
 - Step 5** Click **Save**. User Registration mail is sent to a newly added Pod Admin with a token.
 - Step 6** Click the URL with token and if token is valid then Pod Admin is redirected to Insight-Update Password page.
 - Step 7** Enter new password and then confirm the same password.
 - Step 8** Click **Submit**.
-



CHAPTER 8

Installing Cisco VIM through Cisco VIM Unified Management

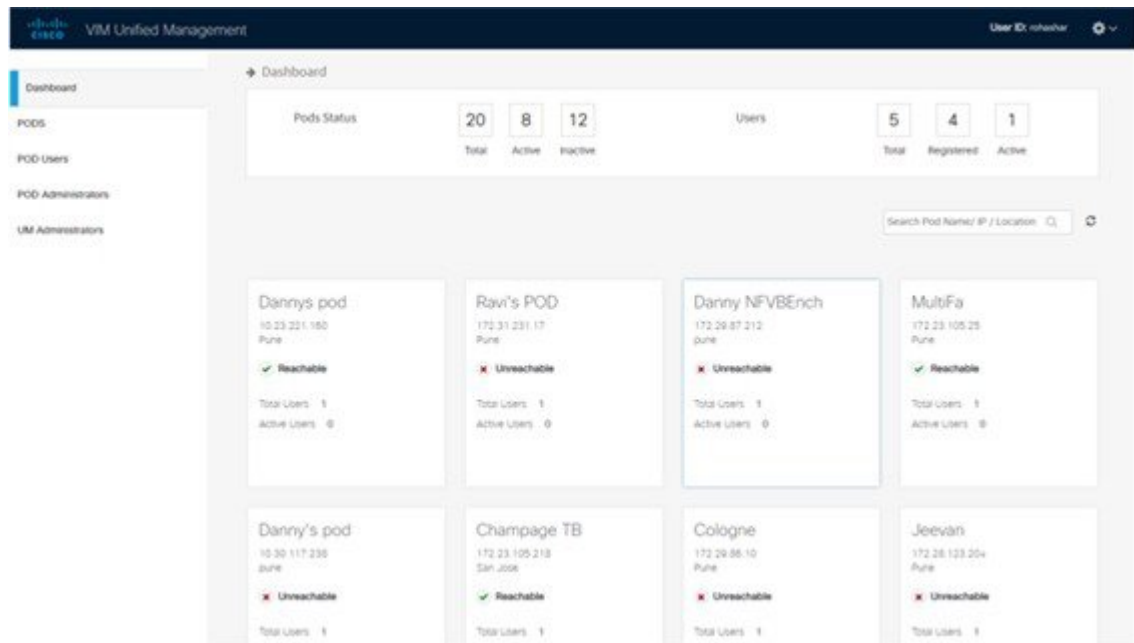
The VIM UM has an UI admin, who has the privilege to manage the UI offering. The Insight UI admin, has the rights to add the right users as Pod administrators. Post bootstrap, the URL for the UI will be: https://br_api:9000.

The following topics helps you to install and configure Cisco Virtual Infrastructure Manager with VIM Insight:

- [Unified Management Dashboard, on page 203](#)
- [Pods, on page 204](#)
- [Pod Administrator, on page 206](#)
- [Unified Management \(UM\) Administrator, on page 207](#)
- [Registering New Pod to Insight , on page 208](#)
- [Configuring OpenStack Installation, on page 209](#)
- [Post Installation Features for Active Blueprint, on page 299](#)

Unified Management Dashboard

When you login as UM admin, you will be redirected to the UM admin Dashboard.



The UM dashboard displays the following information about the pods it is currently managing:

Pod Status

- Active - Number of Pods which has health status OK (Example: Mgmt Node health of the pod is good).
- Inactive - Number of Pods whose health status is not good (Example: Mgmt Node health of the pod is not good).
- Total number of Pods - Number of Pods registered in the system.

Pod Users

- Total – Total number of users registered who are associated with at-least one Pod.
- Registered – Number of users who have completed the registration process and are associated with at-least one Pod.
- Active – Number of Online users who are associated with at-least one Pod.

You can see the list of Pod with its Pod name, description, IP address, location, Pod status along with the Total users and Active users of each pod. You can search for a Pod using Name, IP and location in the search option.

If you click **Get health of current nodes icon (spin)** it does the health check of the Pod.

Pods

Pods allows you to check the health status (indicated through green and red dot) of the pod respectively.

To fetch the latest health status, click **Refresh** which is at the upper right corner.

- Green dot – Pod is reachable and health is good.

- Red dot – Pod is not reachable.

Pod Users

The Pod Users page, gives you the details associated the pod, status (Online or Offline) and their Roles.

UM admin has the right to manage all Pod users in the system. The user with UM admin access can manage the following actions:

- Revoke User's permission from a specific Pod.
- Delete User from the system.

User Name	Email	IP Address	Role Name	Online	Actions
Rohan R	rohashan@cisco.com	10.30.116.244	Full-Pod-Access	Online	
Rohan R	rohashan@cisco.com	172.28.123.204	Full-Pod-Access	Offline	
Rohan R	rohashan@cisco.com	10.30.117.238	Full-Pod-Access	Offline	
Rohan R	rohashan@cisco.com	10.23.229.228	Full-Pod-Access	Offline	

Record last updated at : 04/0...

Navigation: 1 / 1 items per page

Revoking User

UM admin revokes the user's permission from a Pod by clicking **(undo)** icon. If the user is the only user with a Full-Pod-Access role for that particular Pod, then the revoke operation is not permitted. In this case, another user is granted with a Full-Pod-Access role for that Pod and then proceeds with revoking the old user.



Note

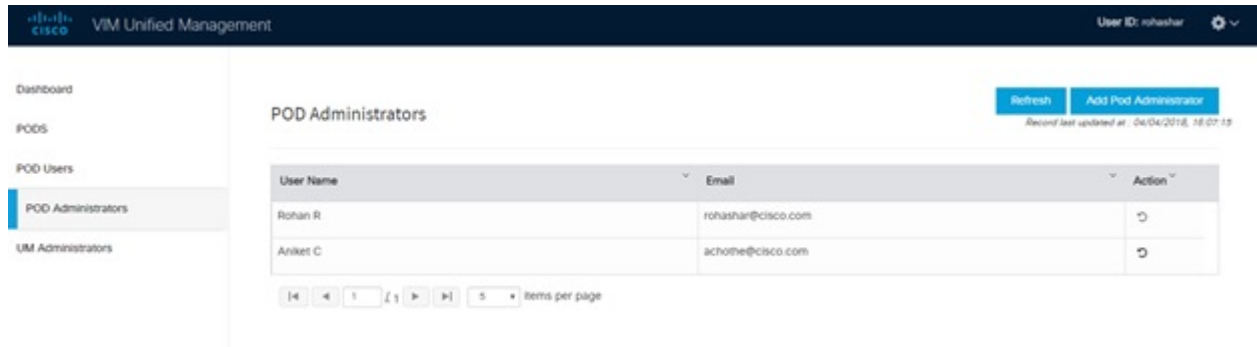
If the user is revoked from the last associated Pod, then the user is deleted from the system.

Deleting Users

UM admin can delete any user from the system by clicking **X** from an Action column. The delete operation is not permitted if the user has Full-Pod-Access. In, such case another user is granted with *Full-Pod-Access* role for that Pod and then proceed with deleting the old user. UM admin must revoke respective permission first and then proceed further.

Pod Administrator

Pod admins are the users who has the permission to register new Pods in the system. UM admin can add any number of Pod admins in the system.



Adding Pod Admin

- Step 1** Log in as **UI Admin** and navigate to POD Administrator page.
- Step 2** Click **Add Pod Administrator**.
- Step 3** Select User auth for the new user. This option is enabled only if LDAP mode is true.
- Step 4** Enter the Email ID/LDAP user id (if LDAP user attribute is set to uid) of the user.
 - If the email is already registered, the **Username** gets populated automatically.
 - If the email is not registered, an email is sent to the user email ID with the verification token. If User auth is set as LDAP, no verification token email is sent.
- Step 5** Navigate to `https://br_api :9000`.
- Step 6** Enter the **Email ID** and **Password** of the Pod Admin
- Step 7** Click **Login as Pod User**. It redirects to the landing page where the Pod admin can register a new Pod.

Revoking Pod Admin

UM admin can revoke Pod admin's permission anytime. To revoke Pod admin permission for the user, click **undo** icon.

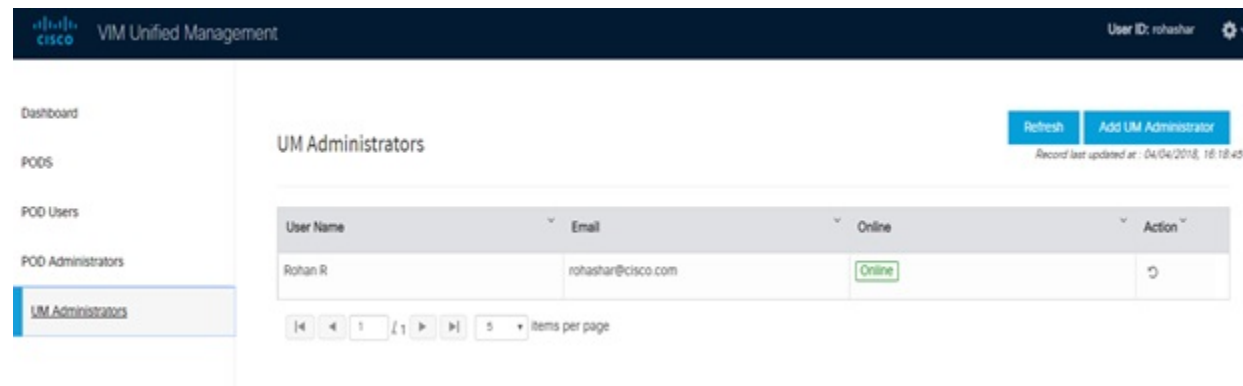


Note

You cannot revoke self permission.

Unified Management (UM) Administrator

UM admins have the access to the UM profile. Only a UM admin can add another UM admin in the system. There should be at least one UM admin in the system.



Adding UM Admin

To add a UM admin perform the following steps.

-
- Step 1** Log in as **UI Admin** and navigate to UM Administrator page.
 - Step 2** Click **Add UM Administrator**.
 - Step 3** Select User auth for the new user. This option is enabled only if LDAP mode is true.
 - Step 4** Enter the Email ID/ LDAP user id (if LDAP user attribute is set to uid) of the user.
 - If email is already registered, the **Username** gets populated automatically.
 - If email is not registered, an email is sent to the user email ID with the verification token. If User auth is set as LDAP, no verification token email is sent.
 - Step 5** Navigate to `https://br_api: 9000`.
 - Step 6** Enter the Email ID and Password of the UM Admin.
 - Step 7** Click **Log in as UM admin** to view the UM dashboard.
-

Revoking UM Admin

UM admin can revoke another UM admin's permission. To revoke UM Admin permission for any user, click **undo** icon.



Note You cannot revoke a self's permission. You can revoke a user if the user is not associated with any pod. After, revoking the user is deleted from the system.

Registering New Pod to Insight

Following are the steps that are required for UI Admin to register a Pod Admin:

Before you begin

UI Admin has to register a Pod Admin to allow the user to access a pod.

- Step 1** Log in as **UM Administrator**.
- Step 2** Navigate to Pod Administrator and click **Add Pod Admin**.
- Step 3** Enter the Email ID and the Password of the Pod Admin and click **Login as Pod User**. Then, you will be redirected to the landing page.
- Step 4** Click **Add New Pod** to register a Pod. The **Add New Pod** popup window appears on the screen.

- Step 5** Enter the `br_api` of the pod management node as the **Endpoint IP Address** and **Rest Server Password** from the file `/opt/cisco/ui_config.json`.
- Step 6** Enter the values for the remaining fields in **Add New Pod**.
- Step 7** Click **Browse** to select the Root CA certificate.
For more information on Root CA certificate, see [Managing Root CA Certificate](#)
- Step 8** Click **Upload Certificate** to upload the selected Root CA certificate.
- Step 9** Click **Register** to start the Pod registration.

The newly created Pod appears on the landing page.

Configuring OpenStack Installation

Before you begin

You need to create a Blueprint (B or C Series) to initiate OpenStack Installation through the VIM.

Step 1 In the navigation pane, choose **Pre-Install > Blueprint Setup**.

Step 2 To create a **B Series Blueprint**:

1. On the **Blueprint Initial Setup** pane of the Cisco VIM Insight, complete the following fields:

The screenshot shows the 'Create Blueprint configuration' page in the Cisco VIM Insight interface. The left navigation pane includes 'Dashboard', 'Pre-Install' (selected), 'Blueprint Setup', 'Blueprint Management', 'Post-Install', 'View Topology', and 'Pod User Administration'. The main content area is titled 'Create Blueprint configuration' and has three tabs: 'Blueprint Initial Setup' (active), 'Physical Setup', and 'OpenStack Setup'. At the top right are buttons for 'Save Form', 'Offline Validation', and 'Clear'. The 'Blueprint Initial Setup' tab contains the following fields:

- Blueprint Name:** A text input field with a red asterisk and a hint 'Enter Blueprint Name'.
- Tenant Network:** A dropdown menu with a red asterisk, showing 'LinuxBridge/VXLAN'.
- Object Storage Backend:** A dropdown menu with a red asterisk, showing 'Central'.
- Platform Type:** A dropdown menu with a red asterisk, showing 'B-series'.
- POD Type:** A dropdown menu with a red asterisk, showing 'Fullon'.

Below these fields is a section titled 'Optional Features & Services:' containing a grid of checkboxes:

- Syslog Export Settings
- Pod Name
- Heat
- Auto Backup
- Keystone v3
- ES_REMOTE_BACKUP
- Vim Admins
- NFVbench
- LDAP
- TLS
- NFVI Monitoring
- Enable Esc Priv
- TORSwitch Information
- VMTP
- Swiftstack
- Install Mode
- Permit Root Login
- NETAPP_SUPPORT

At the bottom, there is a section 'Import Existing YAML file' with a text input field and 'Browse' and 'Load' buttons.

Name	Description
Blueprint Name field	Enter blueprint configuration name.
Platform Type drop-down list	Choose one of the following platform types: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • B-Series (By default) choose B series for this section. • C-Series
Tenant Network drop-down list	Choose one of the following tenant network types: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Linuxbridge/VXLAN • OVS/VLAN

Name	Description
Pod Type drop-down list	Choose one of the following pod types: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fullon(By Default)
Ceph Mode drop-down list	Choose one of the following Ceph types: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dedicated • Central (By Default) - Not supported in Production
Optional Features and Services Checkbox	<p>Swiftstack, LDAP, Syslog Export Settings, Install Mode, ToR Switch Information, TLS, NFVMON, Pod Name, VMTP, NFV Bench, Auto-backup, Heat, Keystone v3, Enable Esc Priv, Enable TTY logging, SNMP, ManagementNode_CloudAPI_Reachability.</p> <p>If any one is selected, the corresponding section is visible in various Blueprint sections. SNMP requires CVIMMON to be enabled.</p> <p>By default, all features are disabled except Auto-backup and Management Node_CloudAPI_Reachability.</p> <p>Select Enable Read-only OpenStack Admins to add a custom role with read-only admin privileges to OpenStack resources.</p>
Import Existing YAML file	<p>Click Browse button to import the existing yaml file.</p> <p>If you have an existing B Series YAML file you can use this feature to upload the file.</p> <p>Unified Management automatically fill in the fields and if any mandatory field is missed then it gets highlighted in the respective section.</p>

- Click **Physical Setup** to navigate to the **Registry Setup** configuration page. Fill in the following details for Registry Setup:

The screenshot shows the Cisco VIM Unified Management web interface. The top navigation bar includes the Cisco logo, 'VIM Unified Management', a user profile 'Caitlin 10.30.110.244', and a role 'Role: Full-Priv Access' with a user ID 'id:infrahar'. A left sidebar lists navigation options: Dashboard, Pre-Install, Blueprint Setup (selected), Blueprint Management, Post-Install, View Topology, and Post User Administration. The main content area is titled 'Create Blueprint configuration' and features three tabs: 'Blueprint Initial Setup', 'Physical Setup' (active), and 'OpenStack Setup'. Below the tabs is a progress bar with steps: 'Registry Setup' (active), 'CIMC Common', 'Networking', and 'Servers and Roles'. The 'Registry Setup' form includes three input fields: 'Registry User Name' (with a red asterisk), 'Registry Password' (with a red asterisk and a password strength indicator), and 'Registry Email' (with a red asterisk). Each field has a placeholder text: 'Enter registry username', 'Enter registry password', and 'Enter registry email' respectively. At the top right of the form area are three buttons: 'Save Form', 'Offline Validation', and 'Clear'.

Name	Description
Registry User Name text field	Enter the User-Name for Registry (Mandatory).
Registry Password text field	Enter the Password for Registry (Mandatory).
Registry Email text field	Enter the Email ID for Registry (Mandatory).

Once all mandatory fields are filled the **Validation Check Registry Pane** shows a Green Tick.

- Click **UCSM Common Tab** and complete the following fields:

The screenshot shows the 'Create Blueprint configuration' page in the Cisco VIM Unified Management interface. The 'UCSM Common' tab is active, displaying several configuration fields. The 'User name' field is disabled and contains the value 'admin'. The 'Password' field is a text input. The 'UCSM IP' field is a text input. The 'Resource Prefix' field is a text input. The 'QOS Policy Type' is a dropdown menu with 'NFVI' selected. The 'Max VF Count' is a text input with the value '20'. There are checkboxes for 'Enable VF Performance' and 'Enable Phys FIBs'. At the top right, there are buttons for 'Save Form', 'Offline Validation', and 'Clear'. The progress bar at the top indicates that 'Registry Setup', 'Networking', and 'Servers and Roles' have failed, while 'UCSM Common' is currently being configured.

Name	Description
User name disabled field	By default the value is Admin.
Password text field	Enter Password for UCSM Common (Mandatory).
UCSM IP text field	Enter IP Address for UCSM Common (Mandatory).
Resource Prefix text field	Enter the resource prefix(Mandatory).
QOS Policy Type drop-down	Choose one of the following types: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> NFVI (Default) Media

Name	Description
Max VF Count text field	Select the Max VF Count. <1-54> Maximum VF count 54, default is 20. If VF performance is enabled we recommend you to keep MAX_VF_COUNT to 20 else may fail on some VICs like 1240.
Enable VF Performance optional checkbox	Default is false. Set to true to apply adaptor policy at VF level.
Enable Prov FI PIN optional checkbox	Default is false.
MRAID-CARD optional checkbox	Enables JBOD mode to be set on disks. Applicable only if you have RAID controller configured on Storage C240 Rack servers.
Enable UCSM Plugin optional checkbox	Visible when Tenant Network type is OVS/VLAN.
Enable QoS Policy optional checkbox	Visible only when UCSM Plugin is enabled. If UCSM Plugin is disabled then this option is set to False.
Enable QOS for Port Profile optional checkbox	Visible only when UCSM Plugin is enabled.
SRIOV Multi VLAN Trunk optional grid	Visible when UCSM Plugin is enabled. Enter the values for network and vlans ranges. Grid can handle all CRUD operations such as Add, Delete, Edit and, Multiple Delete.

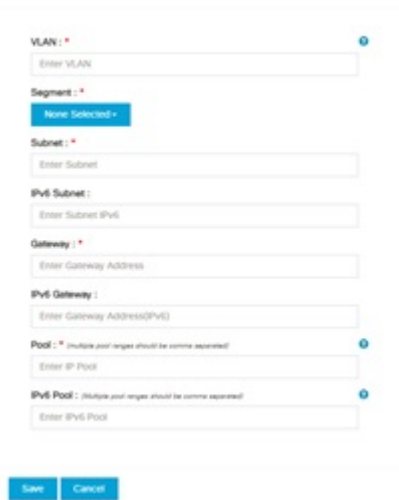
- Click **Networking** to advance to the networking section of the Blueprint:

© 2018 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.
Cisco VIM Unified Management Version: 2.2.2

Name	Description
Domain Name field	Enter the domain name (Mandatory) .
HTTP Proxy Server field	If your configuration uses an HTTP proxy server, enter the IP address of the server.
HTTPS Proxy Server field	If your configuration uses an HTTPS proxy server, enter the IP address of the server.
IP Tables on Management Pods	Specifies the list of IP Address with Mask.
NTP Server	Enter a maximum of four and minimum of one IPv4 and /or IPv6 addresses in the table.
Domain Name Server	Enter a maximum of three and minimum of one IPv4 and/or IPv6 addresses.

Name	Description
Network options	<p>This section is accessible only if ToR type is Cisco NCS 5500.</p> <p>vxlan-tenant:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Provider network name: It is a unique name. • BGP AS num: Takes value between 1 and 65535. • BGP Peers: Enter the peer route reflector IPs (IPs to be comma separated) • BGP router ID: The router ID is used for local GoBGP cluster. <p>Note VXLAN-TENANT is allowed only when NETWORK_OPTIONS is vxlan network. The IPs defined belong to the vxlan-tenant network, but are not part of the vxlan-tenant network pool.</p> <p>VXLAN-ECN:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Provider network name: It is the unique name. • BGP AS num: It takes the value between 1 and 65535. • BGP Peers: Enter the peer route reflector IPs. (IPs to be comma separated) • BGP router ID: The router ID is used for local GoBGP cluster. <p>Note</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • You cannot have VXLAN-ECN without vxlan-tenant segment defined, however vxlan-tenant can be defined standalone. • Ensure that you take care while choosing single or multi-VXLAN (two-VXLAN) option as this is a day-0 configuration. • VXLAN_ECEN is allowed only when NETWORK_OPTIONS is vxlan network. The IPs defined belong to the vxlan-ecen network, but are not part of the vxlan-ecen network pool.

Name	Description
Network table	

Name	Description
	<p>Network table is pre-populated with segments. To add Networks you can either clear all the table using Delete All or click Edit icon for each segment and fill in the details.</p> <p>You can add, edit, or delete network information in the table:</p> <p>Edit Network</p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Click + to enter new entries (networks) to the table. • Specify the following fields in the Edit Entry to Networks dialog box.
Name	Description
VLAN field	<p>Enter the VLAN ID.</p> <p>For Segment - Provider, the VLAN ID value is always <i>none</i>.</p>
Segment drop-down list	<p>You can select any one segment from the drop-down list.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • API • Management/Provision • Tenant • CIMC • Storage • External

Name	Description	
	Name	Description
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Provider (optional) <p>Note Some segments do not need some of the values listed in the preceding points.</p>
	Subnet field	Enter the IPv4 address for the subnet.
	IPv6 Subnet field	Enter IPv6 address. This field is available only for Management provision and API.
	Gateway field	Enter the IPv4 address for the Gateway.
	IPv6 Gateway field	Enter IPv6 gateway. This field is available only for Management provision and API network.
	Pool field	Enter the pool information in the following format. For example: 10.30.1.1 or 10.30.1.1 to 10.30.1.12
	IPv6 Pool field	Enter the pool information in the following format. For example: 10.1.15-10.1.1.10,10.2.15-10.2.1.10 This field is only available for the Mgmt/Provision.
Click Save .		

- On the **Servers and Roles** page of the Cisco VIM Suite wizard, you see a pre-populated table filled with Roles: Control, Compute and Block Storage (Only if CEPH Dedicated is selected in Blueprint Initial Setup).

VM Unified Management Calsoft 10.30.116.244 Role: Full-Pod Access | User ID: rshahar

Dashboard

Pre-Install

Blueprint Setup

Blueprint Management

Post-Install

View Topology

Pod User Administration

Create Blueprint configuration

Blueprint Initial Setup **Physical Setup** OpenStack Setup

Registry Setup X UCSM Common X Networking X **Servers and Roles**

Server User Name

root

☐ Disable Hyperthreading

COBBLER:

Cobbler Timeout

45

Control Kickstart *

ucs-b-and-c-series.ks

Block Storage Kickstart *

ucs-b-and-c-series.ks

Compute Kickstart *

ucs-b-and-c-series.ks

Server Host Password *

Enter Server Host Password

Server and Roles *

Server Name	Server Type	Rack ID	Chassis ID	Blade ID	Rack unit ID	Role	Management IP	Management IPv6	Action
	blade					control			/ X
	blade					control			/ X
	blade					control			/ X
	blade					compute			/ X

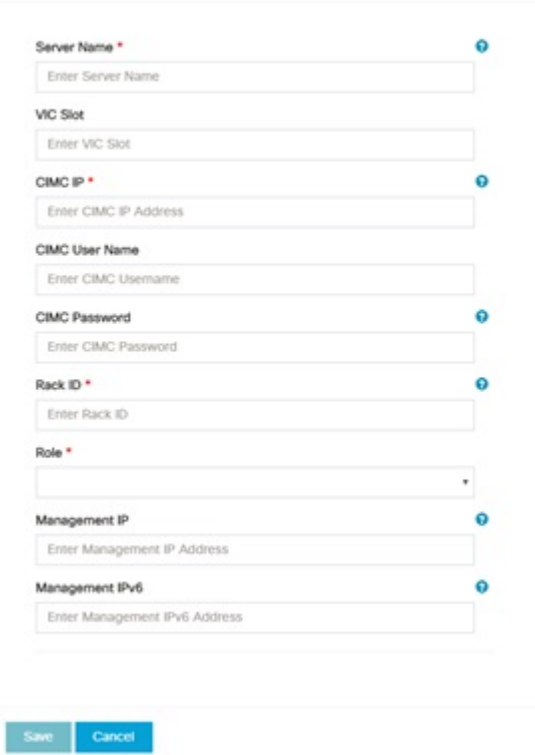
14 1 41 15

©2018 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.
Cisco VIM Unified Management Version: 2.2.2

Name	Description
Server User Name field	Enter the username of the server.
Disable Hyperthreading	Default value is false. You can set it as true or false.

Name	Description															
Cobbler	Enter the Cobbler details in the following fields:															
	<table> <tr> <th>Name</th><th>Description</th></tr> <tr> <td>Cobbler Timeout field</td><td>The default value is 45 min. This is an optional parameter. Timeout is displayed in minutes, and its value ranges from 30 to 120.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Block Storage Kickstart field</td><td>Kickstart file for Storage Node.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Admin Password Hash field</td><td>Enter the Admin Password. Password must be Alphanumeric. Password should contain minimum 8 characters and maximum of 32 characters.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Cobbler Username field</td><td>Enter the cobbler username to access the cobbler server.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Control Kickstart field</td><td>Kickstart file for Control Node.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Compute Kickstart field</td><td>Kickstart file for Compute Node.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Cobbler Admin Username field</td><td>Enter the admin username of the Cobbler.</td></tr> </table>	Name	Description	Cobbler Timeout field	The default value is 45 min. This is an optional parameter. Timeout is displayed in minutes, and its value ranges from 30 to 120.	Block Storage Kickstart field	Kickstart file for Storage Node.	Admin Password Hash field	Enter the Admin Password. Password must be Alphanumeric. Password should contain minimum 8 characters and maximum of 32 characters.	Cobbler Username field	Enter the cobbler username to access the cobbler server.	Control Kickstart field	Kickstart file for Control Node.	Compute Kickstart field	Kickstart file for Compute Node.	Cobbler Admin Username field
Name	Description															
Cobbler Timeout field	The default value is 45 min. This is an optional parameter. Timeout is displayed in minutes, and its value ranges from 30 to 120.															
Block Storage Kickstart field	Kickstart file for Storage Node.															
Admin Password Hash field	Enter the Admin Password. Password must be Alphanumeric. Password should contain minimum 8 characters and maximum of 32 characters.															
Cobbler Username field	Enter the cobbler username to access the cobbler server.															
Control Kickstart field	Kickstart file for Control Node.															
Compute Kickstart field	Kickstart file for Compute Node.															
Cobbler Admin Username field	Enter the admin username of the Cobbler.															

Name	Description
Add Entry to Servers and Roles	

Name	Description																
	<p>Click Edit or + to add a new server and role to the table.</p> <p>Server And Roles</p>  <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Server Name</td><td>Enter a server name.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Server Type drop-down list</td><td>Choose Blade or Rack from the drop-down list.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Rack ID</td><td>The Rack ID for the server.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Chassis ID</td><td>Enter a Chassis ID.</td></tr> <tr> <td>If Rack is chosen, the Rack Unit ID field is displayed.</td><td>Enter a Rack Unit ID.</td></tr> <tr> <td>If Blade is chosen, the Blade ID field is displayed.</td><td>Enter a Blade ID.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Select the Role from the drop-down list.</td><td>If Server type is Blade then select Control and Compute. If server is Rack then select Block Storage.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Management IP</td><td>It is an optional field but if</td></tr> </table>	Server Name	Enter a server name.	Server Type drop-down list	Choose Blade or Rack from the drop-down list.	Rack ID	The Rack ID for the server.	Chassis ID	Enter a Chassis ID.	If Rack is chosen, the Rack Unit ID field is displayed.	Enter a Rack Unit ID.	If Blade is chosen, the Blade ID field is displayed.	Enter a Blade ID.	Select the Role from the drop-down list.	If Server type is Blade then select Control and Compute . If server is Rack then select Block Storage .	Management IP	It is an optional field but if
Server Name	Enter a server name.																
Server Type drop-down list	Choose Blade or Rack from the drop-down list.																
Rack ID	The Rack ID for the server.																
Chassis ID	Enter a Chassis ID.																
If Rack is chosen, the Rack Unit ID field is displayed.	Enter a Rack Unit ID.																
If Blade is chosen, the Blade ID field is displayed.	Enter a Blade ID.																
Select the Role from the drop-down list.	If Server type is Blade then select Control and Compute . If server is Rack then select Block Storage .																
Management IP	It is an optional field but if																

Name	Description
	provided for one server then it is mandatory to provide details for other Servers as well.
	Management IPv6 Enter the Management IPv6 Address.
	Click Save .

6. Click **ToR Switch** checkbox in **Blueprint Initial Setup** to enable the **TOR SWITCH** configuration page. It is an **Optional** section in Blueprint Setup, but when all the fields are filled it is a part of the Blueprint.

The screenshot shows the 'Create Blueprint configuration' interface in Cisco VIM Unified Management. The 'Physical Setup' tab is active, and the 'ToR Switch' step is highlighted in the progress bar. The 'Configure TOR' section is expanded, showing a table for 'ToR Switch Information'. The table has the following columns: Hostname, User Name, Password, SSH IP, SSN Num, VPC Peerlink, VPC Domain, VPC peer a..., VPC peer V..., BR mgmt pe..., BR mgmt P..., and Action. The table is currently empty, and navigation controls are visible at the bottom.

Name	Description
Configure ToR optional checkbox.	Enabling this checkbox, changes the configure ToR section from false to true.

Name	Description
ToR Switch Information mandatory table.	

Name	Description																
	<p>Click (+) to add information for ToR Switch.</p> <p>Switch Details</p> <div> <div>Hostname *</div> <input type="text" value="Enter Switch Hostname"/> </div> <div> <div>Username *</div> <input type="text" value="Enter Switch Username"/> </div> <div> <div>Password *</div> <input type="password" value="Enter Password"/> </div> <div> <div>SSH-IP *</div> <input type="text" value="Enter IP Address"/> </div> <div> <div>SSN Num</div> <input type="text" value="Enter SSN Num"/> </div> <div> <div>VPC Peer Keepalive</div> <input type="text" value="Enter IP Address"/> </div> <div> <div>VPC Domain</div> <input type="text" value="Enter VPC Domain"/> </div> <div> <div>VPC Peer Port Info</div> <input type="text" value="Enter VPC Port"/> </div> <div> <div>VPC Peer VLAN Info</div> <input type="text" value="Enter VPC VLAN Info"/> </div> <div> <div>BR Management Port Info</div> <input type="text" value="Enter BR Port Info"/> </div> <div> <div>BR Management PO Info</div> <input type="text" value="Enter BR PO Info"/> </div> <div> <div>Save</div> <div>Cancel</div> </div> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Hostname</td><td>ToR switch hostname.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Username</td><td>ToR switch username.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Password</td><td>ToR switch password.</td></tr> <tr> <td>SSH IP</td><td>ToR switch SSH IP Address.</td></tr> <tr> <td>SSN Num</td><td>ToR switch ssn num.</td></tr> <tr> <td>VPC Peer Keepalive</td><td>Peer Management IP. You do not define if there is no peer.</td></tr> <tr> <td>VPC Domain</td><td>Do not define if peer is absent.</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Name	Description	Hostname	ToR switch hostname.	Username	ToR switch username.	Password	ToR switch password.	SSH IP	ToR switch SSH IP Address.	SSN Num	ToR switch ssn num.	VPC Peer Keepalive	Peer Management IP. You do not define if there is no peer.	VPC Domain	Do not define if peer is absent.
Name	Description																
Hostname	ToR switch hostname.																
Username	ToR switch username.																
Password	ToR switch password.																
SSH IP	ToR switch SSH IP Address.																
SSN Num	ToR switch ssn num.																
VPC Peer Keepalive	Peer Management IP. You do not define if there is no peer.																
VPC Domain	Do not define if peer is absent.																

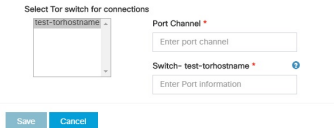
Name	Description	
	VPC Peer Port Info	Interface for vpc peer ports.
	BR Management Port Info	Management interface of the management node.
	BR Management PO Info	Port channel number for management interface of the management node.
	ClickSave.	
On clicking save button, Add ToR Info Connected to Fabric field is visible.	Port Channel field.	Enter the Port Channel input.
	Switch Name field.	Enter the name of the Switch.

7. Click **NFVI Monitoring** checkbox in Blueprint Initial Setup to enable the NFVI Monitoring configuration tab.

The screenshot shows the 'Create Blueprint configuration' page in the Cisco VIM Unified Management interface. The 'Physical Setup' tab is selected, and the 'NFVI Monitoring' checkbox is checked. The page contains several configuration fields:

- Master:** Admin IP, Address IP
- Collector Management VIP:** Management IP
- Collector VM Info:** Host Name, Password, CCUSER Password, Address IP, Management IP
- Collector VM Info:** Host Name, Password, CCUSER Password, Address IP, Management IP
- Collector VM Connections:** Table with columns for Tor Info and Action.
- Dispatcher:** Rabbit MQ User Name, Rabbit MQ User Name

Name	Description
Admin IP	IP Address of Control Center VM
Management VIP	VIP for ceilometer/dispatcher to use, must be unique across VIM Pod
Host Name	Hostname of Collector VM
Password	Password of Collector VM
CCUSER Password	Password of CCUSER

Name	Description				
Admin IP	SSH IP of Collector VM				
Management IP	Management IP of Collector VM				
Collector ToR Connections	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click on (+) icon to Add Collector ToR Connections. 2. Select the ToR switches from list to add the information. 3. It is optional and available for ToR type NCS-5500 4. For now, it supports adding only one Collector ToR Connection <p>Add Collector Tor Connections</p>  <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Port Channel</td><td>Enter port channel.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Switch - {torSwitch-hostname}</td><td>Enter port number, E.g:eth1/15.</td></tr> </table> <p>Click Save</p>	Port Channel	Enter port channel.	Switch - {torSwitch-hostname}	Enter port number, E.g:eth1/15.
Port Channel	Enter port channel.				
Switch - {torSwitch-hostname}	Enter port number, E.g:eth1/15.				
Rabbit MQ User Name	Enter Rabbit MQ username.				

8. Click **CVIMMON** option in Blueprint Initial Setup to enable the CVIMMON configuration tab.

Create Blueprint configuration

Save Form Offline Validation Clear

Blueprint Initial Setup **Physical Setup** OpenStack Setup

Registry Setup UCSM Common Networking Servers and Roles **CVIMMON**

Enable ☒

Polling Intervals

Low Frequency	1	m	?
Medium Frequency	30	s	?
High Frequency	10	s	?

CVIM-MON is a built-in infrastructure monitoring service based on telegraf/prometheus/grafana.

When enabled, the telegraf service will be deployed on every node on the pod to capture infrastructure level stats (CPU, memory, network, containers, and so on) and a Prometheus server will be installed on the management node

to poll for these stats and store them in its time series database. The statistics can then be viewed using the grafana server that is accessible on the management node at port 3000 (password protected).

There are three levels of polling intervals which are used by different telegraf plugins:

- Low frequency interval is used to collect system level metrics like cpu, memory
- Medium frequency interval is used to collect docker metrics
- High frequency interval is used to collect rabbitmq metrics

Defining polling intervals in setup data is optional, if not defined the default values will be used

CVIM-MON is mutually exclusive to NFVIMON

PODNAME is required when CVIM-MON is enabled

Name	Description
Enable	Default is False
Polling Intervals	
Low frequency	<Integer following with time sign (s/m/h)> # min of 1 minute (1m) if not defined defaults to 1m, also it needs to be higher than medium interval.
Medium frequency	<Integer following with time sign (s/m/h)> # min of 30 seconds (30s) if not defined defaults to 30s, also it needs to be higher than high interval.
High frequency	<Integer following with time sign (s/m/h)> # min of 10 seconds (10s) if not defined defaults to 10s.

While CVIMMON checkbox is checked in Blueprint Initial setup, there is a checkbox provided in the CVIMMON tab area for enabling the SNMP feature. When user check this enable SNMP checkbox, Add a Manager button appears in the right area.

Clicking on this button shows various fields related to that manager. User can add up to three SNMP managers.

Name	Description
Address	Ipv4 address of the remote SNMP manager, unique across all managers
Port	Port (1-65535) to sent the traps; default 162, unique across all managers
Version	SNMP version of the manager; default 'v2c'
Community	For SNMPv2c. Community name; default 'public'
Engine_Id	For SNMPv3. ContextEngineId, min length of 5, max length of 32, unique across all managers; cannot we all 00s or FFs
Users	List of users; maximum: 3

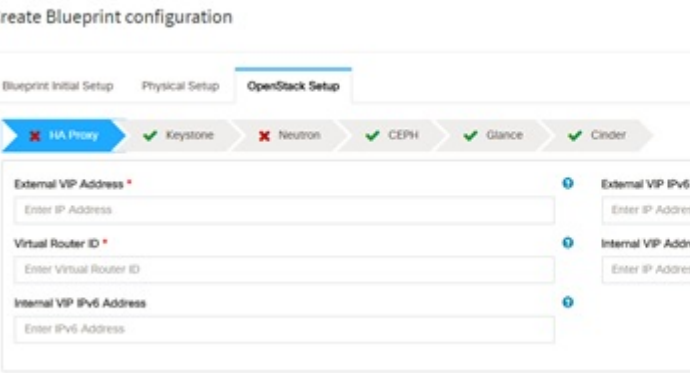
Name	Description
Name	Username has to be unique across users for the same manager
auth_key	Need to be min of 8 chars
authentication	Authentication protocol; default: 'SHA'
privacy_key	Encryption password; by default uses the same as the authentication
encryption	Encryption protocol ; default: 'AES128'

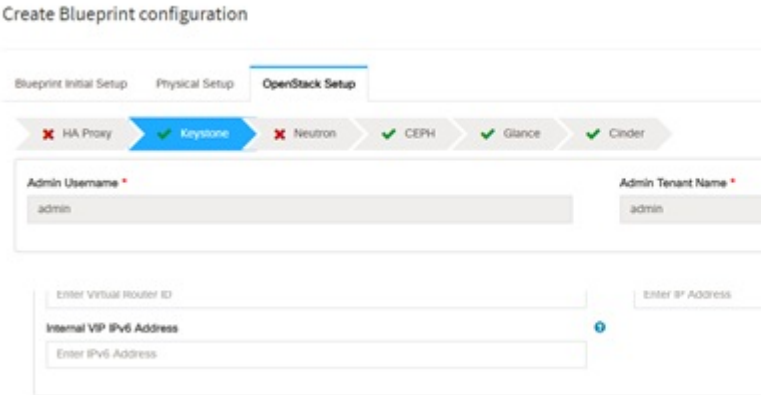
If CVIMMON is enabled and Platform type is C, then an optional feature to get SNMP traps from Cisco CIMC is available in the CVIMMON tab area. With this new feature SERVER_MON, there is a checkbox to enable or disable this feature and an input field to provide host information. You can either add comma separated server information or can have ALL to include all the servers.

Table 25:

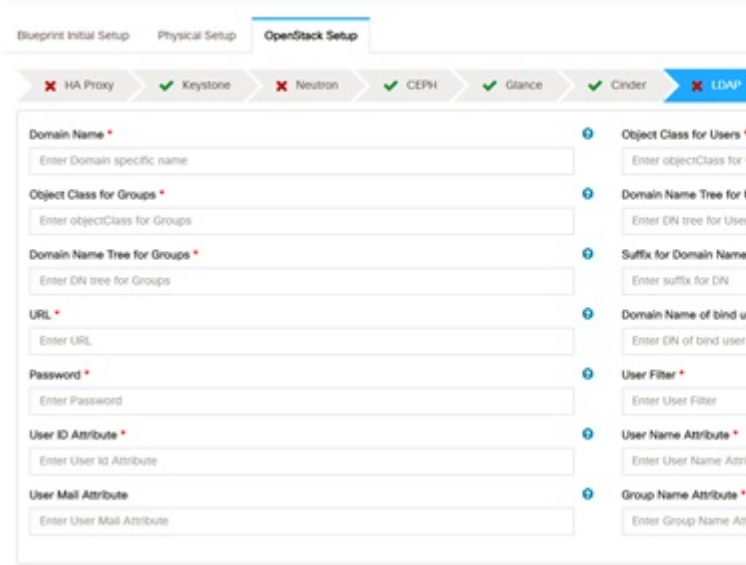
Name	Description
Enable	True/False
Host information	ALL or list of servers.
Remote syslog severity	Optional. Indicates if cimc is programmed to send rsyslog events with this minimum severity. Possible syslog severity values are: '<emergency' 'alert' 'critical' 'error' 'warning' 'notice' 'informational' 'debug'>'. These are optional and values can be changed.

9. Click **OpenStack Setup** tab to advance to the OpenStack Setup Configuration page. On the **OpenStack Setup** page of the Cisco VIM Insight wizard, complete the following fields:

Name	Description										
HA Proxy	<p>Fill in the following details:</p>  <table> <tr> <td>External VIP Address field</td><td>Enter the IP address of the External VIP.</td></tr> <tr> <td>External VIP Address IPv6 field</td><td>Enter the IPv6 address of the External VIP.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Virtual Router ID field</td><td>Enter the Router ID for the HA.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Internal VIP Address IPv6 field</td><td>Enter the IPv6 address of the Internal IP.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Internal VIP Address field</td><td>Enter the IP address of the Internal VIP.</td></tr> </table>	External VIP Address field	Enter the IP address of the External VIP.	External VIP Address IPv6 field	Enter the IPv6 address of the External VIP.	Virtual Router ID field	Enter the Router ID for the HA.	Internal VIP Address IPv6 field	Enter the IPv6 address of the Internal IP.	Internal VIP Address field	Enter the IP address of the Internal VIP.
External VIP Address field	Enter the IP address of the External VIP.										
External VIP Address IPv6 field	Enter the IPv6 address of the External VIP.										
Virtual Router ID field	Enter the Router ID for the HA.										
Internal VIP Address IPv6 field	Enter the IPv6 address of the Internal IP.										
Internal VIP Address field	Enter the IP address of the Internal VIP.										

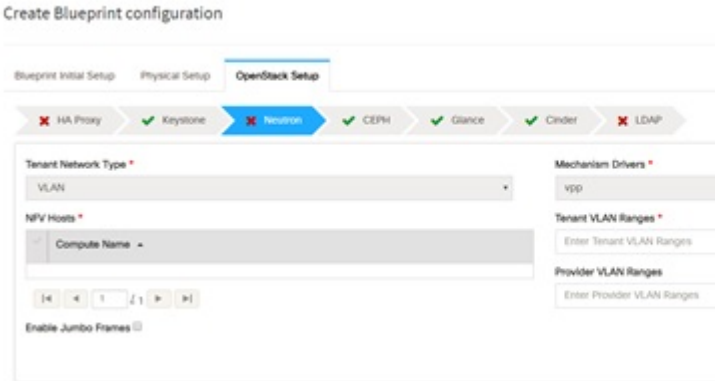
Name	Description				
Keystone	<p>The following are the Pre-populated field values. This option is always set to be true.</p>  <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Admin Username field</td><td>admin</td></tr> <tr> <td>Admin Tenant Name field</td><td>admin</td></tr> </table>	Admin Username field	admin	Admin Tenant Name field	admin
Admin Username field	admin				
Admin Tenant Name field	admin				

Name	Description
LDAP (Only if Keystonev3 is enabled) Note This option is only available with Keystone v3	

Name	Description																				
	<p>This is available only when Keystone v3 and LDAP both are enabled under <i>Optional Features and Services</i> in Blueprint Initial Setup.</p> <p>Create Blueprint configuration</p>  <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>Domain Name field</td><td>Enter the Domain name.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Object Class for Users field</td><td>Enter a string as input.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Object Class for Groups field</td><td>Enter a string.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Domain Name Tree for Users field</td><td>Enter a string.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Domain Name Tree for Groups field</td><td>Enter a string.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Suffix for Domain Name field</td><td>Enter a string.</td></tr> <tr> <td>URL field</td><td>Enter a URL with ending port number.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Domain Name of bind user field</td><td>Enter a string.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Password field</td><td>Enter Password as string format.</td></tr> <tr> <td>User Filter field</td><td>Enter filter name as string.</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Domain Name field	Enter the Domain name.	Object Class for Users field	Enter a string as input.	Object Class for Groups field	Enter a string.	Domain Name Tree for Users field	Enter a string.	Domain Name Tree for Groups field	Enter a string.	Suffix for Domain Name field	Enter a string.	URL field	Enter a URL with ending port number.	Domain Name of bind user field	Enter a string.	Password field	Enter Password as string format.	User Filter field	Enter filter name as string.
Domain Name field	Enter the Domain name.																				
Object Class for Users field	Enter a string as input.																				
Object Class for Groups field	Enter a string.																				
Domain Name Tree for Users field	Enter a string.																				
Domain Name Tree for Groups field	Enter a string.																				
Suffix for Domain Name field	Enter a string.																				
URL field	Enter a URL with ending port number.																				
Domain Name of bind user field	Enter a string.																				
Password field	Enter Password as string format.																				
User Filter field	Enter filter name as string.																				


Name	Description	
	User ID Attribute field	Enter a string.
	User Name Attribute field	Enter a string.
	User Mail Attribute field	Enter a string.
	Group Name Attribute field	Enter a string.
	Group_filter field	It is optional. Enter a string.
	Group Member Attribute field.	It is optional. Enter a string.
	Group Id Attribute field	It is optional. Enter a string.
	Group Members Are Ids field.	It is optional. Enter True or False

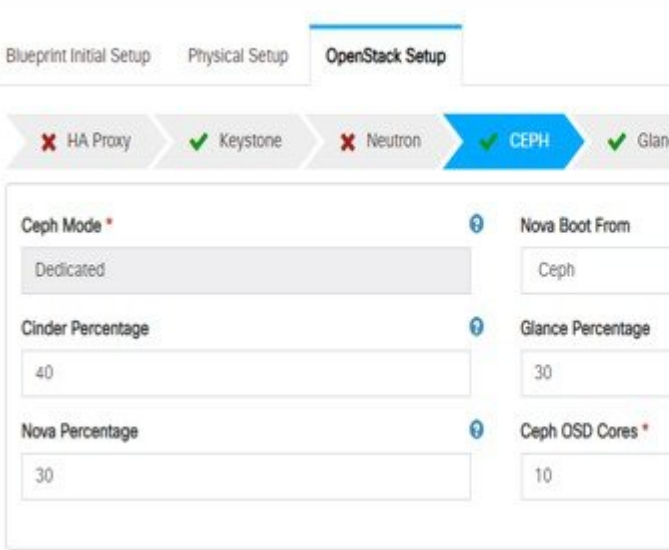
Name	Description
Neutron	


Name	Description
	<p>Neutron fields change on the basis of <i>Tenant Network Type</i> selection from Blueprint Initial Setup. Following are the options available for Neutron for OVS/VLAN:</p> 
Tenant Network Type field	It is Auto-filled based on the <i>Tenant Network Type</i> selected in the Blueprint Initial Setup page.
Mechanism Drivers field	It is Auto-filled based on the <i>Tenant Network Type</i> selected in Blueprint Initial Setup page.
NFV Hosts field	<p>It is Auto-filled with the Compute you added in Server and Roles.</p> <p>If you select All in this section NFV_HOSTS: ALL is added to the Blueprint or you can select one particular compute. For Example:</p> <p>NFV_HOSTS: compute-server-1, compute-server-2.</p>
Tenant VLAN Ranges field	List of ranges separated by comma form start:end.
Provider VLAN Ranges field	List of ranges separated by comma form start:end.
VM Hugh Page Size (available for NFV_HOSTS option) field	2M or 1G

Name	Description	
	Enable Jumbo Frames field	Enable the checkbox.
	For Tenant Network Type, Linux Bridge everything remains the same but Tenant VLAN Ranges is removed.	

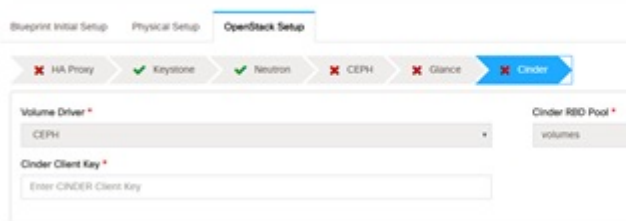
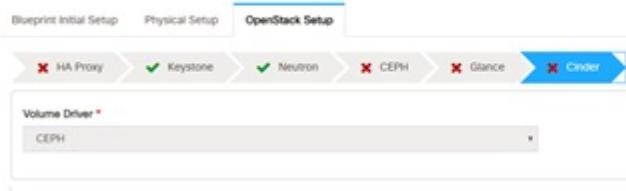
Name	Description
CEPH	

Name	Description																
	<p>1. 1. When Object Storage Backend is selected as <i>Central</i> in the blueprint initial setup.</p> <p>Create Blueprint configuration</p>  <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Ceph Mode</td><td>By default Ceph Mode is Central.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Cluster ID</td><td>Enter the Cluster ID.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Monitor Host</td><td>Enter the Monitor Host for CEPH</td></tr> <tr> <td>Monitor Members</td><td>Enter the Monitor Members for CEPH</td></tr> <tr> <td>Secret UUID</td><td>Enter the Secret UUID for CEPH</td></tr> <tr> <td>NOVA Boot from</td><td>You can choose CEPH or local from the drop-down list.</td></tr> <tr> <td>NOVA RBD POOL</td><td>Enter the NOVA RBD Pool (default's to vms)</td></tr> <tr> <td>CEPH NAT</td><td>CEPH NAT is required for Central Ceph and when mgmt network is not routable.</td></tr> </table> <p>2. 2. When Object Storage Backend is selected as <i>Dedicated</i> in the blueprint initial setup for dedicated Ceph.</p>	Ceph Mode	By default Ceph Mode is Central.	Cluster ID	Enter the Cluster ID.	Monitor Host	Enter the Monitor Host for CEPH	Monitor Members	Enter the Monitor Members for CEPH	Secret UUID	Enter the Secret UUID for CEPH	NOVA Boot from	You can choose CEPH or local from the drop-down list.	NOVA RBD POOL	Enter the NOVA RBD Pool (default's to vms)	CEPH NAT	CEPH NAT is required for Central Ceph and when mgmt network is not routable.
Ceph Mode	By default Ceph Mode is Central.																
Cluster ID	Enter the Cluster ID.																
Monitor Host	Enter the Monitor Host for CEPH																
Monitor Members	Enter the Monitor Members for CEPH																
Secret UUID	Enter the Secret UUID for CEPH																
NOVA Boot from	You can choose CEPH or local from the drop-down list.																
NOVA RBD POOL	Enter the NOVA RBD Pool (default's to vms)																
CEPH NAT	CEPH NAT is required for Central Ceph and when mgmt network is not routable.																

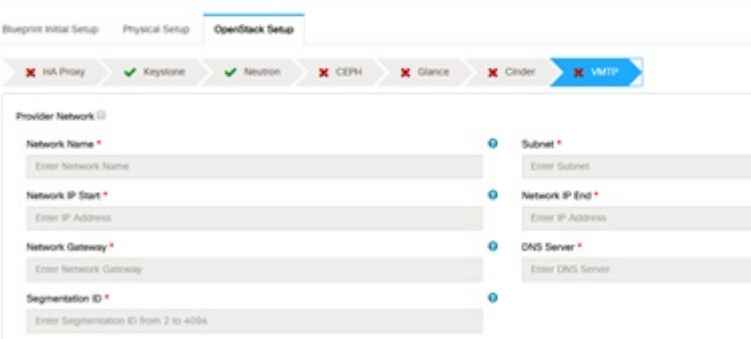

Name	Description
	 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ceph Mode: By default Dedicated. • NOVA Boot From: Can be <i>Ceph</i> or <i>local</i>. • Cinder Percentage: Available when Nova Boot From is <i>local</i> or <i>Ceph</i>. • Glance Percentage: Available when Nova Boot From is <i>local</i> or <i>Ceph</i>. • Nova Percentage: Available when Nova Boot From is <i>Ceph</i>. <p>If NOVA Boot From is <i>local</i>, the total of Cinder Percentage and Glance Percentage must be 100.</p> <p>If NOVA Boot From is <i>Ceph</i>, the total of Cinder Percentage and Glance Percentage must be 100.</p> <p>CEPH OSD RESERVED PCORES : Default value is 2. Minimum value is 2 and Maximum value is 12 (only for Micropod and hyper-converged pods).</p>

Name	Description
	<p>3. When Object Storage Backend is selected as <i>NetApp</i> in the blueprint initial setup, the</p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ceph Mode: NetApp is selected by default. • Cinder Percentage: Enter Cinder percentage for Ceph. • Glance Percentage: Enter glance percentage for Ceph <p>Total of Cinder Percentage and Glance Percentage must be 100.</p>

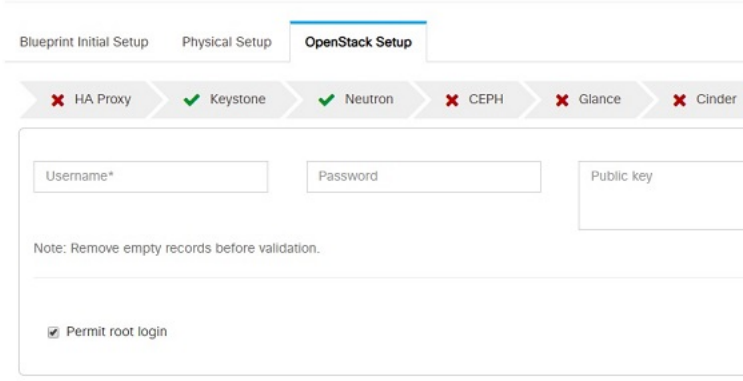
Name	Description						
GLANCE	1. When Object Storage Backend is selected as <i>Central</i> in the blueprint initial setup.						
	<div>Create Blueprint configuration</div> <div><div>Blueprint Initial SetupPhysical SetupOpenStack Setup</div><div><div>✖ HA Proxy✔ Keystone✔ Neutron✖ CEPH✔ Glance✖ Cinder</div><div><div>Store Backend * CEPH</div><div>Glance RBD Pool * images</div><div>Glance Client Key * Enter GLANCE Client Key</div></div></div></div>						
	<table><tr><td>Store Backend</td><td>By default CEPH.</td></tr><tr><td>Glance RBD Pool field</td><td>By default images.</td></tr><tr><td>Glance Client Key</td><td>Enter GLANCE Client Key</td></tr></table>	Store Backend	By default CEPH.	Glance RBD Pool field	By default images.	Glance Client Key	Enter GLANCE Client Key
	Store Backend	By default CEPH.					
	Glance RBD Pool field	By default images.					
Glance Client Key	Enter GLANCE Client Key						
2. When Object Storage Backend is selected as <i>Dedicated</i> in the blueprint initial setup.							
<div>Create Blueprint configuration</div> <div><div>Blueprint Initial SetupPhysical SetupOpenStack Setup</div><div><div>✖ HA Proxy✔ Keystone✔ Neutron✖ CEPH✔ Glance✖ Cinder</div><div><div>Store Backend * CEPH</div></div></div></div>							
By default Populated for CEPH Dedicated with Store Backend value as CEPH.							


Name	Description						
CINDER	By default Populated for <i>CEPH Dedicated</i> with Volume Driver value as CEPH .						
	Create Blueprint configuration						
							
	<table><tr><td>Volume Driver</td><td>By default CEPH.</td></tr><tr><td>Cinder RBD Pool field</td><td>By default volumes.</td></tr><tr><td>Cinder Client Key</td><td>Enter Cinder Client Key</td></tr></table>	Volume Driver	By default CEPH.	Cinder RBD Pool field	By default volumes.	Cinder Client Key	Enter Cinder Client Key
	Volume Driver	By default CEPH.					
Cinder RBD Pool field	By default volumes.						
Cinder Client Key	Enter Cinder Client Key						
							

Name	Description
VMTP VMTP optional section will only be visible once VMTP is selected from Blueprint Initial Setup.	

Name	Description														
	<p>Check one of the check boxes to specify a VMTP network:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Provider Network • External Network <p>For the Provider Network complete the following:</p> <p>Create Blueprint configuration</p>  <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Network Name field</td><td>Enter the name for the external network.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Subnet field</td><td>Enter the Subnet for Provider Network.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Network IP Start field</td><td>Enter the start of the floating IPv4 address.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Network IP End field</td><td>Enter the end of the floating IPv4 address.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Network Gateway field</td><td>Enter the IPv4 address for the Gateway.</td></tr> <tr> <td>DNS Server field</td><td>Enter the DNS server IPv4 address.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Segmentation ID field</td><td>Enter the segmentation ID.</td></tr> </table> <p>For External Network fill in the following details:</p> 	Network Name field	Enter the name for the external network.	Subnet field	Enter the Subnet for Provider Network.	Network IP Start field	Enter the start of the floating IPv4 address.	Network IP End field	Enter the end of the floating IPv4 address.	Network Gateway field	Enter the IPv4 address for the Gateway.	DNS Server field	Enter the DNS server IPv4 address.	Segmentation ID field	Enter the segmentation ID.
Network Name field	Enter the name for the external network.														
Subnet field	Enter the Subnet for Provider Network.														
Network IP Start field	Enter the start of the floating IPv4 address.														
Network IP End field	Enter the end of the floating IPv4 address.														
Network Gateway field	Enter the IPv4 address for the Gateway.														
DNS Server field	Enter the DNS server IPv4 address.														
Segmentation ID field	Enter the segmentation ID.														

Name	Description	
	Network Name field	Enter the name for the external network.
	Subnet field	Enter the Subnet for the external Network.
	Network IP Start field	Enter the start of the floating IPv4 address.
	Network IP End field	Enter the end of the floating IPv4 address.
	Network Gateway field	Enter the IPv4 address for the Gateway.
	DNS Server field	Enter the DNS server IPv4 address.
TLS This optional section will only be visible once TLS is selected from Blueprint Initial Setup Page.	TLS has two options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • External LB VIP FQDN - -Text field. • External LB VIP TLS True/False. By default this option is false. 	

Name	Description						
<p>Under the OpenStack setup tab, Vim_admins tab will be visible only when Vim_admins is selected from the Optional Features & Services under the Blueprint Initial setup tab</p>	<p>Following are the field descriptions for VIM Admins:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Add Username, Password, Public key or both for the non-root login. • At least one Vim Admin must be configured when Permit root login is false. <p>Create Blueprint configuration</p>  <table border="1"> <tr> <td>User Name</td><td>Enter username for Vim Admin.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Password</td><td>Password field. Admin hash password should always start with \$6.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Public Key</td><td>Public key for vim admin should always start with 'ssh-rsa AAAA....'</td></tr> </table>	User Name	Enter username for Vim Admin.	Password	Password field. Admin hash password should always start with \$6.	Public Key	Public key for vim admin should always start with 'ssh-rsa AAAA....'
User Name	Enter username for Vim Admin.						
Password	Password field. Admin hash password should always start with \$6.						
Public Key	Public key for vim admin should always start with 'ssh-rsa AAAA....'						

Name	Description												
<p>SwiftStack optional section will be visible once SwiftStack is selected from Blueprint Initial Setup Page. SwiftStack is only supported with KeyStonev2 . If you select Keystonev3, swiftstack will not be available for configuration.</p>	<p>Following are the options that needs to be filled for SwiftStack:</p> <p>Create Blueprint configuration</p>  <table> <tr> <td>Cluster End Point field</td><td>IP address of PAC (Proxy-Account-Container) endpoint.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Admin User field</td><td>Admin user for swift to authenticate in keystone.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Admin Tenant field</td><td>The service tenant corresponding to the Account-Container used by the Swiftstack.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Reseller Prefix field</td><td>Reseller_prefix as configured for Keysone Auth,AuthToken support in Swiftstack. Example: KEY_</td></tr> <tr> <td>Admin Password field</td><td>swiftstack_admin_password</td></tr> <tr> <td>Protocol</td><td>http or https</td></tr> </table>	Cluster End Point field	IP address of PAC (Proxy-Account-Container) endpoint.	Admin User field	Admin user for swift to authenticate in keystone.	Admin Tenant field	The service tenant corresponding to the Account-Container used by the Swiftstack.	Reseller Prefix field	Reseller_prefix as configured for Keysone Auth,AuthToken support in Swiftstack. Example: KEY_	Admin Password field	swiftstack_admin_password	Protocol	http or https
Cluster End Point field	IP address of PAC (Proxy-Account-Container) endpoint.												
Admin User field	Admin user for swift to authenticate in keystone.												
Admin Tenant field	The service tenant corresponding to the Account-Container used by the Swiftstack.												
Reseller Prefix field	Reseller_prefix as configured for Keysone Auth,AuthToken support in Swiftstack. Example: KEY_												
Admin Password field	swiftstack_admin_password												
Protocol	http or https												

10. For SolidFire, enter the following:

Name	Description
------	-------------

SolidFire is visible for configuration on day0
 SolidFire is not allowed as a day-2 deployment option
 SolidFire is always available with CEPH.

Cluster MVIP field	Management IP of SolidFire cluster.
Cluster SVIP field	Storage VIP of SolidFire cluster.
Admin Username	Admin user on SolidFire cluster
Admin Password	Admin password on SolidFire cluster.

11. For NetApp, enter the following:

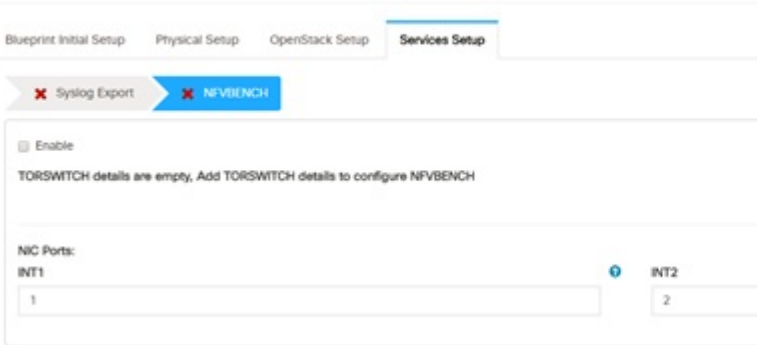
Name	Decription
NETAPP	Optional NETAPP configuration. No dedicated Ceph allowed.

Name	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Server Hostname: It is the IPv4/IPv6/Hostname/FQDN of NetApp management/API server. • Server Port: It is the port of NetApp management/API server. 80 for HTTP 443 for HTTPS. • Transport Type: It is HTTP or HTTPS. Server port depends on Transport type. • Username : It is the username of Netapp API Server. • Password: It is the password of NetApp API Server. • Cinder NFS Server: It is the data path IP of NFS Server. Provide the IPv4/IPv6/Hostname/FQDN • Cinder NFS Path: It is the path of NFS Server. • Nova NFS Server: It is the data path IP of NOVA NFS server. Provide the IPv4/IPv6/Hostname/FQDN. • Nova NFS Path: It is the path of NOVA NFS. • V Server: SVM for Cinder NFS volume. Provide the IPv4/IPv6/Hostname/FQDN. • Glance NFS Server : It is the data path of glance NFS server. Provide the IPv4/IPv6/Hostname/FQDN • Glance NFS Path: It is the path of glance NFS server.

12. If **Syslog Export** or **NFVBENCH** is selected in **Blueprint Initial Setup**, the **Services Setup** pane is enabled for the user to view.

Following are the options under **Services Setup** tab:

Name	Description												
Syslog Export	<p>Following are the options for Syslog Settings:</p> <p>Create Blueprint configuration</p> <p>Blueprint Initial Setup Physical Setup OpenStack Setup Services Setup</p> <p>Syslog Export NPVENCH</p> <p>Remote Host * Enter IP Address</p> <p>Facility * local5</p> <p>Port * 514</p> <p>Protocol * UDP</p> <p>Severity * debug</p> <p>Clients * ELK</p>												
	<table> <tr> <td>Remote Host</td><td>Enter Syslog IP address.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Protocol</td><td>Only UDP is supported.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Facility</td><td>Defaults to local5.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Severity</td><td>Defaults to debug.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Clients</td><td>Defaults to ELK.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Port</td><td>Defaults to 514 but can be modified by the User.</td></tr> </table>	Remote Host	Enter Syslog IP address.	Protocol	Only UDP is supported.	Facility	Defaults to local5.	Severity	Defaults to debug.	Clients	Defaults to ELK.	Port	Defaults to 514 but can be modified by the User.
Remote Host	Enter Syslog IP address.												
Protocol	Only UDP is supported.												
Facility	Defaults to local5.												
Severity	Defaults to debug.												
Clients	Defaults to ELK.												
Port	Defaults to 514 but can be modified by the User.												

Name	Description
NFVBENCH	<p>NFVBENCH enable checkbox which by default is <i>False</i>.</p> <p>Create Blueprint configuration</p>  <p>Add ToR information connected to switch:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select a TOR Switch and enter the Switch name. • Enter the port number. For example:eth1/5. VTEP VLANS (mandatory and needed only for VXLAN): Enter 2 different VLANs for VLAN1 and VLAN2 • NIC Ports: INT1 and INT2 optional input. Enter the 2 port numbers of the 4-port 10G Intel NIC at the management node used for the NFVBench.
ENABLE_ESC_PRIV	Enable the checkbox to set it as True. By default it is <i>False</i> .

Step 3 To create a C Series Blueprint:

1. On the **Blueprint Initial Setup** page of the Cisco VIM Insight, complete the following fields:

The screenshot displays the 'Create Blueprint configuration' interface in the Cisco VIM Unified Management console. The left sidebar shows navigation options: Dashboard, Pre-Install, Blueprint Setup (selected), Blueprint Management, Post-Install, View Topology, and Pod User Administration. The main content area is titled 'Create Blueprint configuration' and includes tabs for 'Blueprint Initial Setup', 'Physical Setup', and 'OpenStack Setup'. The 'Blueprint Initial Setup' tab contains the following fields:

- Blueprint Name:** A text input field with a red asterisk indicating it is required.
- Tenant Network:** A dropdown menu with 'LinuxBridge/VXLAN' selected.
- Object Storage Backend:** A dropdown menu with 'Ceph' selected.
- Platform Type:** A dropdown menu with 'C-series' selected.
- POD Type:** A dropdown menu with 'Fullon' selected.

Below these fields is a section for 'Optional Features & Services' with a grid of checkboxes:

- ☐ Syslog Export Settings
- ☐ ES_REMOTE_BACKUP
- ☐ NFV Monitoring
- ☐ Swiftstack
- ☐ Pod Name
- ☐ Vlm Admins
- ☐ Enable Eac Priv
- ☐ Install Mode
- ☐ Heat
- ☐ Mfbench
- ☐ SNOV CARD TYPE
- ☐ TORSwitch Information
- ☐ Permit Root Login
- ☐ IF Auto Backup
- ☐ LDAP
- ☐ VMTP
- ☐ NETAPP_SUPPORT
- ☐ Keystone v3
- ☐ TLS

At the bottom, there is an 'Import Existing VIM file' section with a file input field and 'Browse' and 'Load' buttons.

Name	Description
Blueprint Name field.	Enter the name for the blueprint configuration.
Platform Type drop-down list	Choose one of the following platform types: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • B-Series (By default) • C-Series (Select C Series)
Tenant Network drop-down list	Choose one of the following tenant network types: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Linux Bridge/VXLAN • OVS/VLAN • VTS/VLAN • VPP/VLAN • ACI/VLAN <p>Note when VTS/VLAN or ACI/VLAN is selected then respective tabs are available on Blueprint setup. When Mechanism driver OVS or ACI is selected, VM_HUGEPAGE_PERCENTAGE field is enabled for all standalone compute nodes, when NFV_HOSTS is enabled.</p>

Name	Description
Pod Type drop-down list	<p>Choose one of the following pod type :</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fullon(By Default) • Micro • UMHC • NGENAHC <p>Note</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • UMHC pod type is only supported for OVS/VLAN tenant type. • NGENAHC is supported for VPP/VLAN tenant type with no SRIOV • Pod type micro is supported for OVS/VLAN, ACI/VLAN,VPP/VLAN.
Ceph Mode drop-down list	<p>Choose one of the following Ceph types:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dedicated (By Default) • Central. Central is not supported in Production
Optional and Services Features checkbox	<p>Swiftstack, LDAP, Syslog Export Settings, Install Mode, TorSwitch Information, TLS, NFVMON, Pod Name, VMTP, NFVBench, Autbackup, Heat, Keystone v3, Enable Esc Priv.</p> <p>If any one is selected, the corresponding section is visible in various Blueprint sections.</p> <p>By default all features are disabled except Auto Backup.</p>
Import Existing YAML file	<p>If you have an existing C Series YAML file you can use this feature to upload the file.</p> <p>Insight will automatically fill in the fields and any missed mandatory field will be highlighted in the respective section.</p>

2. Click **Physical Setup** to advance to the **Registry Setup** configuration page. Fill in the following details for Registry Setup:

Name	Description
Registry User Name text field	User-Name for Registry (Mandatory).
Registry Password text field	Password for Registry (Mandatory).
Registry Email text field	Email ID for Registry (Mandatory).

Once all the mandatory fields are filled the **Validation Check Registry Page** will be changed to a Green Tick.

- Click **CIMC Common Tab** and complete the following fields:

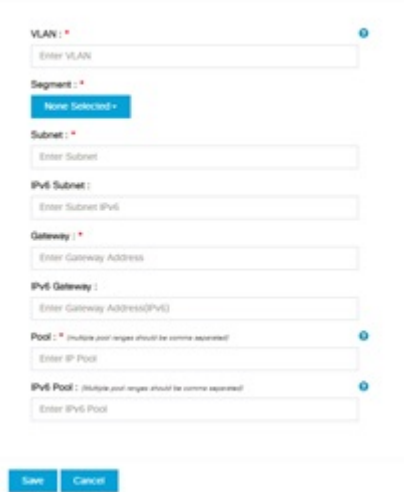
Name	Description
User Name disabled field	By default value is Admin.
Password text field	Enter Password for UCSM Common (Mandatory).

- Click **Networking** to advance to the networking section of the Blueprint.

© 2018 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.
Cisco VIM Unified Management Version: 2.2.2

Name	Description
Domain Name field	Enter the domain name. (Mandatory)
HTTP Proxy Server field	If your configuration uses an HTTP proxy server, enter the IP address of the server.
HTTPS Proxy Server field	If your configuration uses an HTTPS proxy server, enter the IP address of the server.
IP Tables on Management Pods	Specifies the list of IP Address with Mask.
NTP Servers field	Enter a maximum of four and minimum of one IPv4 and/or IPv6 addresses in the table.
Domain Name Servers field	Enter a maximum of three and minimum of one IPv4 and/or IPV6 addresses.

Name	Description
Networks table	

Name	Description						
	<p>Network table is pre-populated with Segments. To add Networks you can either clear all the table with Delete all or click edit icon for each segment and fill in the details.</p> <p>You can add, edit, or delete network information in the table.</p> <p>Edit Network</p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Click Add (+) to add new entries (networks) to the table. • Specify the following fields in the Edit Entry to Networks dialog: <table> <tr> <th>Name</th><th>Description</th></tr> <tr> <td>VLAN field</td><td>Enter the VLAN ID. For Segment - Provider, the VLAN ID value is 'none'.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Segment drop-down list</td><td>When you add/edit new segment then following segments types are available in the form of dropdown list and you can select only one. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • API • Management/provision • Tenant </td></tr> </table>	Name	Description	VLAN field	Enter the VLAN ID . For Segment - Provider, the VLAN ID value is 'none'.	Segment drop-down list	When you add/edit new segment then following segments types are available in the form of dropdown list and you can select only one. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • API • Management/provision • Tenant
Name	Description						
VLAN field	Enter the VLAN ID . For Segment - Provider, the VLAN ID value is 'none'.						
Segment drop-down list	When you add/edit new segment then following segments types are available in the form of dropdown list and you can select only one. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • API • Management/provision • Tenant 						

Name	Description	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Storage • External • Provider • ACIINFRA <p>Note Aciinfra segment is available only when ACI/VLAN tenant type is selected) Depending upon the segment some of the entries below are not needed. Please refer to the example file in openstack-configs dir for details.</p>
	Subnet field	Enter the IPv4 address for the subnet.
	IPv6 Subnet field	Enter IPv6 address. This field will be available only for Management provision and API
	Gateway field	Enter the IPv4 address for the Gateway.
	Gateway IPv6 field	Enter the IPv6 address for the gateway. This will support for API and management provision.
	Pool field	Enter the pool information in the required format, for example: 10.1.15-10.1.1.10,10.2.15-10.2.1.10 This field is available only for the Mgmt/Provision, Storage, and Tenant segments.
	IPv6 Pool field	

Name	Description
	Enter the pool information in the required format. For example: 10.1.15-10.1.1.10,102.15-102.1.10
	Click Save .

5. On the **Servers and Roles** page of the Cisco VIM Suite wizard, a pre-populated table filled with Roles : Control, Compute and Block Storage (Only if CEPH Dedicated is selected in Blueprint Initial Setup is available).

The screenshot shows the 'Create Blueprint configuration' page in the Cisco VIM Unified Management interface. The 'Servers and Roles' tab is selected, showing a table with the following data:

Server Name	CMC IP	CMC User name	CMC Password	Rack ID	Role	Management IP	Management IPv6	Action
					control			[Edit] [Delete]
					control			[Edit] [Delete]
					control			[Edit] [Delete]
					compute			[Edit] [Delete]

Note If you choose mechanism driver as OVS or ACI, VM_HUGEPAGE_PERCENTAGE field column is available for compute nodes, where you can fill values from 0 to 100%, when NFV_HOSTS: ALL is chosen. Also, option of NIC Level Redundancy appears only when Intel Nic Support is set to true. This is applicable only in the case of M5 based pods.

Name	Description
Server User Name field	Enter the username of the server.
Disable Hyperthreading	Default value is false. You can set it as true or false.

Name	Description															
Cobbler	Enter the Cobbler details in the following fields:															
	<table> <tr> <th>Name</th><th>Description</th></tr> <tr> <td>Cobbler Timeout field</td><td>The default value is 45 min. This is an optional parameter. Timeout is displayed in minutes, and its value ranges from 30 to 120.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Block Storage Kickstart field</td><td>Kickstart file for Storage Node.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Admin Password Hash field</td><td>Enter the Admin Password. Password should be Alphanumeric. Password should contain minimum 8 characters and maximum of 32 characters.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Cobbler Username field</td><td>Enter the cobbler username to access the cobbler server.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Control Kickstart field</td><td>Kickstart file for Control Node.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Compute Kickstart field</td><td>Kickstart file for Compute Node.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Cobbler Admin Username field</td><td>Enter the admin username of the Cobbler.</td></tr> </table>	Name	Description	Cobbler Timeout field	The default value is 45 min. This is an optional parameter. Timeout is displayed in minutes, and its value ranges from 30 to 120.	Block Storage Kickstart field	Kickstart file for Storage Node.	Admin Password Hash field	Enter the Admin Password. Password should be Alphanumeric. Password should contain minimum 8 characters and maximum of 32 characters.	Cobbler Username field	Enter the cobbler username to access the cobbler server.	Control Kickstart field	Kickstart file for Control Node.	Compute Kickstart field	Kickstart file for Compute Node.	Cobbler Admin Username field
Name	Description															
Cobbler Timeout field	The default value is 45 min. This is an optional parameter. Timeout is displayed in minutes, and its value ranges from 30 to 120.															
Block Storage Kickstart field	Kickstart file for Storage Node.															
Admin Password Hash field	Enter the Admin Password. Password should be Alphanumeric. Password should contain minimum 8 characters and maximum of 32 characters.															
Cobbler Username field	Enter the cobbler username to access the cobbler server.															
Control Kickstart field	Kickstart file for Control Node.															
Compute Kickstart field	Kickstart file for Compute Node.															
Cobbler Admin Username field	Enter the admin username of the Cobbler.															

Name	Description
<p>Add Entry to Servers and Roles</p> <p>Note when Pod type micro is selected then all the three servers will be associated with control, compute and block storage role.</p> <p>For Example:</p> <p>Roles</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Block Storage <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • -Server 1 • -Server 2 • -Server 3 • Control <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • -Server 1 • -Server 2 • -Server 3 • Compute <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • -Server 1 • -Server 2 • -Server 3 <p>Note When Pod type UMHC is selected then auto ToR configuration is not supported and the ToR info at server and roles level is not allowed to be entered.</p>	

Name	Description																
	<p>Click Edit or + to add a new server and role to the table.</p> <p>If mechanism driver is either OVS or ACI, an additional optional field VM_HUGEPAGE_PERCENTAGE is shown when compute role is chosen; This option is only valid when NFV_HOSTS is set to ALL; If no value is entered then the global value of VM_HUGEPAGE_PERCENTAGE is used.</p> <div> <p>Server And Roles</p> <p>Server Name * ?</p> <input type="text" value="Enter Server Name"/> <p>VIC Slot</p> <input type="text" value="Enter VIC Slot"/> <p>CIMC IP * ?</p> <input type="text" value="Enter CIMC IP Address"/> <p>CIMC User Name</p> <input type="text" value="Enter CIMC Username"/> <p>CIMC Password ?</p> <input type="password" value="Enter CIMC Password"/> <p>Rack ID * ?</p> <input type="text" value="Enter Rack ID"/> <p>Role *</p> <div> </div> <p>Management IP ?</p> <input type="text" value="Enter Management IP Address"/> <p>Management IPv6 ?</p> <input type="text" value="Enter Management IPv6 Address"/> <p>Save Cancel</p> </div> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Server Name</td><td>Entry the name of the server.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Rack ID field</td><td>The rack ID for the server.</td></tr> <tr> <td>VIC Slot field</td><td>Enter a VIC Slot.</td></tr> <tr> <td>CIMC IP field</td><td>Enter a IP address.</td></tr> <tr> <td>CIMC Username field</td><td>Enter a Username.</td></tr> <tr> <td>CIMC Password field</td><td>Enter a Password for CIMC.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Select the Role from the drop down list</td><td>Choose Control or Compute or Block Storage from the drop-down list.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Management IP</td><td>It is an optional field but if</td></tr> </table>	Server Name	Entry the name of the server.	Rack ID field	The rack ID for the server.	VIC Slot field	Enter a VIC Slot.	CIMC IP field	Enter a IP address.	CIMC Username field	Enter a Username.	CIMC Password field	Enter a Password for CIMC.	Select the Role from the drop down list	Choose Control or Compute or Block Storage from the drop-down list.	Management IP	It is an optional field but if
Server Name	Entry the name of the server.																
Rack ID field	The rack ID for the server.																
VIC Slot field	Enter a VIC Slot.																
CIMC IP field	Enter a IP address.																
CIMC Username field	Enter a Username.																
CIMC Password field	Enter a Password for CIMC.																
Select the Role from the drop down list	Choose Control or Compute or Block Storage from the drop-down list.																
Management IP	It is an optional field but if																

Name	Description	
		provided for one Server then it is mandatory to provide it for other Servers as well.
	Management IPv6	Routable and valid IPv6 address. It is an optional field but if provided for one server then it is mandatory for all other servers as well.
	BGP speaker addressees	Optional, only when NETWORK_OPTIONS is vxlan network, for controller node only, IP belongs to the vxlan-tenant network but not part of the pool.
Click Save or Add .	On clicking Save or Add all information related to Servers and Roles gets saved.	
If Configure ToR checkbox is True with at-least one switch detail, these fields will be displayed for each server and this is similar to DP Tor: Port Channel and Switch Name (Mandatory if Configure ToR is true)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Port Channel field • Switch Name field • Switch Port Info field 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enter the port channel input. • Enter the switch name. • Enter the switch port information.
DP ToR (Only for Control and Compute) : Mandatory if Intel NIC and Configure TOR is True.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Port Channel field • Switch Name field • Switch Port Info field 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enter the port channel input. • Enter the switch name. • Enter the switch port information.
SRIOV TOR INFO (Only for Compute Nodes). It is mandatory in server and roles if Intel NIC and Configure TOR is True. with TOR TYPE Nexus. For TOR TYPE NCS-5500 these fields are optional Switch Name (Mandatory if Configure ToR is true) . This field appears only when Intel NIC support is true, as Auto TOR config is not supported in VIC_NIC combo	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Switch Name field • Switch Port Info field 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enter the switch name. • Enter the switch port information.
Intel SRIOV VFS (valid for Intel NIC testbeds) and can be integer.	For SRIOV support for Intel NIC. By Default, SRIOV support is disabled. To enable, define a value in the range # * 1-32 when INTEL_NIC_SUPPORT is set True (X710 Max VFs = 32) # * 1-63 when CISCO_VIC_INTEL_SRIOV is set True (X520 Max VFs = 63)	

Name	Description
INTEL_SRIOV_PHYS_PORTS (valid for Intel NIC test beds) and can be of value 2 or 4 (default is 2)	In some cases the # of Physical SRIOV port needed is 4; to meet that requirement, define the following: # this is optional, if nothing is defined code will assume it to be 2; the only 2 integer values this parameter # takes is 2 or 4 and is true when INTEL_NIC_SUPPORT is True and INTEL_SRIOV_VFS is valid.. For NCS-5500 this value is set to 4 and is non-editable.
Click Save or Add .	If all mandatory fields are filled click Save or Add to add information on Servers and Roles.
Disable Hyperthreading	Default value is false. You can set it as true or false.
Click Save	

Note Maximum two ToR info needs to be configured for each connection type on each node (control, compute and block_storage node).

Note If pod type UMHC is selected then CISCO_VIC_INTEL_SRIOV is enabled to be TRUE. CISCO_VIC_INTEL_SRIOV is also supported on Micro pod with expanded computes

Note For Tenant type **ACI/VLAN**, port channel for each ToR port will not be available in servers and roles, as APIC will automatically assign port-channel numbers. Also, for ACI in full on mode you can select Intel NIC Support in the “Servers and Roles” section.

- Click **ToR Switch** checkbox in **Blueprint Initial Setup** to enable the **TOR SWITCH** configuration page. It is an **Optional** section in Blueprint Setup but once all the fields are filled in then it will become a part of the Blueprint.

Name	Description
Configure ToR optional checkbox. Note If UMHC is selected as podtype, configure TOR is not allowed.	Enabling this checkbox, changes the configure ToR section from false to true. Note Configure tor is true then ToR switch info maps in servers

Name	Description
ToR Switch Information mandatory table if you want to enter ToR information.	

Name	Description
	<p>Click (+) to add information for ToR Switch.</p> <p>Switch Details</p> <div> <div>Hostname *</div> <input type="text" value="Enter Switch Hostname"/> </div> <div> <div>Username *</div> <input type="text" value="Enter Switch Username"/> </div> <div> <div>Password *</div> <input type="password" value="Enter Password"/> </div> <div> <div>SSH-IP *</div> <input type="text" value="Enter IP Address"/> </div> <div> <div>SSN Num</div> <input type="text" value="Enter SSN Num"/> </div> <div> <div>VPC Peer Keepalive</div> <input type="text" value="Enter IP Address"/> </div> <div> <div>VPC Domain</div> <input type="text" value="Enter VPC Domain"/> </div> <div> <div>VPC Peer Port Info</div> <input type="text" value="Enter VPC Port"/> </div> <div> <div>VPC Peer VLAN Info</div> <input type="text" value="Enter VPC VLAN Info"/> </div> <div> <div>BR Management Port Info</div> <input type="text" value="Enter BR Port Info"/> </div> <div> <div>BR Management PO Info</div> <input type="text" value="Enter BR PO Info"/> </div> <div> <div>Save</div> <div>Cancel</div> </div>

Name	Description
	VPC Domain Cannot define if there is no peer.
	VPC Peer Port Info Interface for vpc peer ports.
	VPC Peer VLAN Info VLAN ids for vpc peer ports (optional).
	BR Management Port Info Management interface of build node.
	BR Management PO Info Port channel number for management interface of build node.
	BR Management VLAN info VLAN ID for management interface of build node (access).
Splitter Optic 4x10	For C Series platform type, Tenant Type is VPP/VLAN and Pod Type is either fullon or Micro, an additional choice will be provided to select the TOR Type. If selected TOR type is NCS-5500, then user can configure splitter cable parameters.
Click Save .	

Note When tenant type ACI/VLAN is selected, the TOR switch information table differs and is mandatory.

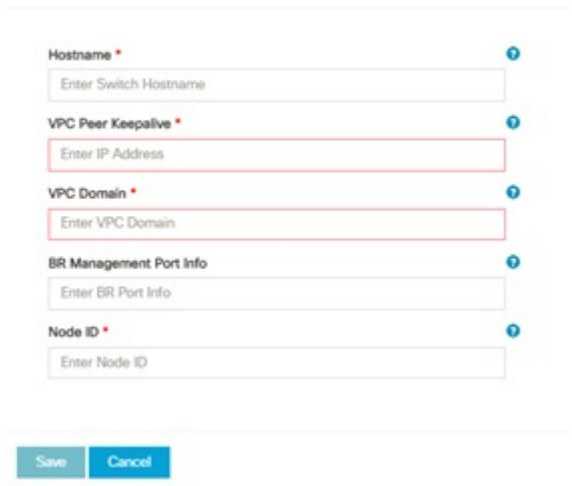
Name	Description
Configure ToR optional checkbox.	Enabling this checkbox, changes the configure ToR section from false to true.
Note If UMHC is selected as podtype, configure TOR is not allowed.	Note Configure tor is true then ToR switch info maps in servers

Name	Description
ToR Switch Information mandatory table if you want to enter ToR information.	

Name	Description
	<p>Click (+) to add information for ToR Switch.</p> <p>Switch Details</p> <div> <div>Hostname *</div> <input type="text" value="Enter Switch Hostname"/> </div> <div> <div>Username *</div> <input type="text" value="Enter Switch Username"/> </div> <div> <div>Password *</div> <input type="password" value="Enter Password"/> </div> <div> <div>SSH-IP *</div> <input type="text" value="Enter IP Address"/> </div> <div> <div>SSN Num</div> <input type="text" value="Enter SSN Num"/> </div> <div> <div>VPC Peer Keepalive</div> <input type="text" value="Enter IP Address"/> </div> <div> <div>VPC Domain</div> <input type="text" value="Enter VPC Domain"/> </div> <div> <div>VPC Peer Port Info</div> <input type="text" value="Enter VPC Port"/> </div> <div> <div>VPC Peer VLAN Info</div> <input type="text" value="Enter VPC VLAN Info"/> </div> <div> <div>BR Management Port Info</div> <input type="text" value="Enter BR Port Info"/> </div> <div> <div>BR Management PO Info</div> <input type="text" value="Enter BR PO Info"/> </div> <div> <div>Save</div> <div>Cancel</div> </div>

Name	Description	
	VPC Domain	Cannot define if there is no peer.
	VPC Peer Port Info	Interface for vpc peer ports.
	VPC Peer VLAN Info	VLAN ids for vpc peer ports (optional).
	BR Management Port Info	Management interface of build node.
	BR Management PO Info	Port channel number for management interface of build node.
	BR Management VLAN info	VLAN id for management interface of build node (access).
Click Save .		

Note When the Tenant type ACI/VLAN is selected, the ToR switch information table differs and is mandatory.

Name	Description										
Configure ToR	<p>Is not checked, as by default ACI will configure the ToRs</p> <p>Switch Details</p>  <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Host Name</td><td>ToR switch name.</td></tr> <tr> <td>VPC Peer keep alive</td><td>Enter Peer must be exist pair.</td></tr> <tr> <td>VPC Domain</td><td>Enter an integer.</td></tr> <tr> <td>BR management port info</td><td>Enter BR management port info eg. Eth1/19 ,atleast one pair to be exist.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Enter Node ID</td><td>Entered integer must be unique.</td></tr> </table>	Host Name	ToR switch name.	VPC Peer keep alive	Enter Peer must be exist pair.	VPC Domain	Enter an integer.	BR management port info	Enter BR management port info eg. Eth1/19 ,atleast one pair to be exist.	Enter Node ID	Entered integer must be unique.
Host Name	ToR switch name.										
VPC Peer keep alive	Enter Peer must be exist pair.										
VPC Domain	Enter an integer.										
BR management port info	Enter BR management port info eg. Eth1/19 ,atleast one pair to be exist.										
Enter Node ID	Entered integer must be unique.										

Note If TOR_TYPE is selected as NCS-5500, the TOR switch information table differs and is mandatory.

Name	Description
Configure ToR optional checkbox Note If NSC-5500 is selected as TOR_TYPE, configure TOR is set as mandatory.	<p>Enabling this checkbox, changes the configure ToR section from false to true.</p> <p>Note Configure TOR is true then ToR switchinfo maps in servers.</p>

Name	Description
If you want to enter NCS details fill in the NCS-5500 Information table.	

Name	Description												
	<p>Click (+) to add information for NCS-5500 Switch.</p> <p>Switch Details</p> <div> <div>Hostname *</div> <div>Enter Switch Hostname</div> <div>Username *</div> <div>Enter Switch Username</div> <div>Password *</div> <div>Enter Password</div> <div>SSH-IP *</div> <div>Enter IP Address</div> <div>VPC Peer Keepalive</div> <div>Enter IP Address</div> <div>VPC Peer Port Info</div> <div>Enter VPC Port</div> <div>VPC Peer Port Address</div> <div>Enter VPC Port Address</div> <div>ISIS Loopback Address</div> <div>Enter ISIS Loopback Address</div> <div>ISIS Net Entity Title</div> <div>Enter ISIS net entity title</div> <div>ISIS Prefix SID</div> <div>Enter ISIS Prefix SID</div> <div>BR Management Port Info</div> <div>Enter BR Port Info</div> <div>BR Management PO Info</div> <div>Enter BR PO Info</div> </div> <div> <div>Save</div> <div>Cancel</div> </div> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Name</td><td>Enter the NCS-5500 hostname.</td></tr> <tr> <td>User Name</td><td>Enter the NCS-5500 username.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Password</td><td>Enter the NCS-5500 password.</td></tr> <tr> <td>SSH IP</td><td>Enter the NCS-5500 ssh IP Address.</td></tr> <tr> <td>VPC Peer Link</td><td>Peer management IP.</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Name	Description	Name	Enter the NCS-5500 hostname.	User Name	Enter the NCS-5500 username.	Password	Enter the NCS-5500 password.	SSH IP	Enter the NCS-5500 ssh IP Address.	VPC Peer Link	Peer management IP.
Name	Description												
Name	Enter the NCS-5500 hostname.												
User Name	Enter the NCS-5500 username.												
Password	Enter the NCS-5500 password.												
SSH IP	Enter the NCS-5500 ssh IP Address.												
VPC Peer Link	Peer management IP.												

Name	Description	
	Name	Description
	BR Management PO Info	Port channel number for management interface of build node.
	BR Management VLAN info	VLAN id for management interface of build node (access).
	VPC Peer Port Info	Interface for vpc peer ports.
	VPC Peer Port Address	Address for ISIS exchange.
	ISIS Loopback Interface address	ISIS loopback IP Address.
	ISIS net entity title	Enter a String.
	ISIS prefix SID	Integer between 16000 to 1048575.

When TOR-TYPE selected as NCS-5500 and 2 NCS-5500 are configured it is mandatory to configure MULTI_SEGMENT_ROUTING_INFO

Name	Description
BGP AS Number field	Integer between 1 to 65535.
ISIS Area Tagfield	A valid string.
Loopback Interface namefield	Loopback Interface name.
API bundle IDfield	Integer between 1 to 65535.
API bridge domain field	String (Optional, only needed when br_api of mgmt node is also going through NCS-5500; this item and api_bundle_id are mutually exclusive).
EXT bridge domain field	A valid string (user pre-provisions physical, bundle interface, sub-interface and external BD for external uplink and provides external BD info setup_data).

- Click **NFVI Monitoring** checkbox in Blueprint Initial Setup to enable the NFVI Monitoring configuration tab.

Dashboard

Pre-Install

Blueprint Setup

Blueprint Management

Post-Install

View Topology

Post User Administration

Create Blueprint configuration

Save Draft Update Application Close

Blueprint Initial Setup OpenStack Setup

Registry Setup CMC Connect Networking Servers and Roles **Set Networks**

Master Admin IP *

Collector Management VIP *

Collector VM1 Info

Host Name *

Password *

CCUSER Password *

Admin IP *

Management IP *

Collector VM2 Info

Host Name *

Password *

CCUSER Password *

Admin IP *

Management IP *

Collector VM Connections

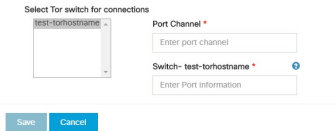
Table with 2 columns: To Info, Action

No data available

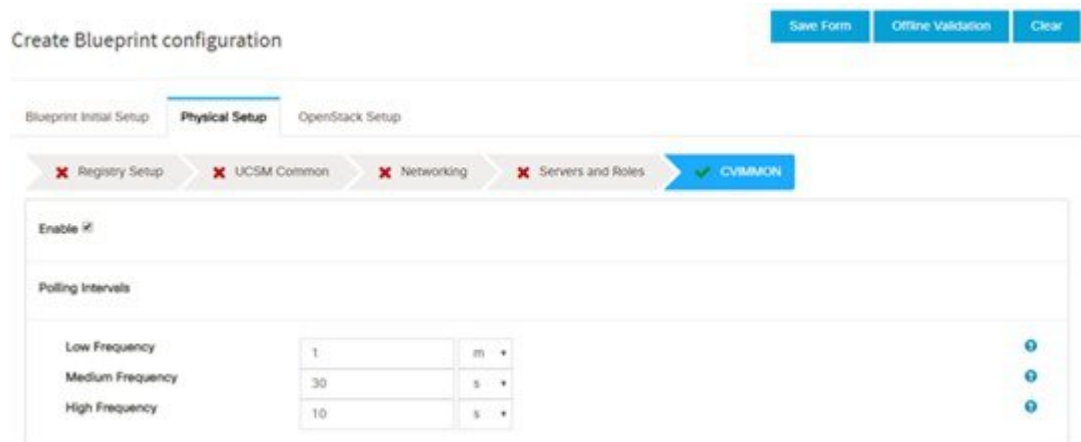
Dispatcher Rabbit MQ User Name *

© 2018 Cisco and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Cisco VIM Unified Management Version: 2.4.1

Name	Description
Admin IP	IP Address of Control Center VM
Management VIP	VIP for ceilometer/dispatcher to use, must be unique across VIM Pod
Host Name	Hostname of Collector VM
Password	Password of Collector VM
CCUSER Password	Password of CCUSER
Admin IP	SSH IP of Collector VM
Management IP	Management IP of Collector VM

Name	Description				
Collector ToR Connections	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click on (+) icon to Add Collector ToR Connections. 2. Select the ToR switches from list to add the information. 3. It is optional and available for ToR type NCS-5500 4. For now, it supports adding only one Collector ToR Connection <p>Add Collector Tor Connections</p>  <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Port Channel</td><td>Enter port channel.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Switch - {torSwitch-hostname}</td><td>Enter port number, For example, eth1/15.</td></tr> </table> <p>Click Save</p>	Port Channel	Enter port channel.	Switch - {torSwitch-hostname}	Enter port number, For example, eth1/15.
Port Channel	Enter port channel.				
Switch - {torSwitch-hostname}	Enter port number, For example, eth1/15.				
Rabbit MQ User Name	Enter Rabbit MQ username.				

8. Click **CVIMMON** checkbox in Blueprint Initial Setup to enable the CVIMMON configuration tab.



CVIM-MON is a built-in infrastructure monitoring service based on telegraf/prometheus/grafana.

When enabled, the telegraf service will be deployed on every node on the pod to capture infrastructure level stats (CPU, memory, network, containers, and so on.) and a Prometheus server will be installed on the management node to poll for these stats and store them in its time series database. The statistics can then be viewed using the grafana server that is accessible on the management node at port 3000 (password protected).

There are three levels of polling intervals which are used by different telegraf plugins:

- Low frequency interval is used to collect system level metrics like cpu, memory.

- Medium frequency interval is used to collect docker metrics.
- High frequency interval is used to collect rabbitmq metrics.

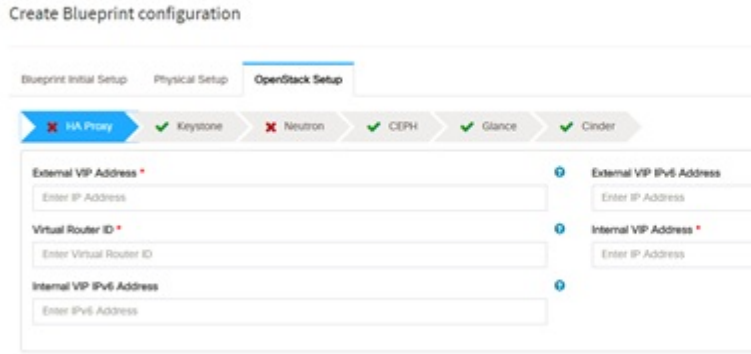

Defining polling intervals in setup data is optional. If not defined, the default values are used.

CVIM-MON is mutually exclusive to NFVIMON.

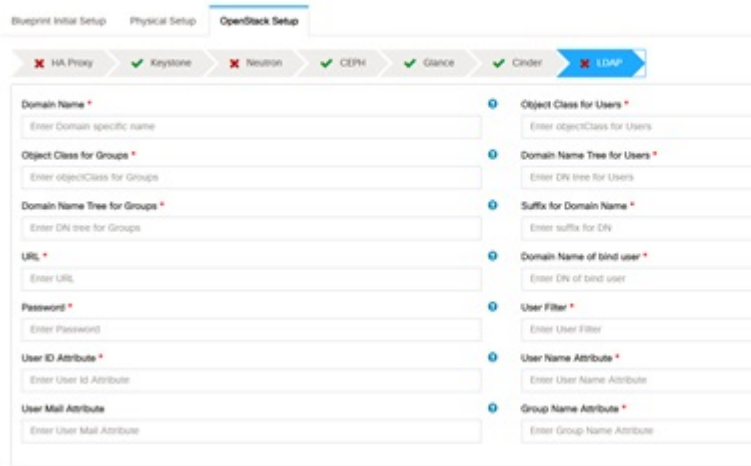
PODNAME is required, when CVIM-MON is enabled.

Name	Description
Enable	Default is False
Polling Intervals	
Low frequency	<Integer following with time sign (s/m/h)> # min of 1 minute (1m) if not defined defaults to 1m, also it needs to be higher than medium interval.
Medium frequency	<Integer following with time sign (s/m/h)> # min of 30 seconds (30s) if not defined defaults to 30s, also it needs to be higher than high interval.
High frequency	<Integer following with time sign (s/m/h)> # min of 10 seconds (10s) if not defined defaults to 10s.

9. Click **OpenStack Setup** Tab to advance to the **OpenStack Setup** Configuration page. On the **OpenStack Setup** Configuration page of the Cisco VIM Insight wizard, complete the following fields:

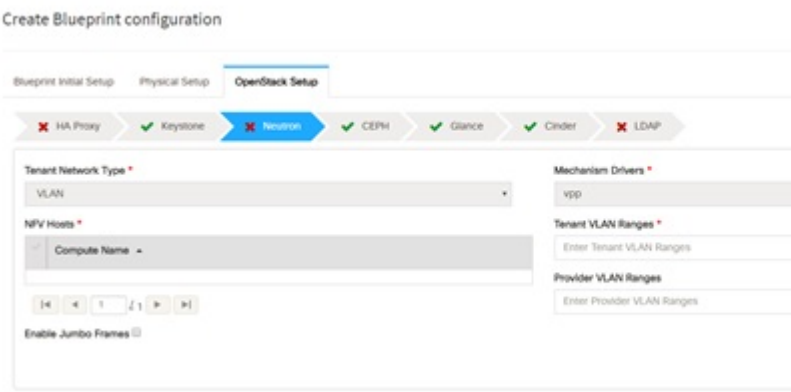
Name	Description										
HA Proxy	<p>Fill in the following details:</p>  <table border="1"> <tr> <td>External VIP Address field</td><td>Enter IP address of External VIP.</td></tr> <tr> <td>External VIP Address IPv6 field</td><td>Enter IPv6 address of External VIP.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Virtual Router ID field</td><td>Enter the Router ID for HA.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Internal VIP Address IPv6 field</td><td>Enter IPv6 address of Internal IP.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Internal VIP Address field</td><td>Enter IP address of Internal VIP.</td></tr> </table>	External VIP Address field	Enter IP address of External VIP.	External VIP Address IPv6 field	Enter IPv6 address of External VIP.	Virtual Router ID field	Enter the Router ID for HA.	Internal VIP Address IPv6 field	Enter IPv6 address of Internal IP.	Internal VIP Address field	Enter IP address of Internal VIP.
External VIP Address field	Enter IP address of External VIP.										
External VIP Address IPv6 field	Enter IPv6 address of External VIP.										
Virtual Router ID field	Enter the Router ID for HA.										
Internal VIP Address IPv6 field	Enter IPv6 address of Internal IP.										
Internal VIP Address field	Enter IP address of Internal VIP.										
Keystone	<p>Mandatory fields are pre-populated.</p>  <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Admin User Name</td><td>admin.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Admin Tenant Name</td><td>admin.</td></tr> </table>	Admin User Name	admin.	Admin Tenant Name	admin.						
Admin User Name	admin.										
Admin Tenant Name	admin.										

Name	Description
LDAP	

Name	Description																										
	<p>LDAP enable checkbox which by default is false, if LDAP is enabled on keystone.</p> <p>Create Blueprint configuration</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the 'OpenStack Setup' tab in the 'Create Blueprint configuration' wizard. It features a progress bar at the top with status indicators for various services: HA Proxy (red X), Keystone (green check), Neutron (red X), Ceph (green check), Glance (green check), Cinder (green check), and LDAP (red X). Below the progress bar, there are two columns of configuration fields, each with a blue information icon to its left. The left column includes: 'Domain Name' (with a subtext 'Enter Domain specific name'), 'Object Class for Groups' (with a subtext 'Enter objectClass for Groups'), 'Domain Name Tree for Groups' (with a subtext 'Enter DN tree for Groups'), 'URL' (with a subtext 'Enter URL'), 'Password' (with a subtext 'Enter Password'), 'User ID Attribute' (with a subtext 'Enter User Id Attribute'), and 'User Mail Attribute' (with a subtext 'Enter User Mail Attribute'). The right column includes: 'Object Class for Users' (with a subtext 'Enter objectClass for Users'), 'Domain Name Tree for Users' (with a subtext 'Enter DN tree for Users'), 'Suffix for Domain Name' (with a subtext 'Enter suffix for DN'), 'Domain Name of bind user' (with a subtext 'Enter DN of bind user'), 'User Filter' (with a subtext 'Enter User Filter'), 'User Name Attribute' (with a subtext 'Enter User Name Attribute'), and 'Group Name Attribute' (with a subtext 'Enter Group Name Attribute').</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Domain Name field</td><td>Enter name for Domain name.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Object Class for Users field</td><td>Enter a string as input.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Object Class for Groups field</td><td>Enter a string.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Domain Name Tree for Users field</td><td>Enter a string.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Domain Name Tree for Groups field</td><td>Enter a string.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Suffix for Domain Name field</td><td>Enter a string.</td></tr> <tr> <td>URL field</td><td>Enter a URL with ending port number.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Domain Name of Bind User field</td><td>Enter a string.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Password field</td><td>Enter Password as string format.</td></tr> <tr> <td>User Filter field</td><td>Enter filter name as string.</td></tr> <tr> <td>User ID Attribute field</td><td>Enter a string.</td></tr> <tr> <td>User Name Attribute field</td><td>Enter a string.</td></tr> <tr> <td>User Mail Attribute field</td><td>Enter a string.</td></tr> </table>	Domain Name field	Enter name for Domain name.	Object Class for Users field	Enter a string as input.	Object Class for Groups field	Enter a string.	Domain Name Tree for Users field	Enter a string.	Domain Name Tree for Groups field	Enter a string.	Suffix for Domain Name field	Enter a string.	URL field	Enter a URL with ending port number.	Domain Name of Bind User field	Enter a string.	Password field	Enter Password as string format.	User Filter field	Enter filter name as string.	User ID Attribute field	Enter a string.	User Name Attribute field	Enter a string.	User Mail Attribute field	Enter a string.
Domain Name field	Enter name for Domain name.																										
Object Class for Users field	Enter a string as input.																										
Object Class for Groups field	Enter a string.																										
Domain Name Tree for Users field	Enter a string.																										
Domain Name Tree for Groups field	Enter a string.																										
Suffix for Domain Name field	Enter a string.																										
URL field	Enter a URL with ending port number.																										
Domain Name of Bind User field	Enter a string.																										
Password field	Enter Password as string format.																										
User Filter field	Enter filter name as string.																										
User ID Attribute field	Enter a string.																										
User Name Attribute field	Enter a string.																										
User Mail Attribute field	Enter a string.																										

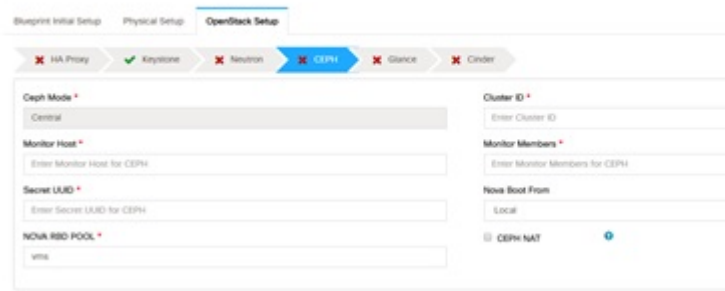

Name	Description	
	Group Name Attribute field	Enter a string.



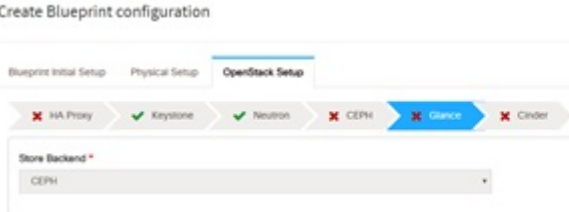
Name	Description
Neutron	

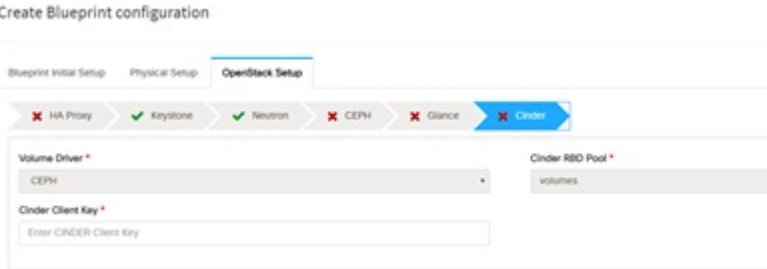
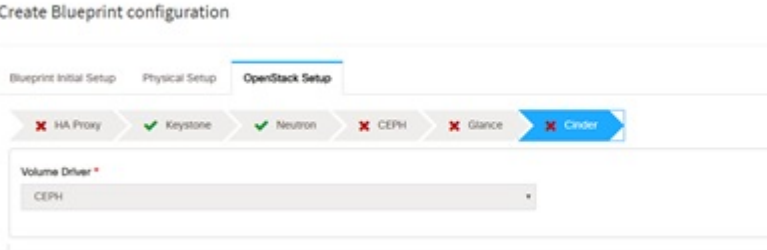
Name	Description
	<p>Neutron fields would change on the basis of Tenant Network Type Selection from Blueprint Initial Setup. Following are the options available for Neutron for OVS/VLAN:</p> 
Tenant Network Type field	Auto Filled based on the Tenant Network Type selected in the Blueprint Initial Setup page.
Mechanism Drivers field	Auto Filled based on the Tenant Network Type selected in Blueprint Initial Setup page.
NFV Hosts field	<p>Auto filled with the Compute you added in Server and Roles.</p> <p>If you select All in this section NFV_HOSTS: ALL will be added to the Blueprint or you can select one particular compute. For example:</p> <p>NFV_HOSTS: compute-server-1, compute-server-2.</p>
Tenant VLAN Ranges field	List of ranges separated by comma form start:end.
Provider VLAN Ranges field	List of ranges separated by comma form start:end.
VM Hugh Page Size (available for NFV_HOSTS option) field	2M or 1G (optional, defaults to 2M)
VM_HUGHPAGE_PERCENTAGE	Optional, defaults to 100%; can range between 0 and 100

Name	Description	
	VSWITCH_WORKER_PROFILE	Allowed only for VPP Available options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • numa_zero: The reserved cores always reside in NUMA node 0. • Even : The reserved cores are evenly distributed across all NUMA
	NR_RESERVED_VSWITCH_PCORES	Allowed only for VPP Number of cores associated to VPP, defaults to 2. Takes value of 2 through 6.
	Enable Jumbo Frames field	Enable the checkbox
	For Tenant Network Type Linux Bridge everything remains the same but Tenant VLAN Ranges will be removed.	

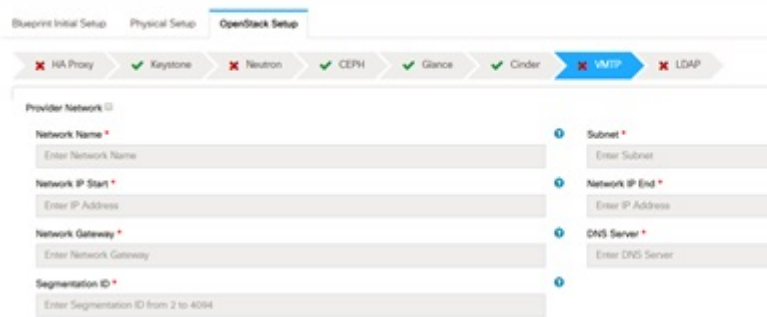

Name	Description
CEPH	

Name	Description																
	<p>1. 1. When Object Storage Backend is selected Central in blueprint initial setup.</p> <p>Create Blueprint configuration</p>  <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>CEPH Mode</td><td>By default Central.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Cluster ID</td><td>Enter Cluster ID.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Monitor Host</td><td>Enter Monitor Host for CEPH</td></tr> <tr> <td>Monitor Members</td><td>Enter Monitor Members for CEPH</td></tr> <tr> <td>Secret UUID</td><td>Enter Secret UUID for CEPH</td></tr> <tr> <td>NOVA Boot from</td><td>Drop down selection. You can choose CEPH or local.</td></tr> <tr> <td>NOVA RBD POOL</td><td>Enter NOVA RBD Pool (default's to vms)</td></tr> <tr> <td>CEPH NAT</td><td>Optional, needed for Central Ceph and when mgmt network is not routable</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>2. When Object Storage Backend is selected Dedicated in blueprint initial setup.</p> <p>Create Blueprint configuration</p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CEPH Mode: By default Dedicated. • NOVA Boot: From drop down selection you can choose CEPH or local. <p>3. When Object Storage Backend is selected NetApp in blueprint initial setup.</p>	CEPH Mode	By default Central.	Cluster ID	Enter Cluster ID.	Monitor Host	Enter Monitor Host for CEPH	Monitor Members	Enter Monitor Members for CEPH	Secret UUID	Enter Secret UUID for CEPH	NOVA Boot from	Drop down selection. You can choose CEPH or local.	NOVA RBD POOL	Enter NOVA RBD Pool (default's to vms)	CEPH NAT	Optional, needed for Central Ceph and when mgmt network is not routable
CEPH Mode	By default Central.																
Cluster ID	Enter Cluster ID.																
Monitor Host	Enter Monitor Host for CEPH																
Monitor Members	Enter Monitor Members for CEPH																
Secret UUID	Enter Secret UUID for CEPH																
NOVA Boot from	Drop down selection. You can choose CEPH or local.																
NOVA RBD POOL	Enter NOVA RBD Pool (default's to vms)																
CEPH NAT	Optional, needed for Central Ceph and when mgmt network is not routable																

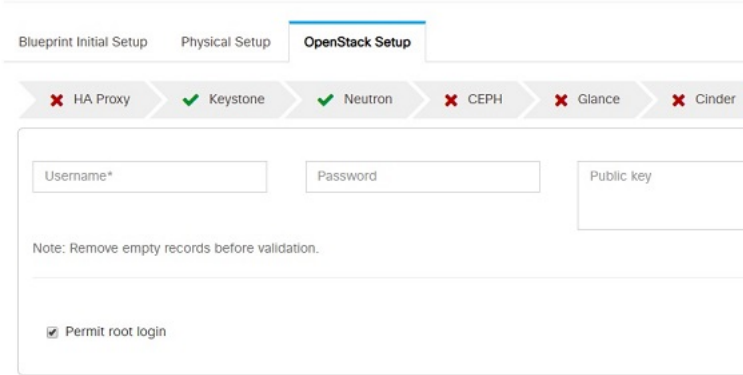
Name	Description
	<p>Create Blueprint configuration</p> 
GLANCE	<p>1. When Object Storage Backend is selected Central in blueprint initial setup.</p>  <p>When Object Storage Backend is selected Dedicated in blueprint initial setup.</p>  <p>Note By default Populated for CEPH Dedicated with Store Backend value as CEPH.</p>

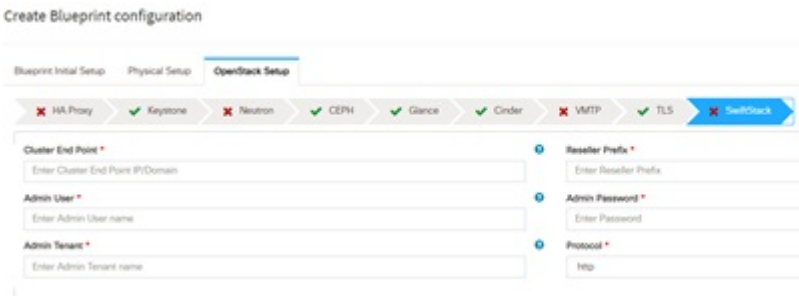
Name	Description
CINDER	<p>By default Populated for CEPH Dedicated with Volume Driver value as CEPH.</p>  <p>2. When Object Storage Backend is selected Dedicated in blueprint initial setup.</p>  <p>Note By default Populated for CEPH Dedicated with Volume Driver value as CEPH.</p>

Name	Description
VMTP optional section, this will be visible only if VMTP is selected from Blueprint Initial Setup. For VTS tenant type Provider network is only supported.	

Name	Description														
	<p>Check one of the check boxes to specify a VMTP network:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Provider Network • External Network <p>For the Provider Network complete the following:</p> <p>Create Blueprint configuration</p>  <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Network Name field</td><td>Enter the name for the external network.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Subnet field</td><td>Enter the Subnet for Provider Network.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Network IP Start field</td><td>Enter the starting floating IPv4 address.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Network IP End field</td><td>Enter the ending floating IPv4 address.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Network Gateway field</td><td>Enter the IPv4 address for the Gateway.</td></tr> <tr> <td>DNS Server field</td><td>Enter the DNS server IPv4 address.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Segmentation ID field</td><td>Enter the segmentation ID.</td></tr> </table> <p>For External Network fill in the following details:</p> 	Network Name field	Enter the name for the external network.	Subnet field	Enter the Subnet for Provider Network.	Network IP Start field	Enter the starting floating IPv4 address.	Network IP End field	Enter the ending floating IPv4 address.	Network Gateway field	Enter the IPv4 address for the Gateway.	DNS Server field	Enter the DNS server IPv4 address.	Segmentation ID field	Enter the segmentation ID.
Network Name field	Enter the name for the external network.														
Subnet field	Enter the Subnet for Provider Network.														
Network IP Start field	Enter the starting floating IPv4 address.														
Network IP End field	Enter the ending floating IPv4 address.														
Network Gateway field	Enter the IPv4 address for the Gateway.														
DNS Server field	Enter the DNS server IPv4 address.														
Segmentation ID field	Enter the segmentation ID.														

Name	Description	
	Network Name field	Enter the name for the external network.
	IP Start field	Enter the starting floating IPv4 address.
	IP End field	Enter the ending floating IPv4 address.
	Gateway field	Enter the IPv4 address for the Gateway.
	DNS Server field	Enter the DNS server IPv4 address.
	Subnet field	Enter the Subnet for External Network.
TLS optional section, this will be visible only if TLS is selected from Blueprint Initial Setup Page.	TLS has two options: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• External LB VIP FQDN - Text Field.• External LB VIP TLS - True/False. By default this option is false.	

Name	Description						
<p>Under the OpenStack setup tab, Vim_admins tab will be visible only when Vim_admins is selected from the Optional Features & Services under the Blueprint Initial setup tab</p>	<p>Following are the field descriptions for VIM Admins:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Add Username, Password, Public key or both for the non-root login. • At least one Vim Admin must be configured when Permit root login is false. <p>Create Blueprint configuration</p>  <table border="1"> <tr> <td>User Name</td><td>Enter username for Vim Admin.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Password</td><td>Password field. Admin hash password should always start with \$6.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Public Key</td><td>Public key for vim admin should always start with 'ssh-rsa AAAA....'</td></tr> </table>	User Name	Enter username for Vim Admin.	Password	Password field. Admin hash password should always start with \$6.	Public Key	Public key for vim admin should always start with 'ssh-rsa AAAA....'
User Name	Enter username for Vim Admin.						
Password	Password field. Admin hash password should always start with \$6.						
Public Key	Public key for vim admin should always start with 'ssh-rsa AAAA....'						

Name	Description												
<p>SwiftStack optional section will be visible only if SwiftStack is selected from Blueprint Initial Setup Page. SwiftStack is only supported with KeyStonev2. If you select Keystonev3, swiftstack will not be available to configure.</p>	<p>Following are the options that needs to be filled for SwiftStack:</p>  <table> <tr> <td>Cluster End Point</td><td>IP address of PAC (proxy-account-container) endpoint.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Admin User</td><td>Admin user for swift to authenticate in keystone.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Admin Tenant</td><td>The service tenant corresponding to the Account-Container used by Swiftstack.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Reseller Prefix</td><td>Reseller_prefix as configured for Keysone Auth,AuthToken support in Swiftstack E.g KEY_</td></tr> <tr> <td>Admin Password</td><td>swiftstack_admin_password</td></tr> <tr> <td>Protocol</td><td>http or https</td></tr> </table>	Cluster End Point	IP address of PAC (proxy-account-container) endpoint.	Admin User	Admin user for swift to authenticate in keystone.	Admin Tenant	The service tenant corresponding to the Account-Container used by Swiftstack.	Reseller Prefix	Reseller_prefix as configured for Keysone Auth,AuthToken support in Swiftstack E.g KEY_	Admin Password	swiftstack_admin_password	Protocol	http or https
Cluster End Point	IP address of PAC (proxy-account-container) endpoint.												
Admin User	Admin user for swift to authenticate in keystone.												
Admin Tenant	The service tenant corresponding to the Account-Container used by Swiftstack.												
Reseller Prefix	Reseller_prefix as configured for Keysone Auth,AuthToken support in Swiftstack E.g KEY_												
Admin Password	swiftstack_admin_password												
Protocol	http or https												

Name	Description	
<p>APICINFO tab is available in Openstack setup, when the Tenant type ACI/VLAN is selected in blueprint initial setup.</p> <p>Note When ACI/VLAN is selected then ToR switch from initial setup is mandatory.</p>	Name	Description
	APIC Hosts field	Enter host input. Example: <ip1 host1>:[port] . max of 3, min of 1, not 2;
	apic_username field	Enter a string format.
	apic_password field	Enter Password.
	apic_system_id field	Enter input as string. Max length 8.
	apic_resource_prefix field	Enter string max length 6.
	apic_tep_address_pool field	Allowed only 10.0.0.0/16
	multiclass_address_pool field	Allowed only 225.0.0.0/15
	apic_pod_id field	Enter integer(1- 65535)
	apic_installer_tenant field	Enter String, max length 32
	apic_installer_vrf field	Enter String, max length 32
	api_l3out_network field	Enter String, max length 32
<p>VTS tab is available in Openstack setup, when Tenant Type is VTS/VLAN selected.</p> <p>If vts day0 is enabled then SSH username and SSH password is mandatory.</p> <p>If SSH_username is input present then SSH password is mandatory vice-versa</p>	Name	Description
	VTS Day0 (checkbox)	True or false default is false.
	VTS User name	Enter as string does not contain special characters.
	VTS Password	Enter password
	VTS NCS IP	Enter IP Address format.
	VTC SSH Username	Enter a string
	VTC SHH Password	Enter password

10. For SolidFire, enter the following:

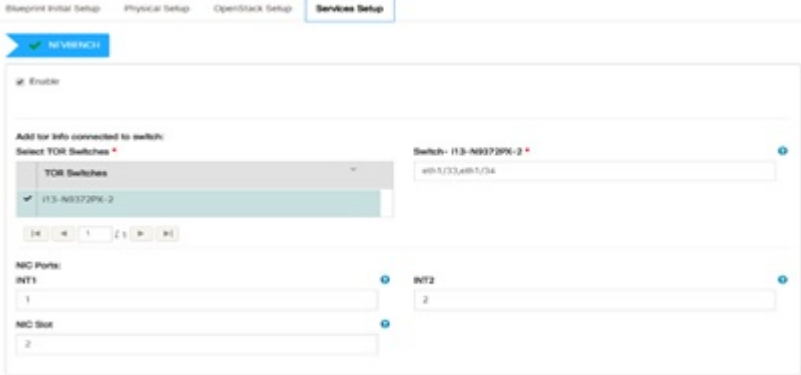
Name	Description
------	-------------

SolidFire is visible for configuration on day0
 SolidFire is not allowed as a day-2 deployment option
 SolidFire is always available with CEPH.

Cluster MVIP field	Management IP of SolidFire cluster.
Cluster SVIP field	Storage VIP of SolidFire cluster.
Admin Username	Admin user on SolidFire cluster
Admin Password	Admin password on SolidFire cluster.

11. If **Syslog Export** or **NFVBENCH** is selected in **Blueprint Initial Setup** Page, then **Services Setup** page will be enabled for user to view. Following are the options under **Services Setup** Tab:

Name	Description																																	
Syslog Export	<p>Following are the options for Syslog Settings:</p> <p>User can add maximum of three entries.</p> <p>To add new SysLog information, click on Add SysLog button, fill all the required information listed below and hit Save button.</p> <div><div>Blueprint Initial SetupPhysical SetupOpenstack SetupServices Setup</div><div>✔ Syslog Export</div><div><div>SysLog Export</div><div><div>Add SysLog</div><table><thead><tr><th>Remote host</th><th>Protocol</th><th>Facility</th><th>Severity</th><th>Port</th><th>Clients</th><th>Action</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>1.1.1.1</td><td>udp</td><td>local5</td><td>debug</td><td>514</td><td>ELK</td><td> </td></tr><tr><td>2.2.2.2</td><td>udp</td><td>local5</td><td>debug</td><td>514</td><td>ELK</td><td> </td></tr></tbody></table><div><div>1</div><div>1</div><div>1</div><div>1</div></div></div></div></div> <table><tr><td>Remote Host</td><td>Enter Syslog IP address.</td></tr><tr><td>Protocol</td><td>Only UDP is supported.</td></tr><tr><td>Facility</td><td>Defaults to local5.</td></tr><tr><td>Severity</td><td>Defaults to debug.</td></tr><tr><td>Clients</td><td>Defaults to ELK.</td></tr><tr><td>Port</td><td>Defaults to 514 but can be modified by the User.</td></tr></table>	Remote host	Protocol	Facility	Severity	Port	Clients	Action	1.1.1.1	udp	local5	debug	514	ELK		2.2.2.2	udp	local5	debug	514	ELK		Remote Host	Enter Syslog IP address.	Protocol	Only UDP is supported.	Facility	Defaults to local5.	Severity	Defaults to debug.	Clients	Defaults to ELK.	Port	Defaults to 514 but can be modified by the User.
Remote host	Protocol	Facility	Severity	Port	Clients	Action																												
1.1.1.1	udp	local5	debug	514	ELK																													
2.2.2.2	udp	local5	debug	514	ELK																													
Remote Host	Enter Syslog IP address.																																	
Protocol	Only UDP is supported.																																	
Facility	Defaults to local5.																																	
Severity	Defaults to debug.																																	
Clients	Defaults to ELK.																																	
Port	Defaults to 514 but can be modified by the User.																																	

Name	Description
NFVBENCH	<p>NFVBENCH enable checkbox by default is false.</p> <p>Add ToR information connect to Switch:</p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select a TOR Switch and enter the Switch name. • Enter the port number. For Example: eth1/5 . VTEP VLANs (mandatory and needed only for VTS/VXLAN,): Enter 2 different VLANs for VLAN1 and VLAN2. • NIC Ports: INT1 and INT2 optional input. Enter the 2 port numbers of the 4-port 10G Intel NIC at the management node used for NFVBench. <p>NIC Slot: Optional input, should be in the range of 1-6, indicates which NIC to use in case there are multiple NICs. If nic_slot is defined, then nic_port has to be defined and vice-versa.</p>
ENABLE_ESC_PRIV	Enable the checkbox to set it as True. By default, it is False .

Step 4 Click **Offlinevalidation**, to initiate an offline validation of the Blueprint.

Step 5 Blueprint can also be created using an **Upload functionality**:

- In Blueprint Initial Setup.
- Click **Browse** in the blueprint initial setup.
- Select the YAML file you want to upload.
- Click **Select** button.
- Clicking on load button in the Insight UI Application. All the fields present in the YAML file would be uploaded to the respective fields in UI.
- Enter the name of the Blueprint (Make sure you enter unique name while saving Blueprints. There would be no two Blueprints with same name.)
- Click **Offline Validation**.
- If all the mandatory fields in the UI are populated, then Offline Validation of the Blueprint will start else a pop up would be visible which will inform which section of Blueprint Creation has a missing information error.

- On Validation Success of Blueprint **Save Blueprint** button will be enabled with **Cancel** button
 - A pop up will be generated asking to initiate the deployment with **Blueprint Name** and the stages you need to run.
- On Validation Failure of Blueprint **Cancel** button will be enabled.

Once the **Offlinevalidation** is successful, **Save** option will be enabled which will redirect you to the Blueprint Management Page.

The wizard advances to the Blueprint Management page. On the Blueprint Management page you can select the recently added valid Blueprint and click **Install** button which is disabled by default.

A pop up will be generated asking to initiate the deployment with **Blueprint Name** and the stages you need to run.

By default all stages are selected but you can also do an incremented install.

In case of Incremented Install you should select stages in the order. For Example: If you select **Validation Stage** then the 2nd stage Management Node Orchestration will be enabled. You cannot skip stages and run a deployment.

Once you click **Proceed** the Cloud Deployment would be initiated and the progress can be viewed from "Dashboard".

Note Once the Blueprint is in **Active State**, the **Post-Install** features listed in Navigation Bar will changed to **Active** stage.

Post Installation Features for Active Blueprint

This option is only available to a pod, which is successfully deployed. There are multiple sublinks available to manage the day-n operation of the pod. However, often Insight cross-launches the relevant services, through delegating the actual rendering to the individual services.

Monitoring the Pod

Cisco VIM uses ELK (elasticsearch, logstash and Kibana) to monitor the OpenStack services, by cross-launching the Kibana dashboard.

To cross launch Kibana, complete the following instructions:

-
- Step 1** Login as **POD User**.
 - Step 2** Naviagte to **POD**.
 - Step 3** Navigate to **Post-install**
 - Step 4** Click **Monitoring**
The **Authentication Required** browser pop up is displayed.
 - Step 5** Enter the **username** as admin.
 - Step 6** Enter the ELK_PASSWORD password obtained from /root/installer-`<tagid>`/openstack-configs/secrets.yaml in the management node.
Kibana is launched in an I-Frame

Note Click [Click here to view Kibana logs in new tab](#) link to view Kibana Logs in a new tab.

Cross Launching Horizon

Horizon is the canonical implementation of Openstack's Dashboard, which provides a web based user interface to OpenStack services including Nova, Swift and, Keystone.

- Step 1** In the Navigation pane, click **Post-Install > Horizon**.
- Step 2** Click [Click here to view Horizon logs in new tab](#).
You will be redirected to Horizon landing page in a new tab.
-

NFVI Monitoring

NFVI monitoring is a Cross launch browser same as Horizon. NFVI monitoring link is available in the post install only if the setupdata has NFVI Monitoring configuration during the cloud deployment which basically pings the monitoring and checks status of **Collector VM1 Info** and **Collector VM2 Info**.

- Step 1** Login as **POD User**.
- Step 2** Naviagte to **POD**.
- Step 3** Navigate to **Post-install**
- Step 4** Click **Reconfigure**.
- Step 5** Click **NFVI Monitoring**
- Step 6** Click the link [Click here to view NFVI monitoring](#).
You will be redirected to NFVI monitoring page
-

Run VMTP

VIM 2.0, provides an integrated data and control plan test tool (called VMTP). VMTP helps you to test the cloud at any given time.

Run VMTP is divided in two sections:

- **Results for Auto Run:** Auto run shows the results of VMTP which was run during the cloud deployment (Blueprint Installation).
- **Results for Manual Run:** To run VMTP on demand click **Run VMTP**.



Note If VMTP stage was skipped or not-run during Blueprint Installation, this section of POST Install gets disabled for the user.

Run CloudPulse

In VIM, we provide an integrated tool, called Cloud Pulse, that periodically checks the cloud services endpoint. The results of these tests are reflected under the Cloud Pulse link. You can also run these API endpoint tests on demand, and fetch the result of these tests by refreshing the table.

Endpoints Tests:

1. cinder_endpoint
2. glance_endpoint
3. keystone_endpoint
4. nova_endpoint
5. neutron_endpoint
6. all_endpoint_tests

Operator Tests:

1. rabbitmq_check
2. galera_check
3. ceph_check
4. node_check
5. docker_check
6. all_operator_tests

Run NFV Bench

One can **Run NFV Bench** for BandC series Pod, through Cisco VIM Insight. On a pod running with CVIM , click on the NFVbench link on the NAV-Menu.

You can run either fixed rate test or NDR/PDR test. As the settings and results for the test types differ, the options to run these tests are presented in two tabs, with its own settings and results .

NDR/PDR Test

- Step 1** Log-in to **CISCO VIM Insight**.
- Step 2** In the Navigation pane, click **Post-Install >Run NFV Bench**.
- Step 3** Click on NDR/PDR test and complete the following fields

Name	Description
Iteration Duration	Select duration from 10 to 60 sec. Default is 20 sec
Frame Size	Select the correct frame size to run

Name	Description
Run NDR/PDR test	Click on Run NDR/PDR test. Once NDR/PDR test is finished it will display each type of test with its own settings and results.

Fixed Rate Test

- Step 1** Log in as **POD User**.
- Step 2** Navigate to **POD**.
- Step 3** Navigate to **Postinstall**.
- Step 4** Click **Run NFV Bench**.
- Step 5** Click Fixed rate test and complete the following fields.

Name	Description
Rate	Rate: Select right configuration pps or bps from drop down-list and enter values: For pps: minimum: 2500pps; maximum: 14500000pps (=14.5Mpps); default: 1000000pps (=1Mpps) For bps: minimum: 1400000bps; maximum: 10000000000bps (=10Gbps); default: 1000000000 (=1Gbps)
Iteration Duration	Select duration from 10-60Sec. Default is 20sec.
Frame Size	Select the right frame size(64,IMIX,1518) to run.
Run Fixed Rate Test	Click Run Fixed Rate Test . Once Fixed rate test is finished, it displays each type of test with its own settings and results.

POD Management

One of the key aspects of Cisco VIM is that it provides the ability for the admin to perform pod life-cycle management from a hardware and software perspective. Nodes of a given pod corrupts at times and VIM provides the ability to add, remove or replace nodes, based on the respective roles with some restrictions. Details of pod management will be listed in the admin guide, however as a summary the following operations are allowed on a running pod:

- Step 1** **Add or Remove Storage Nodes:** You can add one node at a time, given that we run Ceph as a distributed storage offering.
- Step 2** **Add or Remove Computes Nodes:** N-computes nodes can be replaced simultaneously; however at any given point, at least one compute node should be active.

Step 3 **Replace Control Nodes:** We do not support double fault scenarios, replacement of one controller at a time is supported.

System Update

As part of the lifecycle management of the cloud, VIM has the ability to bring in patches (bug fixes related to code, security, etc.), thereby providing the additional value of seamless cloud management from software perspective. Software update of the cloud is achieved by uploading a valid tar file following initiation of a System Update from the Insight as follows:

- Step 1** Login as **POD User**.
 - Step 2** Naviagte to **POD**.
 - Step 3** Navigate to **Post-install**
 - Step 4** Click **System Update**.
 - Step 5** Click **Openstack Password**
 - Step 6** Click **Browse** button.
 - Step 7** Select the valid tar file.
 - Step 8** Click **Open > Upload and Update** .
 Message stating System Update has been initiated will be displayed. Logs front-ended by hyperlink would be visible in the section below before Update Logs to help see the progress of the update. During the software update, all other pod management activities will be disabled. Post-update, normal cloud management will commence.
-

Reconfiguring CIMC Password through Insight

Update the cime_password in the CIMC-COMMON section, and/or the individual cime_password for each server and then run the update password option.

To update a password, you need to follow the password rules:

- Must contain at least one lower case letter.
- Must contain at least one upper case letter.
- Must contain at least one digit between 0 to 9.
- One of these special characters !\$#@%^-_=*&
- Your password has to be 8 to 14 characters long.

Before you begin

You must have a C-series pod up and running with Cisco VIM to reconfigure CIMC password.



Note Reconfigure CIMC password section would be disabled if the pod is in failed state as indicated by ciscovim install-status.

- Step 1** Login as **POD User**.
- Step 2** Naviagte to **POD**.
- Step 3** Navigate to **Post-install**
- Step 4** Click **Reconfigure**.
- Step 5** Click **Openstack Password**

Name	Description
CIMC_COMMON old Password	CIMC_COMMON old password field cannot be edited.
CIMC-COMMON new Password	Enter new CIMC-COMMON password. Password should be alphanumeric according to the password rule.
Click Update Password	Old CIMC-COMMON password will be updated with new CIMC-COMMON password.

Reconfiguring OpenStack Password

Cisco VIM has been designed with security to accommodate users password policy.

There are two options to regenerate the Password:

- 1. Regenerate all passwords:** Check the **Regenerate all passwords** checkbox and click **Set Password**. This automatically regenerates all passwords in alphanumeric format.
- 2. Regenerate single or more password:** If you want to set a specific password for any service like Horizon's **ADMIN_USER_PASSWORD** you can add it by doing an inline edit. Double click field under Password and then enter the password which enables **Set Password**.



Note

During the reconfiguration of password, all other pod management activities are disabled. Postupdate, normal cloud management commences.

Reconfiguring OpenStack Services, TLS certs and ELK configurations

Cisco VIM supports the reconfiguration of OpenStack log level services, TLS certificates, and ELK configuration. Listed below are the steps to reconfigure the OpenStack and other services:

- Step 1** Login as **POD User**.
- Step 2** Naviagte to **POD**.
- Step 3** Navigate to **Post-install**
- Step 4** Click **Reconfigure OpenStack Config**.
- Step 5** Click on the specific item to be changed and updated; For TLS certificate it is the path to certificate location.

Step 6 Enter **Set Config** and the process will commence.

During the reconfiguration process, all other pod management activities will be disabled. Post-update, normal cloud management will commence.

Reconfiguring Optional Services

Cisco VIM offers optional services such as heat, migration to Keystone v3, NFVBench, NFVIMON and so on, that can be enabled as post-pod deployment. Optional services can be un-configured as post-deployment in Cisco VIM feature set. These services can be enabled in one-shot or selectively. Listed below are the steps to enable optional services:

Step 1 Login as **POD User**.

Step 2 Naviagte to **POD**.

Step 3 Navigate to **Post-install**

Step 4 Click **Reconfigure Optional Services**.

Step 5 Choose the right service and update the fields with the right values.

Step 6 Enter **Reconfigure** to commence the process.

During the reconfiguration process, all other pod management activities will be disabled. Post-update, normal cloud management will commence. Once reconfigure is initiated than optional feature would be updated in active blueprint. If reconfigure of Optional Services fail in the time of reconfigure process then it is advised to contact CiscoTAC to resolve the situation through CLI.

Note All reconfigure operation feature contains repeated deployment true or false.

- Repeated re-deployment true - Feature can be re-deployed again.
- Repeated re-deployment false- Deployment of feature allowed only once.

Deployment Status :

Optional Features	Repeated re-deployment Options
APICINFO	True
EXTERNAL_LB_VIP_FQDN	False
EXTERNAL_LB_VIP_TLS	False
INSTALL_MODE	True
LDAP	True
NETWORKING	True
NFVBENCH	False
NFVIMON	False

Optional Features	Repeated re-deployment Options
PODNAME	False
PROVIDER_VLAN_RANGES	True
SWIFTSTACK	True
SYSLOG_EXPORT_SETTINGS	False
TENANT_VLAN_RANGES	True
TORSWITCHINFO	False
VIM _ ADMINS	True
VMTP	False
VTs_PARAMETERS	False
AUTOBACKUP	True
Heat	False
Keystone v3	False
HTTP Proxy Server	True
HTTPS Proxy Server	True
Enable TTY LOGGING	False
MGMTNODE_EXTAPI_REACH	False
Cobbler	True
SNMP	True

Pod User Administration

Cisco VIM Insight offers Users (Pod Admin(s) or Pod Users) to manage Users and roles associated with them.

Managing Users

To add new User

- Step 1** Click **Login as POD User**.
- Step 2** Navigate to **POD User Administration**.
- Step 3** Click **Manage Users**.

Step 4 Click **Add Users** to add a new user.

Step 5 Complete the following fields in the **Add Users** page of the Cisco VIM Insight:

Field Name	Field Description
Email ID	Enter the Email ID of the User.
User Name	Enter the User Name if the User is new. If the User is already registered to the Insight the User-Name gets auto-populated.
Role	Select the Role from the drop-down list.

Step 6 Click **Save**.

Managing Roles

To create a new Role:

Step 1 Click **Log in as POD User**.

Step 2 Navigate to **Pod User Administration** and click **Manage Roles**. By default you will see a full-pod-access role in the table.

Step 3 Click **Add Role** to create a new role.

Step 4 Complete the following fields on the **Add Roles** page in Cisco VIM Insight:

Field Name	Field Description
Role	Enter the name of the role.
Description	Enter the description of the role.
Permission	Check the Permission checkbox to select the permission.

Step 5 Click **Save**. Once, the Blueprint is in an Active state all the permissions are same for C-series and B-series Pods other than Reconfigure CIMC Password which is missing for B-series Pod.

Note Permissions are divided in the granular level where viewing *Dashboard* is the default role that is added while creating a role.

Managing Root CA Certificate

You can update the CA Certificate during the registration of the POD. Once, logged in as POD User and if you have the permission to update the certificate you can view under POD User Administration>> Manage Root CA Certificate.

To update the Certificate:

Step 1 Click **Login as POD User**

Step 2 Navigate to **POD User Administration>>Manage Root CA certificate**.

Step 3 Click **Browse** and select the certificate that you want to upload.

Step 4 Click **Upload**.

- If the certificate is Invalid, and does not matches with the certificate on the management node located at (var/www/mercury/mercury-ca.crt) then Insight will revert the certificate which was working previously.
- If the Certificate is valid, Insight will run a management node health check and then update the certificate with the latest one.

Note The CA Certificate which is uploaded should be same as the one which is in the management node.



CHAPTER 9

Verifying the Cisco NFVI Installation

The following topics provide quick methods for checking and assessing the Cisco NFVI installation.

- [Displaying Cisco NFVI Node IP Addresses, on page 309](#)
- [Verifying Cisco VIM Client CLI Availability, on page 310](#)
- [Displaying Cisco NFVI Logs, on page 311](#)
- [Accessing OpenStack API Endpoints, on page 311](#)
- [Assessing Cisco NFVI Health with CloudPulse, on page 312](#)
- [Displaying HA Proxy Dashboard and ELK Stack Logs, on page 314](#)
- [Checking Cisco NFVI Pod and Cloud Infrastructure, on page 314](#)

Displaying Cisco NFVI Node IP Addresses

To display the IP addresses for all Cisco NFVI nodes, enter the following command:

```
# cd /root/openstack-configs
[root@nfvi_management_node openstack-configs]# cat
/root/installer/openstack-configs/mercury_servers_info
```

The following is the sample output:

```
Total nodes: 8
Controller nodes: 3
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Server          | CIMC          | Management    | Provision     | Tenant        | Storage       |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| c44-control-1   | 172.26.233.54 | 10.21.1.25    | 10.21.1.25    | 10.2.2.22     | None         |
| c44-control-3   | 172.26.233.56 | 10.21.1.27    | 10.21.1.27    | 10.2.2.24     | None         |
| c44-control-2   | 172.26.233.55 | 10.21.1.28    | 10.21.1.28    | 10.2.2.25     | None         |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
Compute nodes: 2
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Server          | CIMC          | Management    | Provision     | Tenant        | Storage       |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| c44-compute-1   | 172.26.233.57 | 10.21.1.26    | 10.21.1.26    | 10.2.2.23     | None         |
| c44-compute-2   | 172.26.233.58 | 10.21.1.23    | 10.21.1.23    | 10.2.2.21     | None         |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
Storage nodes: 3
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
```

Server	CIMC	Management	Provision	Tenant	Storage
c44-storage-3	172.26.233.53	10.21.1.22	10.21.1.22	None	10.3.3.22
c44-storage-2	172.26.233.52	10.21.1.24	10.21.1.24	None	10.3.3.23
c44-storage-1	172.26.233.51	10.21.1.21	10.21.1.21	None	10.3.3.21

```
[root@c44-top-mgmt openstack-configs]#
```

Verifying Cisco VIM Client CLI Availability

Cisco VIM Client CLI is used for managing Cisco NFVI pods. After the Cisco NFVI installation is complete, verify that the Cisco VIM user is running and pointing to the right management node in the installer directory. Cisco NFVI provides a tool that you can use to check the REST API server status and directory where it is running.

To start the tool, enter the following:

```
# cd installer-<tagid>/tools
# ./restapi.py -a status
Status of the REST API Server: active (running) since Thu 2016-08-18 09:15:39 UTC; 9h ago
REST API launch directory: /root/installer-<tagid>/
```

Confirm that the server status is active and check that the REST API directory matches the directory where the installation is launched.

The REST API command also provides options to start, tear down, and reset the REST API server password. Run the following REST API command to reset the password.

```
# ./restapi.py -h
usage: restapi.py [-h] --action ACTION [--yes] [--verbose]

REST API setup helper

optional arguments:
  -h, --help            show this help message and exit
  --action ACTION, -a ACTION
                        setup - Install and Start the REST API server.
                        teardown - Stop and Uninstall the REST API
                        server.
                        restart - Restart the REST API server.
                        regenerate-password - Regenerate the password for
                        REST API server.
                        reset-password - Reset the REST API password with
                        user given password.
                        status - Check the status of the REST API server
  --yes, -y             Skip the dialog. Yes to the action.
  --verbose, -v         Perform the action in verbose mode.
```

If the REST API server is not running, executing **ciscovim** displays the following error message:

```
# cd installer-<tagid>/
# ciscovim -setupfile ~/Save/<setup_data.yaml> run
```

If the installer directory or the REST API state is not correct or pointing to an incorrect REST API directory, go to the installer-<tagid>/tools dir and execute the following command:

```
# ./restapi.py -action setup
```

Confirm that the REST API server state and directory is correct:

```
# ./restapi.py -action status
```

If the REST API recovery step was run on an existing pod, run the following command to ensure that the REST API server continues to manage it:

```
# cd installer-<tagid>/
# ciscovim --setup_file <setup_data_file_path> --perform 7 -y
```


Note

Detailed information about the Cisco NFVI REST API is provided in the Cisco Network Function Virtualization Infrastructure Administrator Guide.

Displaying Cisco NFVI Logs

Cisco NFVI installation logs are generated in the management node `/var/log/mercury//<install uuid>/` directory. The last 20-log directories are tarred and kept in this directory. The logs are archived (tar.gz file) after each run.

The following table lists the Cisco NFVI installation steps and corresponding log files:

Table 26: Cisco NFVI Installation Logs

Step	Description	Log File
1	INPUT_VALIDATION	mercury_baremetal_install.log
2	MGMTNODE_ORCHESTRATION	mercury_buildorchestration.log
3	VALIDATION	mercury_baremetal_install.log
4	BAREMETAL	mercury_baremetal_install.log
5	COMMONSETUP	mercury_os_install.log
6	CEPH	mercury_ceph_install.log
7	ORCHESTRATION	mercury_os_install.log
8	VMTP	None

Accessing OpenStack API Endpoints

The Cisco NFVI installer stores access credentials in the management node `/root/installer-<tag-number>/openstack-configs/openrc`. The `external_lb_vip_address` provided in `setup_data.yaml` is the IP address where OpenStack APIs are handled.

Following is an example:

```
export OS_AUTH_URL=http://172.26.233.139:5000/v2.0 or
https://172.26.233.139:5000/v2.0 (if TLS is enabled)
export OS_USERNAME=admin
export OS_PASSWORD=xyzabcd
export OS_TENANT_NAME=admin
export OS_REGION_NAME=RegionOne
# For TLS, add
export OS_CACERT=/root/openstack-configs/haproxy-ca.crt
```

The corresponding setup_data.yaml entry:

```
#####
# HA Proxy
#####
external_lb_vip_address: 172.26.233.139
```

Assessing Cisco NFVI Health with CloudPulse

You can use the OpenStack CloudPulse tool to verify Cisco NFVI health. CloudPulse servers are installed in containers on all Cisco NFVI control nodes, and CloudPulse users are installed on the management node. Run the following commands to display Cisco NFVI information. For information about CloudPulse, visit the [OpenStack CloudPulse website](#).

To check the results of periodic CloudPulse runs:

```
# cd /root/openstack-configs
# source openrc
# cloudpulse result
```

uuid	id	name	testtype	state
bf7fac70-7e46-4577-b339-b1535b6237e8	3788	glance_endpoint	periodic	success
1f575ad6-0679-4e5d-bc15-952bade09f19	3791	nova_endpoint	periodic	success
765083d0-e000-4146-8235-ca106fa89864	3794	neutron_endpoint	periodic	success
c1c8e3ea-29bf-4fa8-91dd-c13a31042114	3797	cinder_endpoint	periodic	success
04b0cb48-16a3-40d3-aa18-582b8d25e105	3800	keystone_endpoint	periodic	success
db42185f-12d9-47ff-b2f9-4337744bf7e5	3803	glance_endpoint	periodic	success
90aa9e7c-99ea-4410-8516-1c08beb4144e	3806	nova_endpoint	periodic	success
d393a959-c727-4b5e-9893-e229efb88893	3809	neutron_endpoint	periodic	success
50c31b57-d4e6-4cf1-a461-8228fa7a9be1	3812	cinder_endpoint	periodic	success
d1245146-2683-40da-b0e6-dbf56e5f4379	3815	keystone_endpoint	periodic	success
ce8b9165-5f26-4610-963c-3ff12062a10a	3818	glance_endpoint	periodic	success
6a727168-8d47-4a1d-8aa0-65b942898214	3821	nova_endpoint	periodic	success
6fbf48ad-d97f-4a41-be39-e04668a328fd	3824	neutron_endpoint	periodic	success

To run a CloudPulse test on demand:

```
# cd /root/openstack-configs
# source openrc
# cloudpulse run --name <test_name>
# cloudpulse run --all-tests
# cloudpulse run --all-endpoint-tests
# cloudpulse run --all-operator-tests
```

To run a specific CloudPulse test on demand:

```
[root@vms-line2-build installer-3128.2]# cloudpulse run --name neutron_endpoint
+-----+
| Property | Value |
```

```

+-----+-----+
| name   | neutron_endpoint |
| created_at | 2016-03-29T02:20:16.840581+00:00 |
| updated_at | None |
| state   | scheduled |
| result   | NotYetRun |
| testtype | manual |
| id       | 3827 |
| uuid     | 5cc39fa8-826c-4a91-9514-6c6de050e503 |
+-----+-----+
[root@vms-line2-build installer-3128.2]#

```

To show detailed results from a specific CloudPulse run:

```

[root@vms-line2-build installer-3128.2]# cloudpulse show 5cc39fa8-826c-4a91-9514-6c6de050e503
+-----+-----+
| Property | Value |
+-----+-----+
| name   | neutron_endpoint |
| created_at | 2016-03-29T02:20:16+00:00 |
| updated_at | 2016-03-29T02:20:41+00:00 |
| state   | success |
| result   | success |
| testtype | manual |
| id       | 3827 |
| uuid     | 5cc39fa8-826c-4a91-9514-6c6de050e503 |
+-----+-----+

```

CloudPulse has two test sets: `endpoint_scenario` (runs as a cron or manually) and `operator test` (run manually). Endpoint tests include:

- `nova_endpoint`
- `neutron_endpoint`
- `keystone_endpoint`
- `glance_endpoint`
- `cinder_endpoint`

Operator tests include

- `ceph_check`
- `docker_check`
- `galera_check`
- `node_check`
- `rabbitmq_check`

The following table lists the operator tests that you can perform with CloudPulse.

Table 27: CloudPulse Operator Tests

Test	Description
Ceph Check	Executes the <code>ceph -f json status</code> command on the Ceph-mon nodes and parses the output. If the result of the output is not <code>HEALTH_OK</code> , the <code>ceph_check</code> reports an error.
Docker Check	Finds out if all Docker containers are in running state on all nodes and reports an error if any containers are in the Exited state. The Docker check runs the command, <code>docker ps -aq --filter 'status=exited'</code> .
Galera Check	Executes the command, <code>mysql 'SHOW STATUS'</code> , on the controller nodes and displays the status.
Node Check	Checks if all the nodes in the system are up and online. It also compares the results of the Nova hypervisor list and determines whether all the compute nodes are available.
RabbitMQ Check	Runs the command, <code>rabbitmqctl cluster_status</code> , on the controller nodes and finds out if the RabbitMQ cluster is in quorum. If nodes are offline, the <code>rabbitmq_check</code> reports a failure.

Displaying HA Proxy Dashboard and ELK Stack Logs

You can view the HA Proxy dashboard at: `http://<external_lb_vip_address>:1936` using the following username and password.

- Username—haproxy
- Password—Value for `HAPROXY_PASSWORD` in `/root/installer-<tag-number>/openstack-configs/secrets.yaml`

You can use the Kibana dashboard to view logs aggregated by Logstash at: `http://<management_node_IP>:5601` using the following username and password.

- Username—admin
- Password—Value for `ELK_PASSWORD` in `/root/installer-<tag-number>/openstack-configs/secrets.yaml`

Checking Cisco NFVI Pod and Cloud Infrastructure

To test the Cisco NFVI pod and cloud infrastructure (host connectivity, basic mraiadb, rabbit, ceph cluster check, and RAID disks), you can use the `cloud-sanity` tool available on the management node.

To execute, enter:

```
# cd installer-<tagid>/tools
# ./cloud_sanity.py --h
usage: cloud_sanity.py [-h] [--check CHECK]
[--list] [--verbose]
```

```

cloud sanity helper
optional arguments:
-h, --help show this help message and
exit
--check CHECK, -c CHECK
all - Run all sanity checks. [default
action]
control - Run controller sanity
checks.
compute - Run compute sanity checks.
cephmon - Run cephmon sanity checks.
cephosd - Run cephosd sanity checks.
management - Run Management node sanity
checks
--list, -l List all the available sanity
checks.
--verbose, -v Run the sanity in verbose
mode.

```

To list the available cloud-sanity checks, execute:

```
# ./cloud_sanity.py -l
```

Available sanity checks

```

-----
1 - cloud-sanity : Management - Disk maintenance RAID Health
2 - cloud-sanity : Management - Disk maintenance VD Health
3 - cloud-sanity : Control - Ping All Controller Nodes
4 - cloud-sanity : Control - Ping internal VIP
5 - cloud-sanity : Control - Check Mariadb cluster size
6 - cloud-sanity : Control - Check RabbitMQ is running
7 - cloud-sanity : Control - Check RabbitMQ cluster status
8 - cloud-sanity : Control - Check Nova service list
9 - cloud-sanity : Control - Disk maintenance RAID Health
10 - cloud-sanity : Control - Disk maintenance VD Health
11 - cloud-sanity : Compute - Ping All Compute Nodes
12 - cloud-sanity : Compute - Check Nova Hypervisor list
13 - cloud-sanity : Compute - Disk maintenance RAID Health
14 - cloud-sanity : Compute - Disk maintenance VD Health
15 - cloud-sanity : CephMon - Check cephmon is running
16 - cloud-sanity : CephMon - CEPH cluster check
17 - cloud-sanity : CephMon - Check Ceph Mon status
18 - cloud-sanity : CephMon - Check Ceph Mon results
19 - cloud-sanity : CephOSD - Ping All Storage Nodes
20 - cloud-sanity : CephOSD - Check OSD result with osdinfo
21 - cloud-sanity : CephOSD - Check OSD result without osdinfo

```

Results for a test can be either passed, failed, or skipped. A skipped test indicates a test which couldn't be run on this particular PoD - i.e. a hardware RAID test is skipped on a node which doesn't have hardware RAID.

A successful compute node check is shown below:

```
#./cloud_sanity.py -c compute
Executing Compute Cloud Sanity in quiet mode. This takes some time.
```

Role	Task	Result
Compute	Compute - Ping All Compute Nodes *****	PASSED

```
| Compute | Compute - Check Nova Hypervisor list ***** | PASSED |
|         |         |         |         |         |         |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
[PASSED] Cloud Sanity Compute Checks Passed
```

Following is a failure example:

```
[root@MercTB1 tools]# ./cloud_sanity.py -c control
Executing Control Cloud Sanity in quiet mode. This takes some time.
```

```
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Role   | Task                                                                 | Result |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Control | Control - Ping All Controller Nodes ***** | PASSED | | |
|         |         |         |         |         |
| Control | Control - Ping internal VIP ***** | PASSED |
|         |         |         |         |         |
| Control | Control - Check Mariadb cluster size ***** | PASSED |
|         |         |         |         |         |
| Control | Control - Check RabbitMQ is running ***** | FAILED |
|         |         |         |         |         |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
[FAILED] FATAL ERROR occured when running sanity checks.
[NOTE] One or more testcase[s] skipped. Use --list to see the complete list.
```

To view the details of a failure, use the v option:

```
# ./cloud_sanity.py -c control -v

PLAY [Executes Cloud Sanity] *****

GATHERING FACTS *****
ok: [7.7.7.15]
ok: [7.7.7.11]
ok: [7.7.7.14]

TASK: [cloud-sanity | Control - Ping All Controller Nodes] *****
changed: [7.7.7.15 -> localhost] => (item=7.7.7.15)
changed: [7.7.7.15 -> localhost] => (item=7.7.7.11)
changed: [7.7.7.15 -> localhost] => (item=7.7.7.14)

TASK: [cloud-sanity | Control - Ping internal VIP] *****
changed: [7.7.7.15 -> localhost]

TASK: [cloud-sanity | Control - Check Mariadb cluster size] *****
changed: [7.7.7.11]
changed: [7.7.7.15]
changed: [7.7.7.14]

TASK: [cloud-sanity | Control - Check RabbitMQ is running] *****
failed: [7.7.7.11] => {"changed": true, "cmd": "docker ps -a | grep rabbit | grep Up | awk
'{print $NF}' | cut -f2 -d ' ', "delta": "0:00:00.021044", "end": "2016-08-18
23:45:34.838817", "failed": true, "failed_when_result": true, "rc": 0, "start": "2016-08-18
23:45:34.817773", "stdout_lines": [], "warnings": []}
changed: [7.7.7.15]
changed: [7.7.7.14]

FATAL: all hosts have already failed -- aborting

PLAY RECAP *****
7.7.7.11      : ok=4    changed=3    unreachable=0    failed=1
7.7.7.14      : ok=5    changed=4    unreachable=0    failed=0
7.7.7.15      : ok=5    changed=4    unreachable=0    failed=0
```



```
[FAILED] FATAL ERROR occured when running sanity checks.  
[NOTE] One or more testcase[s] skipped. Use --list to see the complete list.
```




APPENDIX A

Appendix

- Cisco VIM Wiring Diagrams, on page 319

Cisco VIM Wiring Diagrams

Figure 42: M4-Micropod with Cisco VIC

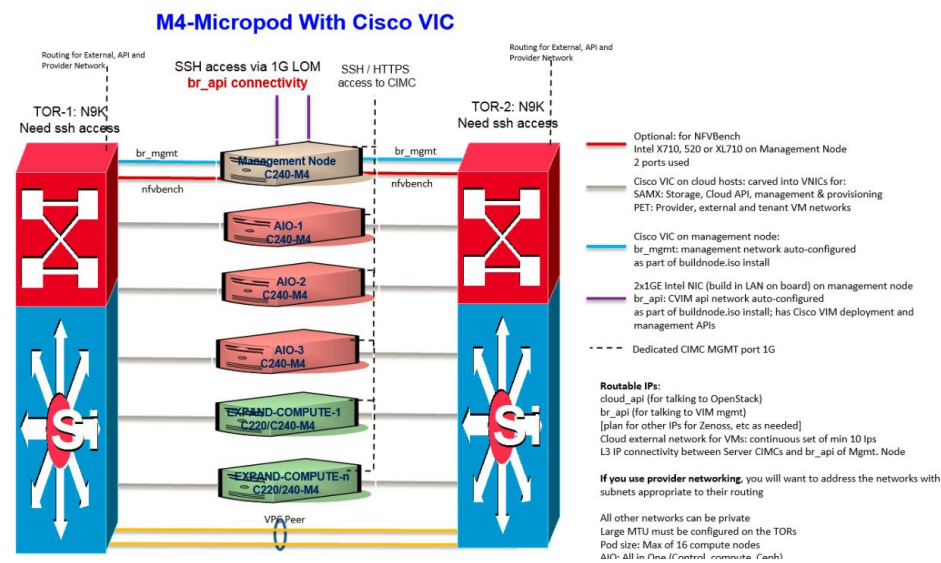


Figure 43: M4-Full-On with Cisco VIC

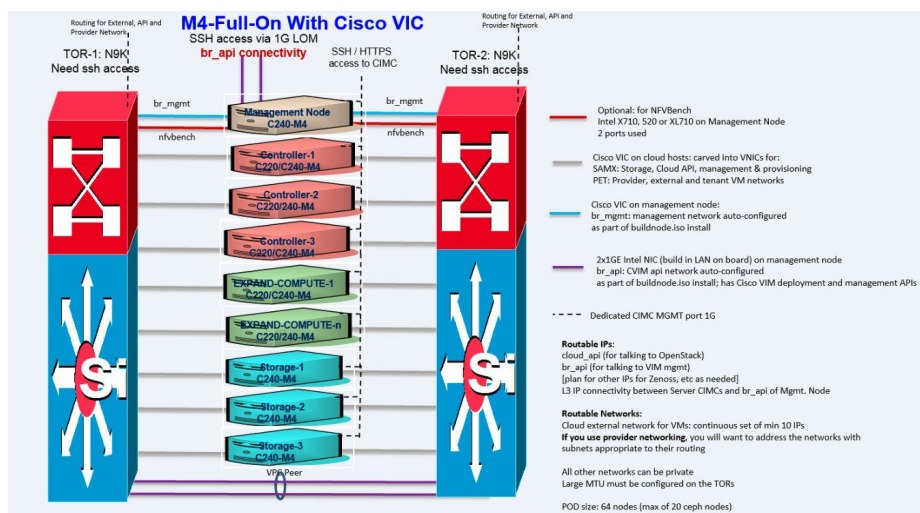


Figure 44: M4 Micropod with Intel NIC (X710) - NIC Redundancy

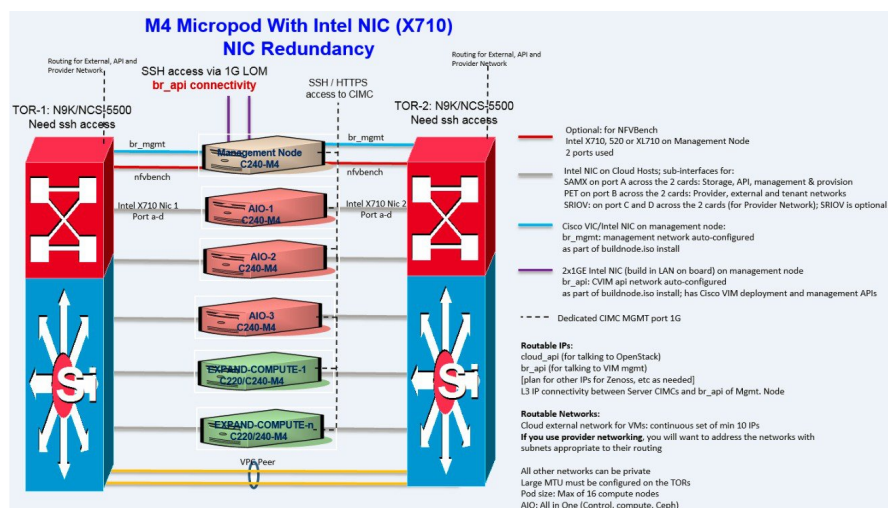


Figure 45: M4 HC with Cisco VIC/NIC (1xX710) VPP based; no SRIOV

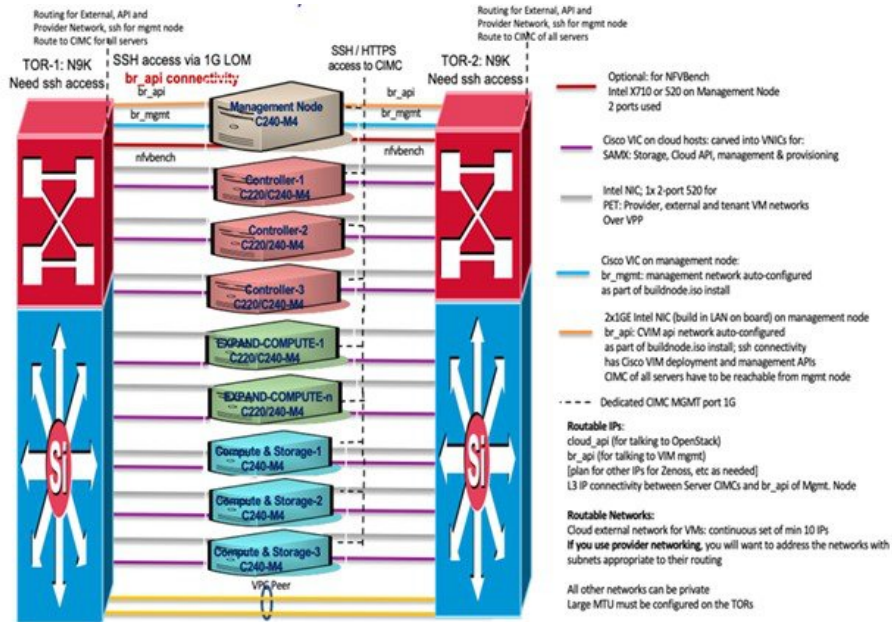


Figure 46: M5-Micropod with Intel NIC (X710) - No NIC Redundancy

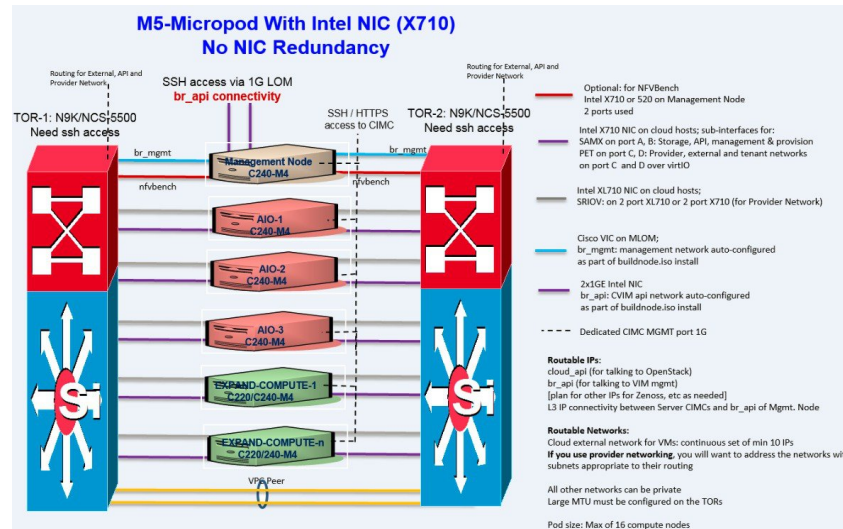


Figure 47: M4/M5 Full-On with Intel NIC (X710) and with NIC Redundancy

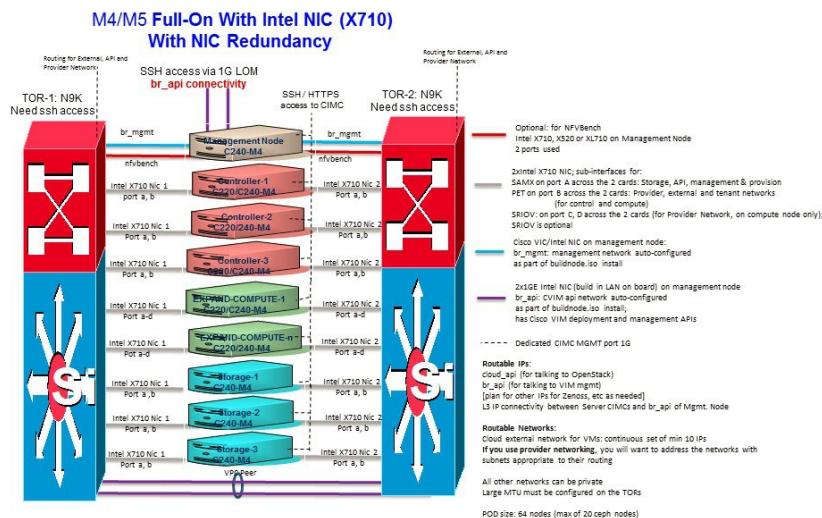


Figure 48: M4/M5 Full-On with Cisco VIC/NIC (2xXL710/2x520)

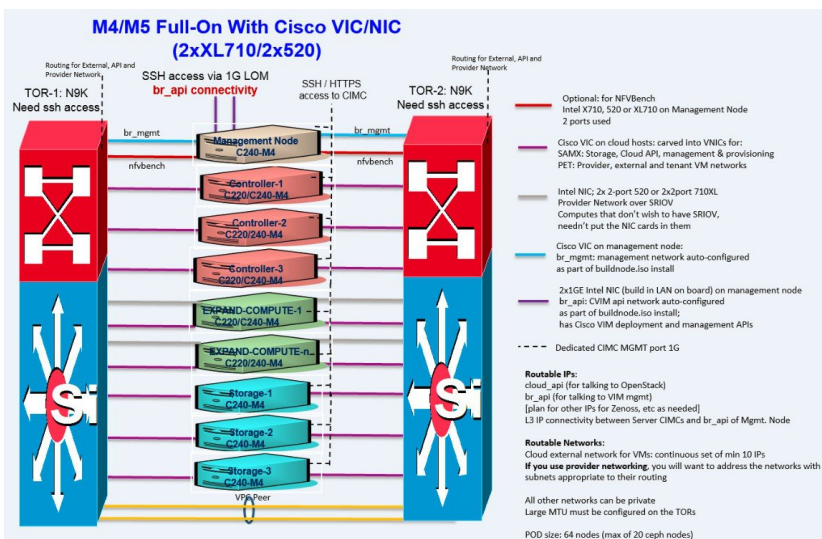


Figure 49: M4/M5 Micropod with Cisco VIC/NIC (2xXL710/2x520)

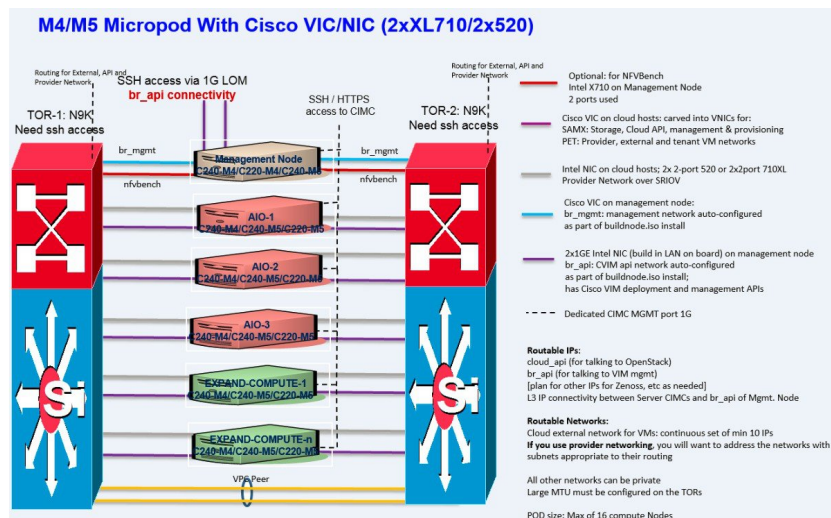


Figure 50: M4/M5-HC with Cisco VIC/NIC (2xXL710/2x520)

